MEDIEVAL LATIN SERIES · VOLUME 25

# The Deeds of the Franks and the History of Jerusalem

Anonymous · Fulcher of Chartres

# Gesta Francorum et aliorum Hierosolimitanorum

# Historia Hierosolymitana

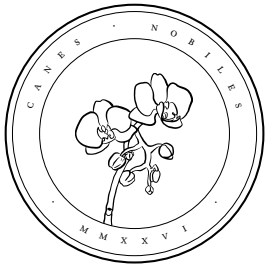
*The Deeds of the Franks and the History of Jerusalem*

*The First Crusade: The Gesta Francorum and Fulcher of Chartres, Book I*

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

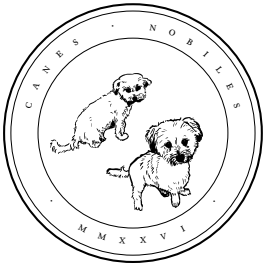



CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is in the public domain




Volume 25 of the Canes Nobiles Medieval Latin interlinear texts

The Medieval Latin text follows Heinrich
Hagenmeyer's editions (Heidelberg, 1890 and 1913)

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

# CONTENTS

## GESTA FRANCORUM ET ALIORUM HIEROSOLIMITANORUM


I · The Call and the Taking of the Cross . . . . . 11
II · Peter the Hermit and the People's Army . . . . . 13
III · The Princes Come to Constantinople . . . . . 18
IV · Bohemond Takes the Cross . . . . . 21
V · The March through Greek Lands . . . . . 26
VI · The Oath to Alexius . . . . . 29
VII · The Road to Nicaea . . . . . 32
VIII · The Siege of Nicaea . . . . . 34
IX · The Battle of Dorylaeum . . . . . 39
X · Through Romania to Heraclea and Tarsus . . . . . 46
XI · Through Armenia to Antioch . . . . . 52
XII · The Siege of Antioch Begins . . . . . 57
XIII · The Castle of Maregart and the Foraging Battle . . . . . 60
XIV · Defeat in the Camp and Famine . . . . . 63
XV · The Flight of William the Carpenter . . . . . 66
XVI · The Desertion of Tatikios . . . . . 68
XVII · Bohemond's Victory at the Lake . . . . . 70
XVIII · The Battle at the Bridge and the Mahomerie . . . . . 75
XIX · Tancred Holds the Monastery Castle . . . . . 82
XX · Firuz Betrays Antioch . . . . . 85

GESTA FRANCORUM ET ALIORUM HIEROSOLIMITANORUM

*(continued)*

XXI · Kerbogha Comes to Antioch . . . . . 93
XXII · Kerbogha and His Mother . . . . . 100
XXIII · The Franks Besieged in Antioch . . . . . 106
XXIV · The Priest's Vision and the Oath . . . . . 108
XXV · Saint Andrew and the Lance . . . . . 111
XXVI · Fire and Famine in the City . . . . . 114
XXVII · Stephen of Blois Turns the Emperor Back . . . . . 118
XXVIII · The Lance Found, and Envoys to Kerbogha . . . . . 122
XXIX · The Great Battle of Antioch . . . . . 126
XXX · Rest at Antioch and the Bishop's Death . . . . . 133
XXXI · Albara and the Quarrel over Antioch . . . . . 138
XXXII · The City of Antioch . . . . . 141
XXXIII · The Siege of Marra . . . . . 143
XXXIV · Raymond Marches South . . . . . 148
XXXV · The Siege of Arqa . . . . . 155
XXXVI · From Tripoli to Ramla . . . . . 158
XXXVII · The Siege of Jerusalem Begins . . . . . 160
XXXVIII · The Fall of Jerusalem . . . . . 165
XXXIX · Godfrey Chosen and the Battle of Ascalon . . . . . 169

HISTORIA HIEROSOLYMITANA

Prologue . . . . . 181
I · The Council at Clermont . . . . . 184
II · Urban's Decree at the Council . . . . . 187
III · Urban's Call to the Journey . . . . . 192
IV · Adhemar and the Taking of the Cross . . . . . 195
V · Urban and the Antipope Guibert . . . . . 199
VI · The Departure, and the Names of the Princes . . . . . 203
VII · Through Italy and Rome . . . . . 208

HISTORIA HIEROSOLYMITANA

*(continued)*

VIII · The Shipwreck and the March to Constantinople . . . . . 210
IX · Constantinople and the Road to Nicaea . . . . . 215
X · The Siege and Surrender of Nicaea . . . . . 217
XI · The Deadly Battle at Dorylaeum . . . . . 221
XII · The Turks Flee . . . . . 226
XIII · Want, and the Many Tongues . . . . . 228
XIV · Baldwin Wins Edessa . . . . . 230
XV · The Siege of Antioch . . . . . 235
XVI · Famine, and the Flight of Stephen . . . . . 241
XVII · The Betrayal of Antioch . . . . . 245
XVIII · The Lance Found and Tried . . . . . 248
XIX · The Franks Besieged in Antioch . . . . . 250
XX · Visions in the City . . . . . 252
XXI · The Franks Offer Battle . . . . . 254
XXII · The Army Goes Out . . . . . 256
XXIII · Victory and the Turks' Flight . . . . . 259
XXIV · The Princes' Letter to Urban . . . . . 263
XXV · Marra, Arqa, and the Road to Jerusalem . . . . . 271
XXVI · The Site of Jerusalem . . . . . 278
XXVII · The Siege and Capture of Jerusalem . . . . . 283
XXVIII · The Spoils . . . . . 288
XXIX · The Franks Settle in the City . . . . . 290
XXX · The Prince, the Patriarch, and the Cross . . . . . 292
XXXI · The Battle of Ascalon . . . . . 294
XXXII · Some Princes Go Home . . . . . 300
XXXIII · Bohemond and Baldwin's Pilgrimage . . . . . 301
XXXIV · The Return of Bohemond and Baldwin . . . . . 308
XXXV · The Capture of Bohemond . . . . . 311
XXXVI · The Death of Godfrey . . . . . 314

# Gesta Francorum et aliorum Hierosolimitanorum

*The Deeds of the Franks*

*As the time draws near when, as the Lord says in the Gospel, his faithful must take up the cross, a great movement stirs the lands of Gaul. Pope Urban crosses the Alps with his bishops and preaches that whoever would save his soul should take the Lord's road humbly, for God will supply what he lacks. Hearing this, the Franks sew crosses on their right shoulders and vow to follow Christ.*

Cum iam appropinquasset ille terminus, quem Dominus
*when now had-drawn-near that limit which the-Lord*
Iesus cotidie suis demonstrat fidelibus, specialiter in euangelio
*Jesus daily to-his shows faithful especially in the-gospel*
dicens: Si quis vult post me venire, abneget semetipsum
*saying if anyone wishes after me to-come let-him-deny himself*
et tollat crucem suam et sequatur me, facta est igitur
*and let-him-take-up cross his and let-him-follow me made was therefore*
motio valida per universas Galliarum regiones: ut si aliquis
*a-movement mighty through all of-the-Gauls the-regions that if anyone*
Dominum studiose puroque corde et mente sequi desideraret
*the-Lord zealously and-with-pure heart and mind to-follow desired*
atque post ipsum crucem fideliter baiulare vellet, non
*and after him the-cross faithfully to-carry wished not*
pigritaretur Sancti Sepulcri viam celerius arripere. Apostolicus
*he-should-be-slow of-the-Holy Sepulcher the-way more-swiftly to-take-up the-apostolic-one*
namque Romanae sedis Urbanus ultra montanas partes
*for of-the-Roman see Urban beyond mountain the-parts*
quantocius profectus est cum suis archiepiscopis, episcopis,
*with-all-speed set-out has with his archbishops bishops*
abbatibus et presbyteris, coepitque subtiliter sermocinari et
*abbots and presbyters and-began subtly to-discourse and*
praedicare, dicens: Ut si quis animam suam salvam facere
*to-preach saying that if anyone soul his safe to-make*

vellet, non dubitaret humiliter viam incipere Domini; ac si
*wished not he-should-hesitate humbly the-way to-begin of-the-Lord and if*
denariorum ei deesset copia, divina ei satis daret
*of-pennies to-him should-be-lacking the-supply divine to-him enough would-give*
misericordia. Ait namque dominus Apostolicus: Fratres, nos
*mercy says for the-lord apostolic-one brothers us*
oportet multa pati pro nomine Christi, videlicet miserias,
*it-behooves many-things to-suffer for the-name of-Christ namely miseries*
paupertates, nuditates, persecutiones, egestates, infirmitates,
*poverties nakednesses persecutions wants sicknesses*
fames, sites et alia huiusmodi, sicuti Dominus ait suis
*hungers thirsts and other-things of-this-kind as the-Lord says to-his*
discipulis: «Oportet vos pati multa pro nomine meo»,
*disciples it-behooves you to-suffer many-things for name my*
et «nolite erubescere loqui ante facies hominum»; «ego vero
*and do-not blush to-speak before the-faces of-men I but*
dabo vobis os et eloquium», ac deinceps «persequetur
*shall-give to-you mouth and eloquence and thereafter shall-follow*
vos larga retributio». Cumque iam hic sermo paulatim per
*you ample recompense and-when now this speech little-by-little through*
universas regiones ac Galliarum patrias coepisset crebrescere,
*all regions and of-the-Gauls the-countries had-begun to-spread*
Franci audientes talia, protinus in dextra fecere cruces
*the-Franks hearing such-things at-once on the-right made crosses*
suere scapula, dicentes sese Christi unanimiter sequi
*sewed the-shoulder saying themselves of-Christ with-one-mind to-follow*
vestigia, quibus de manu erant redempti tartarea.
*the-footsteps by-which from the-hand they-had-been redeemed of-hell*

## II · PETER THE HERMIT AND THE PEOPLE'S ARMY

*The Franks go in three parts. Peter the Hermit reaches Constantinople, where his rabble burns palaces and strips church lead, and is sent across the Arm. At Xerigordo the Lombards and Germans are besieged and drink blood and urine until the Germans' lord betrays them; the rest are killed or sold. At Civetot the Turks massacre Walter's people, and the emperor rejoices and buys their arms.*

Iam iamque Galliae suis remotae sunt domibus, feceruntque
*now and-now the-Gauls from-their removed were homes and-made*
denique Galli III partes. Una pars Francorum in Hungariae
*finally the-Gauls three parts one part of-the-Franks into of-Hungary*
intravit regionem, scilicet Petrus heremita et dux Godefridus
*entered the-region namely Peter the-hermit and duke Godfrey*
et Balduinus, frater eius, et Balduinus, comes de Monte.
*and Baldwin brother his and Baldwin count of Mons*
Isti potentissimi milites et alii plures, quos ignoro, venerunt
*these most-powerful knights and others many whom I-know-not came*
per viam, quam iam dudum Karolus Magnus, mirificus rex
*by the-road which long since Charles the-Great wondrous king*
Franciae, aptari fecit usque Constantinopolim. Petrus
*of-France to-be-made-ready caused all-the-way to-Constantinople Peter*
vero supradictus primus venit Constantinopolim Kalendis
*but aforesaid first came to-Constantinople on-the-Kalends*
Augusti, et cum eo maxima gens Alamannorum. Illic invenit
*of-August and with him a-very-great people of-the-Alamans there he-found*
Lombardos et Longobardos et alios plures congregatos, quibus
*Lombards and Longobards and others many gathered to-whom*
imperator iusserat dari mercatum, sicuti erat in civitate,
*the-emperor had-ordered to-be-given a-market as there-was in the-city*
dixitque illis: «Nolite transmeare Brachium, donec veniat
*and-said to-them do-not cross the-Arm until come*

maxima Christianorum virtus, quoniam vos tanti non estis,
*the-greatest of-the-Christians power since you so-great not are*
ut cum Turcis proeliari valeatis». Ipsique Christiani
*that with the-Turks to-do-battle you-may-be-able and-they-themselves the-Christians*
nequiter deducebant se, quia palatia urbis sternebant
*wickedly conducted themselves because the-palaces of-the-city they-laid-low*
et ardebant, et auferebant plumbum, quo ecclesiae erant
*and burned and carried-off the-lead with-which the-churches were*
coopertae, et vendebant Graecis, unde imperator iratus est
*covered and sold to-the-Greeks whence the-emperor angered was*
iussitque eos transmeare Brachium. Postquam transfretaverunt,
*and-ordered them to-cross the-Arm after they-had-crossed*
non cessabant agere omnia mala, comburentes et devastantes
*not they-ceased to-do all evils burning and laying-waste*
domos et ecclesias. Tandem pervenerunt Nicomediam, ubi
*houses and churches at-length they-came to-Nicomedia where*
divisi sunt Lombardi et Longobardi et Alamanni a Francis,
*divided were the-Lombards and Longobards and Alamans from the-Franks*
quia Franci tumebant superbia. Elegerunt Lombardi et
*because the-Franks swelled with-pride chose the-Lombards and*
Longobardi seniorem super se, cui nomen Rainaldus;
*Longobards a-lord over themselves to-whom the-name Rainald*
Alamanni similiter; et intraverunt in Romaniam, et per IIII
*the-Alamans likewise and they-entered into Romania and for four*
dies ierunt ultra Nicenam urbem inveneruntque quoddam
*days they-went beyond the-Nicene city and-they-found a-certain*
castrum, cui nomen Exerogorgo, quod erat vacuum gente,
*castle to-which the-name Xerigordo which was empty of-people*
et apprehenderunt illud, in quo invenerunt satis frumenti et
*and they-seized it in which they-found enough of-grain and*
vini et carnis et omnium bonorum abundantiam. Audientes
*of-wine and of-meat and of-all goods abundance hearing*

itaque Turci, quod Christiani essent in castro, venerunt
*and-so the-Turks that the-Christians were in the-castle they-came*
obsidere illud. Ante portam castri erat puteus et ad pedem
*to-besiege it before the-gate of-the-castle was a-well and at the-foot*
castri fons vivus, iuxta quem exiit Rainaldus insidiari
*of-the-castle a-spring living beside which went-out Rainald to-lie-in-wait-for*
Turcos. Venientes vero Turci in die dedicationis S.
*the-Turks coming indeed the-Turks on the-day of-the-dedication of-Saint*
Michaelis invenerunt Rainaldum et qui cum eo erant,
*Michael found Rainald and those-who with him were*
occideruntque Turci multos ex eis, alii, qui remanserant
*and-killed the-Turks many of them others who had-remained*
vivi, fugerunt in castrum, quod confestim Turci obsederunt
*alive fled into the-castle which at-once the-Turks besieged*
eisque aquam abstulerunt. Fueruntque nostri in tanta
*and-from-them the-water took-away and-were our-men in such*
afflictione sitis, ut flebotomarent suos equos et asinos,
*affliction of-thirst that they-bled their horses and asses*
quorum sanguinem bibebant; alii mittebant zonas atque
*whose blood they-drank others put belts and*
panniculos in piscinam et inde exprimebant aquam in os
*little-cloths into a-cistern and thence squeezed water into mouth*
suum; alii mingebant in pugillo alterius et bibebant; alii
*their others urinated into the-fist of-another and drank others*
fodiebant humidam terram et supinabant se,
*dug damp earth and laid themselves-on-their-backs*
terramque sternebant super pectora sua pro nimia arriditate
*and-the-earth spread over breasts their for excessive dryness*
sitis. Episcopi vero et presbyteri confortabant nostros et
*of-thirst the-bishops but and presbyters comforted our-men and*
commonebant, ne deficerent, dicentes: Estote ubique fortes
*urged lest they-should-fail saying be everywhere strong*

in fide Christi et nolite eos timere, qui vos persequuntur,
*in the-faith of-Christ and do-not those fear who you persecute*
sicuti Dominus dicit: «Nolite timere eos, qui corpus occidunt,
*as the-Lord says do-not fear those who the-body kill*
animam vero non possunt occidere». Haec tribulatio fuit
*the-soul but not can to-kill this tribulation was*
per VIII dies. Denique dominus Alamannorum concordatus
*for eight days finally the-lord of-the-Alamans agreed*
est cum Turcis, ut traderet socios illis; et, fingens
*has with the-Turks that he-would-hand-over his-comrades to-them and pretending*
se exire ad bellum, fugit ad illos, et multi cum eo. Illi
*himself to-go-out to battle fled to them and many with him those*
autem, qui Dominum negare noluerent, capitalem sententiam
*moreover who the-Lord to-deny were-unwilling the-capital sentence*
susceperunt; alios, quos ceperunt vivos, adinvicem diviserunt
*received others whom they-took alive among-themselves they-divided*
quasi oves; alios miserunt ad signum et sagittabant eos; alios
*like sheep others they-set as a-target and shot-arrows-at them others*
vendebant et donabant quasi animalia. Quidam conducebant
*they-sold and gave-away like animals some led*
suos in domum suam, alios in Corosanum, alios in
*their-captives to house their others into Khorasan others into*
Antiochiam, alios in Aleph aut ubi ipsi manebant.
*Antioch others into Aleppo or where they-themselves dwelt*
Isti primo felix acceperunt martyrium pro nomine Domini
*these first happy received martyrdom for the-name of-the-Lord*
Iesu. Audientes denique Turci, quod Petrus heremita et
*Jesus hearing finally the-Turks that Peter the-hermit and*
Guualterius Sinehabere fuissent in Cyvito, quae supra Nicenam
*Walter Sans-Avoir had-been in Civetot which above the-Nicene*
urbem est, venerunt illuc cum magno gaudio, ut occiderent
*city is they-came thither with great joy that they-might-kill*

illos et eos, qui cum ipsis erant. Cumque venissent
*them and those who with them were and-when they-had-come*
laetantes, obviaverunt Guualterio cum suis, quos Turci
*rejoicing they-met Walter with his-men whom the-Turks*
mox occiderunt. Petrus vero heremita paulo ante ierat
*soon killed Peter but the-hermit a-little before had-gone*
Constantinopolim, eo quod nequibat refrenare illam
*to-Constantinople for-the-reason that he-could-not to-rein-in that*
diversam gentem, quae nec illum nec verba eius audire
*diverse people which neither him nor the-words his to-hear*
volebat. Irruentes vero Turci super eos occiderunt multos ex
*wished rushing indeed the-Turks upon them killed many of*
eis; alios invenerunt dormientes, alios iacentes, alios nudos,
*them others they-found sleeping others lying others naked*
quos omnes necaverunt; cum quibus quemdam sacerdotem
*whom all they-slew with whom a-certain priest*
invenerunt missam celebrantem, quem statim super altare
*they-found mass celebrating whom at-once upon the-altar*
martyrizaverunt. Illi vero, qui evadere potuerunt, Cyvito
*they-martyred those but who to-escape could to-Civetot*
fugerunt; alii praecipitabant se in mare, alii latebant
*fled others threw themselves into the-sea others hid*
in silvis et montanis. Turci vero persequentes illos in
*in the-woods and mountains the-Turks but pursuing them into*
castrum, adunaverunt ligna, ut eos comburerent cum castro.
*the-castle gathered wood that them they-might-burn with the-castle*
Christiani igitur, qui in castro erant, miserunt ignem in
*the-Christians therefore who in the-castle were put fire into*
ligna congregata et versus ignis in Turcos quosdam eorum
*the-wood gathered and turned the-fire against the-Turks certain of-them*
concremavit, sed ab illo incendio Deus nostros tunc liberavit.
*burned but from that burning God our-men then freed*

Tandem Turci apprehenderunt illos vivos, diviseruntque
*at-length the-Turks seized them alive and-divided*
illos, sicuti prius fecerant alios, et disperserunt illos
*them as before they-had-done the-others and scattered them*
per universas regiones has, alios in Corosanum, alios in
*through all regions these others into Khorasan others into*
Persidem. Hoc totum factum est in mense Octobri. Audiens
*Persia this all done was in the-month of-October hearing*
imperator, quod Turci sic dissipassent nostros, gavisus est
*the-emperor that the-Turks so had-scattered our-men rejoiced has*
valde et mandavit pro eis, fecitque eos Brachium transmeare.
*greatly and sent for them and-made them the-Arm cross*
Postquam ultra fuerunt, comparavit omnia arma eorum.
*after beyond they-were he-bought all arms their*

## III · THE PRINCES COME TO CONSTANTINOPLE

*Raymond of Saint Gilles and the bishop of Le Puy go through Slavonia; Bohemond, Robert of Flanders, Robert of Normandy, Hugh the Great, and others take the old road to Rome. Hugh is seized at Durazzo and sent to the emperor. Godfrey reaches Constantinople first. Baldwin ambushes the Turcopoles who are killing the duke's men, and when the emperor's armies attack Godfrey, he drives them back to the city gate. After five days he makes a pact, and the emperor bids him cross the Arm, promising a market there and alms for the poor.*

Secunda vero pars intravit in Sclaviniae partes, scilicet
*the-second but part entered into of-Slavonia the-parts namely*
comes de Sancto Egidio Raimundus et Podiensis episcopus.
*the-count of Saint Gilles Raymond and of-Le-Puy the-bishop*

Tertia autem pars per antiquam Romae viam venit. In hac parte
*the-third moreover part by the-old of-Rome road came in this part*
fuerunt Boamundus et Richardus de Principatu, Robertus comes
*were Bohemond and Richard of the-Principate Robert count*
Flandrensis, Robertus Normannus, Hugo magnus, Eurardus de
*of-Flanders Robert the-Norman Hugh the-Great Everard of*
Puisatio, Achardus de Monte Merloi, Isuardus de Musone et
*Le-Puiset Achard of Mont Merle Isoard of Mouzon and*
alii plures. Deinde venerunt ad portum Brandosim aut Barim,
*others many then they-came to the-port Brindisi or Bari*
sive Otrentum. Hugo denique Magnus et Willelmus Marchisi
*or Otranto Hugh finally the-Great and William of-the-Marquis*
filius intraverunt mare ad portum Bari et transfretantes
*son entered the-sea at the-port of-Bari and crossing*
venerunt Durachium. Audiens vero dux illius loci hos
*came to-Durazzo hearing indeed the-duke of-that place these*
prudentissimos viros illic esse applicatos, mox mala cogitatio
*most-prudent men there to-be landed soon an-evil thought*
cor eius tetigit, illosque apprehendit ac iussit Constantinopolim
*heart his touched and-them seized and ordered to-Constantinople*
imperatori caute duci, quo ei fidelitatem facerent.
*to-the-emperor warily to-be-led that to-him fealty they-might-do*
Dux denique Godefridus primus omnium seniorum
*the-duke finally Godfrey first of-all the-lords*
Constantinopolim venit cum magno exercitu duobus diebus
*to-Constantinople came with a-great army two days*
ante Natale Domini nostri et hospitatus est extra urbem,
*before the-Birthday of-the-Lord our and lodged has outside the-city*
donec iniquus imperator iussit eum hospitari in burgo
*until the-wicked emperor ordered him to-be-lodged in the-suburb*
urbis. Cumque fuisset hospitatus dux, secure mittebat
*of-the-city and-when had lodged the-duke securely sent*

armigeros suos per singulos dies, ut paleas et alia
*squires his on single days that straw and other-things*
equis necessaria asportarent. Et iam cum putarent exire
*for-the-horses necessary they-might-carry-off and now when they-thought to-go-out*
fiducialiter quo vellent, iniquus imperator Alexius sagaciter
*confidently where they-wished the-wicked emperor Alexius shrewdly*
faciebat eos excubare, suisque Turcopolis et Pincinatis
*caused them to-be-watched and-his Turcopoles and Pechenegs*
imperabat eos invadere et occidere. Balduinus itaque, frater
*he-commanded them to-attack and to-kill Baldwin and-so brother*
ducis, haec audiens, misit se in insidiis, tandemque invenit
*of-the-duke this hearing put himself in ambush and-at-length found*
eos occidentes gentem suam, eosque invasit forti animo,
*them killing people his and-them attacked with-strong spirit*
ac, Deo iuvante, superavit eos, et apprehendens LX ex eis,
*and God helping overcame them and seizing sixty of them*
partem occidit, partem duci, fratri suo, praesentavit. Quod
*part he-killed part to-the-duke brother his he-presented which*
cum audisset imperator, valde iratus est; videns vero dux
*when had-heard the-emperor greatly angered was seeing indeed the-duke*
inde iratum imperatorem, exiit cum suis de burgo
*thereupon angry the-emperor went-out with his-men from the-suburb*
et hospitatus est extra urbem. Sero autem facto, infelix
*and lodged has outside the-city evening moreover made the-unhappy*
imperator iussit suis exercitibus invadere ducem cum Christi
*emperor ordered his armies to-attack the-duke with of-Christ*
gente. Quos dux persequens invictus cum Christi militibus,
*the-people whom the-duke pursuing unconquered with of-Christ the-knights*
VII ex illis occidit, persequendo alios usque ad portam
*seven of them killed pursuing the-others all-the-way to the-gate*
civitatis. Reversusque dux ad sua tentoria mansit inibi per
*of-the-city and-having-returned the-duke to his tents stayed there for*

V dies, donec pactum iniit cum imperatore; dixitque illi
*five days until a-pact he-entered with the-emperor and-said to-him*
imperator, ut transfretaret Brachium Sancti Georgii, promisitque
*the-emperor that he-should-cross the-Arm of-Saint George and-promised*
eum habere omnem mercatum ibi, sicut est Constantinopoli,
*him to-have every market there as there-is at-Constantinople*
et pauperibus eleemosynam erogare, unde potuissent vivere.
*and to-the-poor alms to-pay-out whence they-could to-live*

## IV · BOHEMOND TAKES THE CROSS

*At the siege of Amalfi Bohemond hears of the countless Franks bearing the cross and crying God wills it. Moved by the Spirit, he cuts his costliest cloak into crosses, and most of the besiegers join him. He crosses with Tancred and many lords, forbids plunder in Christian lands, burns a castle of heretics, and at the Vardar Tancred rescues those the emperor's army attacks.*

At bellipotens Boamundus, qui erat in obsidione Malfi
*but war-mighty Bohemond who was at the-siege of-Amalfi*
Scafardi Pontis, audiens venisse innumerabilem gentem
*of-Scafati Bridge hearing to-have-come a-countless people*
Christianorum de Francis, ituram ad Domini sepulcrum
*of-Christians from the-Franks about-to-go to of-the-Lord the-sepulcher*
et paratam ad proelium contra gentem paganorum, coepit
*and ready for battle against the-people of-the-pagans began*
diligenter inquirere, quae arma pugnandi haec gens deferat
*diligently to-inquire what arms of-fighting this people might-bear*
et quam ostensionem Christi in via portet vel quod
*and what showing of-Christ on the-way it-might-carry or what*
signum in certamine sonet. Cui per ordinem haec
*signal in combat it-might-sound to-whom in order these-things*

dicta sunt: Deferunt arma ad bellum congrua; in dextra
*said were they-bear arms for war fitting on the-right*
vel inter utrasque scapulas crucem Christi baiulant; sonum
*or between both shoulders the-cross of-Christ they-carry the-sound*
vero «Deus le volt», «Deus le volt», «Deus le volt»! una
*but God it wills God it wills God it wills with-one*
voce conclamant. Mox Sancto commotus Spiritu iussit
*voice they-shout-together soon by-the-Holy moved Spirit he-ordered*
pretiosissimum pallium, quod apud se habebat, incidi,
*a-most-precious cloak which with himself he-had to-be-cut*
totumque statim in cruces expendit. Coepit tunc ad eum
*and-the-whole at-once into crosses spent began then to him*
vehementer concurrere maxima pars militum, qui erant in
*vehemently to-run-together the-greatest part of-the-knights who were at*
obsidione illa, adeo ut Rogerius comes pene solus remanserit,
*siege that so-much that Roger the-count almost alone remained*
reversusque Siciliam dolebat et maerebat quandoque gentem
*and-having-returned to-Sicily grieved and mourned since people*
amittere suam. Denique reversus iterum in terram
*to-lose his finally having-returned again into land*
suam dominus Boamundus diligenter honestavit sese ad
*his the-lord Bohemond diligently equipped himself for*
incipiendum Sancti sepulcri iter. Tandem transfretavit
*beginning of-the-Holy sepulcher the-journey at-length he-crossed*
mare cum suo exercitu, et cum eo Tancredus, Marchisi
*the-sea with his army and with him Tancred of-the-Marquis*
filius, et Richardus princeps ac Rainulfus, frater eius, et
*son and Richard the-prince and Rainulf brother his and*
Rotbertus de Ansa et Hermannus de Canni, Rotbertus de
*Robert of Anzi and Herman of Cannae Robert of*
Surda Valle, Rotbertus, filius Tostani, et Hunfredus, filius
*Sourde Val Robert son of-Tostain and Humphrey son*

Radulfi, et Richardus, filius comitis Rainulfi, et comes
*of-Ralph and Richard son of-count Rainulf and the-count*
de Russinolo cum fratribus suis, et Boello Carnotensis et
*of Rosignuolo with brothers his and Boel of-Chartres and*
Alberedus de Cagnano et Hunfredus de Monte Scabioso.
*Alberd of Cagnano and Humphrey of Monte Scaglioso*
Hi omnes transfretaverunt ad Boamundi famulatum et
*these all crossed to of-Bohemond the-service and*
applicuerunt Bulgariae partibus, ubi invenerunt nimiam
*landed of-Bulgaria in-the-parts where they-found very-great*
abundantiam frumenti et vini et alimentorum corporis.
*abundance of-grain and of-wine and of-nourishment of-the-body*
Deinde descendentes in vallem de Andronopoli exspectaverunt
*then descending into the-valley of Andronopolis they-awaited*
gentem suam, donec omnes pariter transfretassent. Tunc sapiens
*people their until all together should-have-crossed then wise*
Boamundus ordinavit concilium cum gente sua, confortans
*Bohemond ordered a-council with people his comforting*
et monens omnes, dicens: Seniores, cavete omnes vos, quia
*and warning all saying lords beware all you because*
nos sumus peregrini Dei. Oportet igitur nos esse magis
*we are pilgrims of-God it-behooves therefore us to-be more*
bonos et humiles quam ante fuimus, et nolite depraedare
*good and humble than before we-were and do-not plunder*
terram istam, quia Christianorum est, et nemo accipiat
*land this because of-Christians it-is and no-one let-take*
plus, nisi quod ei sufficiat ad edendum pro benedictione.
*more except what to-him may-suffice for eating for a-blessing*
Tunc exeuntes inde venerunt per nimiam plenitudinem
*then going-out thence they-came through very-great plenty*
de villa in villam, de civitate in civitatem, de castello in
*from village to village from city to city from castle to*

castellum, quousque pervenimus Castoriam, ibique Nativitatem
*castle until we-came to-Kastoria and-there the-Nativity*
Domini sollemniter celebravimus, fuimusque ibi per plures
*of-the-Lord solemnly we-celebrated and-we-were there for many*
dies et quaesivimus mercatum; sed ipsi noluerunt nobis
*days and we-sought a-market but they were-unwilling to-us*
assentire, eo quod valde timebant nos, non putantes
*to-assent for-the-reason that greatly they-feared us not thinking*
nos esse peregrinos, sed velle populari terram et occidere
*us to-be pilgrims but to-wish to-ravage the-land and to-kill*
illos. Quapropter apprehendebamus boves, equos et asinos et
*them wherefore we-seized oxen horses and asses and*
omnia, quae inveniebamus. Egressi de Castoria intravimus
*all-things which we-found having-gone-out from Kastoria we-entered*
Palagoniam, in qua erat quoddam haereticorum castrum,
*Pelagonia in which was a-certain of-heretics castle*
quod undique aggressi sumus, moxque nostro succubuit
*which on-all-sides attacked we-have and-soon to-our it-yielded*
imperio; accenso itaque igne, combussimus castrum cum
*command kindled and-so the-fire we-burned the-castle with*
habitatoribus suis, scilicet haereticorum congregatione.
*inhabitants its namely of-heretics the-congregation*
Postea pervenimus ad flumen Bardarum. Denique perrexit
*afterward we-came to the-river Vardar finally went-on*
dominus Boamundus ultra cum sua gente, sed non tota.
*the-lord Bohemond across with his people but not all*
Remansit enim comes de Russignolo cum fratribus suis.
*remained for the-count of Rosignuolo with brothers his*
Venit itaque exercitus imperatoris et invasit comitem cum
*came and-so the-army of-the-emperor and attacked the-count with*
fratribus suis et omnes, qui erant cum eis.
*brothers his and all who were with them*

Quod audiens Tancredus rediit retro et proiectus in
*which hearing Tancred went-back back and having-thrown-himself into*
flumen natando pervenit ad alios; et II milia miserunt
*the-river by-swimming came to the-others and two thousand put*
se in flumen sequendo Tancredum. Tandem invenerunt
*themselves into the-river following Tancred at-length they-found*
Turcopulos et Pinzinacos dimicantes cum nostris, quos
*Turcopoles and Pechenegs fighting with our-men whom*
repente fortiter invaserunt et prudenter eos superaverunt; et
*suddenly bravely they-attacked and prudently them overcame and*
apprehenderunt plures ex illis et duxerunt illos ligatos ante
*seized many of them and led them bound before*
domini Boamundi praesentiam, quibus ait ipse: Quare, miseri,
*of-lord Bohemond the-presence to-whom says he why wretches*
occiditis gentem Christi et meam? Ego cum vestro imperatore
*do-you-kill the-people of-Christ and mine I with your emperor*
nullam altercationem habeo. Qui responderunt: Nos nequimus
*no quarrel have who answered we cannot*
aliud agere; in roga imperatoris locati sumus, et quicquid
*other-thing to-do in the-pay of-the-emperor hired we-are and whatever*
nobis imperat, nos oportet implere. Quos Boamundus
*to-us he-commands us it-behooves to-fulfill whom Bohemond*
impunitos permisit abire. Hoc bellum factum est in IVta
*unpunished allowed to-go-away this battle done was on the-fourth*
feria, quae est caput ieiunii. Per omnia benedictus Deus. Amen.
*weekday which is the-head of-the-fast in all-things blessed God amen*

*The emperor sends a curopalates to escort them, and he bids the towns bring them a market, though the towns fear them. Bohemond refuses to storm a rich castle and makes his men return plundered beasts. At Rusa the Greeks welcome him with a great market; he goes ahead to the emperor, and Tancred leads the pilgrims into a rich valley to keep Easter.*

Mandavit infelix imperator simul cum nostris nuntiis uni
*commanded the-unhappy emperor together with our envoys to-one*
ex suis, quem valde diligebat, quem et Corpalatium vocant,
*of his-men whom greatly he-loved whom also curopalates they-call*
ut nos secure deduceret per terram suam, donec veniremus
*that us securely he-should-lead through land his until we-should-come*
Constantinopolim. Cumque transiremus ante illorum civitates,
*to-Constantinople and-when we-passed before their cities*
iubebat habitatoribus terrae, ut nobis apportarent mercatum,
*he-ordered the-inhabitants of-the-land that to-us they-should-bring a-market*
sicut faciebant et illi, quos diximus. Certe tantum
*as did also those whom we-have-mentioned certainly so-much*
timebant fortissimum gentem domini Boamundi, ut nullum
*they-feared most-strong the-people of-lord Bohemond that none*
nostrorum sinerent intrare muros civitatum. Volueruntque
*of-ours they-let enter the-walls of-the-cities and-wished*
nostri quoddam castrum aggredi et apprehendere, eo
*our-men a-certain castle to-attack and to-seize for-the-reason*
quod erat plenum omnibus bonis. Sed vir prudens
*that it-was full of-all goods but the-man prudent*
Boamundus noluit consentire, tantum pro iustitia terrae,
*Bohemond was-unwilling to-consent as-much for the-justice of-the-land*
quantum pro fiducia imperatoris. Unde valde iratus est
*as for the-faith of-the-emperor whence greatly angered was*

propter hoc cum Tancredo et aliis omnibus. Hoc factum
*on-account-of this with Tancred and the-others all this done*
est vespere. Mane vero facto, exierunt habitatores castri
*was in-the-evening morning indeed made went-out the-inhabitants of-the-castle*
et cum processione deferentes in manibus cruces venerunt in
*and with a-procession carrying in hands crosses came into*
praesentiam Boamundi. Ipse vero gaudens recepit eos et cum
*the-presence of-Bohemond he but rejoicing received them and with*
laetitia abire permisit illos. Deinde venimus ad quamdam
*gladness to-go-away allowed them then we-came to a-certain*
urbem, quae dicitur Serra, ubi nostra fiximus tentoria et sat
*city which is-called Serres where our we-pitched tents and enough*
habuimus mercatum illis diebus conveniens. Ibique doctus
*we-had market in-those days suitable and-there learned*
Boamundus optime concordatus est cum duobus Corpalatiis
*Bohemond very-well agreed has with the-two curopalates*
et pro amicitia eorum ac pro iustitia terrae iussit
*and for the-friendship their and for the-justice of-the-land ordered*
reddi omnia animalia, quae nostri depraedata tenebant;
*to-be-returned all the-animals which our-men plundered held*
et Corpalatius illi promiserat missos retro mandare et
*and the-curopalates to-him had-promised messengers back to-send and*
hominibus illis animalia per ordinem reddi. Deinde
*to-the-men those the-animals in order to-be-returned then*
pervenimus de castello in castellum et de villa in villam ad
*we-came from castle to castle and from village to village to*
Rusam civitatem. Graecorum autem gens exibat et veniebat
*Rusa the-city of-the-Greeks moreover the-people went-out and came*
gaudens in occursum domini Boamundi, nobis deferens
*rejoicing to the-meeting of-lord Bohemond to-us bringing*
maximum mercatum, ibique nostros tetendimus papiliones
*a-very-great market and-there our we-stretched tents*

in IVta feria ante cenam Domini; ibi etiam doctus
*on the-fourth weekday before the-supper of-the-Lord there also learned*
Boamundus totam gentem suam dimisit, perrexitque loqui cum
*Bohemond the-whole people his left and-went-on to-speak with*
imperatore Constantinopolim, suisque hominibus imperavit,
*the-emperor to-Constantinople and-to-his men commanded*
dicens: Modeste appropinquate civitatem, ego autem ibo
*saying modestly approach the-city I moreover shall-go*
prius, qui et duxit secum paucos milites. Tancredus remansit
*first who also led with-himself few knights Tancred remained*
caput militiae Christi; vidensque peregrinos cibos emere, ait
*head of-the-army of-Christ and-seeing the-pilgrims food buying says*
intra se, quod exiret extra viam et tunc populum
*within himself that he-would-go-out off the-road and then the-people*
conduceret, ubi feliciter viveret. Denique intravit in vallem
*lead where happily it-might-live finally he-entered into a-valley*
quamdam plenam omnibus bonis, quae corporalibus nutrimentis
*certain full of-all goods which for-bodily nourishments*
sunt congrua, in qua Pascha Domini devotissime celebravimus.
*are suitable in which the-Pasch of-the-Lord most-devoutly we-celebrated*

## VI · THE OATH TO ALEXIUS

*The emperor receives Bohemond warily and plots against the princes, but he finds no way, and the city's elders decide the princes must swear him fealty. The princes protest but swear under necessity; Alexius promises markets, help by land and sea, and to restore their losses, and offers Bohemond land beyond Antioch. Raymond refuses homage and swears only to respect the emperor's life and honor.*

Cum imperator audisset honestissimum virum Boamundum
*when the-emperor had-heard the-most-honorable man Bohemond*
ad se venisse, iussit eum honorabiliter recipi et caute
*to him to-have-come he-ordered him honorably to-be-received and warily*
hospitari extra urbem. Quo hospitato, malignus imperator
*to-be-lodged outside the-city who lodged the-malign emperor*
misit pro eo, ut veniret loqui simul secreto secum. Illuc
*sent for him that he-should-come to-speak together secretly with-him thither*
quoque venit dux Godefridus cum fratre suo, ac deinde
*also came duke Godfrey with brother his and then*
comes Sancti Egidii appropinquavit civitati. Tunc imperator,
*the-count of-Saint Gilles drew-near to-the-city then the-emperor*
anxiens et bulliens ira, cogitabat, quemadmodum callide
*anxious and boiling with-anger pondered how cunningly*
fraudulenterque comprehenderent hos Christi milites. Sed
*and-deceitfully they-might-seize these of-Christ knights but*
divina gratia revelante, neque locus neque nocendi spacium
*divine grace revealing neither place nor of-harming room*
ab eo vel a suis inventa sunt. Novissime vero congregati
*by him or by his-men found were at-the-last indeed gathered*
omnes maiores natu, qui Constantinopoli erant, timentes, ne
*all the-elder by-birth who at-Constantinople were fearing lest*
sua privarentur patria, repererunt in suis consiliis atque
*of-their they-be-deprived fatherland found in their counsels and*

ingeniosis schematibus, quod nostrorum duces, comites seu
*ingenious schemes that of-our-men the-dukes counts or*
omnes maiores imperatori sacramentum fideliter facere
*all the-greater-men to-the-emperor an-oath faithfully to-make*
deberent, qui omnino prohibuerunt, dixeruntque: Certe
*ought who wholly refused and-said certainly*
indigni sumus atque iniustum nobis videtur ullatenus ei
*unworthy we-are and unjust to-us it-seems in-any-way to-him*
sacramentum iurare. Forsitan adhuc a nostris maioribus
*an-oath to-swear perhaps still by our greater-men*
saepe delusi erimus. Ad ultimum quid facturi erunt?
*often deceived we-shall-be at the-last what about-to-do shall-they-be*
dicent, quoniam necessitate compulsi, nolentes volentesque
*they-shall-say that by-necessity compelled unwilling and-willing*
humiliaverunt se ad nequissimi imperatoris voluntatem.
*they-humbled themselves to of-the-most-wicked emperor the-will*
Fortissimo autem viro Boamundo, quem valde timebat,
*to-the-most-strong moreover man Bohemond whom greatly he-feared*
quia olim eum saepe cum suo exercitu eiecerat de campo,
*because once him often with his army he-had-driven from the-field*
dixit: Quoniam, si libenter ei iuraret, XV dies eundi
*he-said that if willingly to-him he-would-swear fifteen days of-going*
terrae in extensione ab Antiochia retro daret, et VIII
*of-land in extent from Antioch back he-would-give and eight*
in latitudine; eique tali modo iuravit, ut, si ille fideliter
*in breadth and-to-him in-such way he-swore that if he faithfully*
teneret illud sacramentum, iste suum nunquam praeteriret.
*should-keep that oath this-one his never would-transgress*
Tam fortes et tam duri milites, cur hoc fecerunt? propterea
*so strong and so hard knights why this did-they on-this-account*
igitur, quia multa coacti erant necessitate. Imperator
*therefore because by-much compelled they-were necessity the-emperor*

quoque omnibus nostris fidem et securitatem dedit, iuravit
*also to-all our-men faith and security gave he-swore*
etiam, quia veniret nobiscum pariter cum suo exercitu
*also that he-would-come with-us together with his army*
per terram et per mare; et nobis mercatum terra marique
*by land and by sea and to-us a-market by-land and-by-sea*
fideliter daret, ac omnia nostra perdita diligenter restauraret;
*faithfully would-give and all our losses diligently would-restore*
insuper et neminem nostrorum peregrinorum conturbari vel
*besides and no-one of-our pilgrims to-be-troubled or*
contristari in via Sancti Sepulcri vellet aut permitteret.
*to-be-grieved on the-road of-the-Holy Sepulcher he-would-wish or permit*
Comes autem Sancti Egidii erat hospitatus extra urbem
*the-count moreover of-Saint Gilles had lodged outside the-city*
in burgo, gensque sua remanserat retro. Mandavit itaque
*in the-suburb and-people his had-remained behind commanded and-so*
imperator comiti, ut faceret ei hominium et fiduciam,
*the-emperor to-the-count that he-should-do to-him homage and fealty*
sicut alii fecerant. Et, dum imperator haec mandabat,
*as the-others had-done and while the-emperor this was-commanding*
comes meditabatur, qualiter vindictam de imperatoris exercitu
*the-count was-pondering how vengeance on of-the-emperor the-army*
habere posset. Sed dux Godefridus et Rotbertus, comes
*to-have he-might-be-able but duke Godfrey and Robert count*
Flandrensis, aliique principes dixerunt ei, iniustum fore
*of-Flanders and-other princes said to-him unjust it-would-be*
contra Christianos pugnare. Vir quoque sapiens Boamundus
*against Christians to-fight the-man also wise Bohemond*
dixit, quia, si aliquid iniustum imperatori faceret et fiduciam
*said that if anything unjust to-the-emperor he-should-do and fealty*
ei facere prohiberet, ipse ex imperatoris parte fieret.
*to-him to-do should-refuse he from of-the-emperor the-side would-become*

Igitur comes, accepto consilio a suis, Alexio vitam et
*therefore the-count received counsel from his-men to-Alexius life and*
honorem iuravit, quod nec per se nec per alium ei
*honor swore that neither through himself nor through another from-him*
auferre consentiat. Cumque de hominio appellaretur,
*to-take-away he-would-consent and-when about homage he-was-called-upon*
non se pro capitis periculo id facturum respondit. Tunc
*not himself for of-his-head peril it about-to-do he-answered then*
gens domini Boamundi appropinquavit Constantinopoli.
*the-people of-lord Bohemond drew-near to-Constantinople*

## VII · THE ROAD TO NICAEA

*Tancred and Richard of the Principate slip across the Arm to avoid the oath. Godfrey sends three thousand men with axes to open a road over the mountains, marking it with crosses for the pilgrims. They reach Nicaea on May 6; bread is dear until Bohemond arrives and has a great market brought by land and sea.*

Tancredus vero et Richardus de Principatu propter
*Tancred but and Richard of the-Principate on-account-of*
iusiurandum imperatoris latenter transfretaverunt Brachium, et
*the-oath of-the-emperor secretly crossed the-Arm and*
fere omnis gens Boamundi iuxta illos. Et mox exercitus
*almost all the-people of-Bohemond beside them and soon the-army*
comitis Sancti Egidii appropinquavit Constantinopoli. Comes
*of-the-count of-Saint Gilles drew-near to-Constantinople the-count*
vero remansit ibi cum ipsa sua gente. Vir itaque prudens
*but remained there with that-very his people the-man and-so prudent*
Boamundus remansit cum imperatore, ut cum eo consilium
*Bohemond remained with the-emperor that with him counsel*
acciperet, quomodo mandarent mercatum gentibus, quae
*he-might-take how they-should-send a-market to-the-peoples who*

erant ultra Niceam civitatem. Dux itaque Godefridus ivit
*were beyond Nicaea the-city the-duke and-so Godfrey went*
prius Nicomediam simul cum Tancredo et aliis omnibus,
*first to-Nicomedia together with Tancred and the-others all*
fueruntque ibi per III dies. Videns vero dux, quod nulla via
*and-they-were there for three days seeing indeed the-duke that no road*
pateret, per quam posset conducere has gentes usque Niceam
*lay-open by which he-could to-lead these peoples up-to Nicaea*
civitatem, quoniam per illam viam, per quam prius alii
*the-city since by that road by which before the-others*
transierant, non posset modo tanta gens transire, misit ante
*had-passed not could now so-great a-people pass he-sent before*
se III milia hominum cum securibus et gladiis, qui
*himself three thousand of-men with axes and swords who*
inciderent et aperirent hanc viam, quae patefacta staret
*should-cut and should-open this road which opened should-stand*
nostris peregrinis usque Nicenam urbem. Quae via fuit aperta
*for-our pilgrims up-to the-Nicene city which road was opened*
per angustam et nimis immensam montanam, et faciebant
*through a-narrow and very immense mountain and they-made*
retro per viam cruces ferreas ac ligneas, quas ponebant
*behind along the-road crosses of-iron and of-wood which they-set*
super stipites, ut eas nostri peregrini cognoscerent. Interea
*upon stakes that them our pilgrims might-know meanwhile*
pervenimus ad Niceam, quae est caput totius Romaniae,
*we-came to Nicaea which is the-head of-all Romania*
in IIIIº die, pridie nonas Maii; ibique castrametati
*on the-fourth day on-the-day-before the-Nones of-May and-there encamped*
sumus. Priusquam autem dominus Boamundus venisset ad nos,
*we-have before moreover lord Bohemond had-come to us*
tanta inopia panis fuit inter nos, ut unus panis venderetur
*such want of-bread was among us that one loaf was-sold*

XX aut XXX denariis. Postquam venit vir prudens
*for-twenty or thirty pennies after came the-man prudent*
Boamundus, iussit maximum mercatum conduci per mare,
*Bohemond he-ordered a-very-great market to-be-brought by sea*
et pariter utrinque veniebant, ille per terram et ille
*and together from-both-sides they-came that-one by land and that-one*
per mare, et fuit maxima ubertas in tota Christi militia.
*by sea and there-was the-greatest plenty in the-whole of-Christ army*

## VIII · THE SIEGE OF NICAEA

*On Ascension Day they attack Nicaea with towers and engines. Raymond and the bishop of Le Puy rout a relieving army, and the Franks sling the heads of the slain into the city. A tower is undermined but rebuilt overnight. Ships hauled overland from Civetot close the lake, and the Turks surrender the city to the emperor, who spares them to keep them ready against the Franks.*

In die autem Ascensionis Domini coepimus urbem
*on the-day moreover of-the-Ascension of-the-Lord we-began the-city*
circumquaque invadere et aedificare instrumenta lignorum
*all-around to-attack and to-build engines of-timbers*
atque turres ligneas, quo possemus murales turres
*and towers wooden by-which we-might-be-able the-wall towers*
sternere. Tam fortiter et tam acriter aggredimur urbem
*to-lay-low so strongly and so fiercely we-attack the-city*
per duos dies, ut etiam foderemus murum urbis. Turci
*for two days that even we-dug-under the-wall of-the-city the-Turks*
quippe, licet gens barbara, qui erant in urbe, miserunt
*indeed though a-people barbarous who were in the-city sent*
nuntios aliis, qui venerant adiutorium civitati dare, in
*messengers to-the-others who had-come help to-the-city to-give in*

hunc modum: Quod audacter secureque approximent et per
*this way that boldly and-securely they-should-approach and by*
meridianam introeant portam, quoniam ex illa parte nemo
*the-southern they-should-enter gate since on that side no-one*
eis erit obviam nec contristabit. Quae porta ipsa die
*to-them shall-be in-the-way nor shall-grieve-them which gate that-very day*
a comite Sancti Egidii in die Sabbati post Ascensionem
*by the-count of-Saint Gilles on the-day of-the-Sabbath after the-Ascension*
Domini et episcopo Podiensi hospitata fuit. Qui comes
*of-the-Lord and the-bishop of-Le-Puy occupied was which count*
veniens ex alia parte, protectus divina virtute, ac terrenis
*coming from another side protected by-divine power and with-earthly*
fulgebat armis cum suo fortissimo exercitu. Hic itaque
*shone arms with his most-strong army here and-so*
invenit contra nos venientes Turcos. Qui undique signo
*he-found against us coming the-Turks who on-all-sides with-the-sign*
crucis armatus, vehementer irruit super illos atque superavit.
*of-the-cross armed vehemently rushed upon them and overcame*
Dederuntque fugam et fuit mortua maxima pars illorum.
*and-they-gave flight and there-was dead the-greatest part of-them*
Qui rursus venerunt auxilio aliorum gaudentes et exsultantes
*who again came to-the-aid of-the-others rejoicing and exulting*
ad certum bellum, trahentes secum funes, quibus nos ligatos
*to sure battle dragging with-them ropes with-which us bound*
ducerent Corosanum. Venientes autem laetantes coeperunt
*they-might-lead to-Khorasan coming moreover rejoicing they-began*
ex cacumine montis paulatim descendere. Quotquot
*from the-summit of-the-mountain little-by-little to-descend as-many-as*
descenderunt, illic caesis capitibus a manibus nostrorum
*descended there cut-off heads by the-hands of-our-men*

remanserunt; proiiciebant autem nostri capita occisorum
*remained threw moreover our-men the-heads of-the-slain*
funda in urbem, ut inde Turci magis terrerentur.
*with-a-sling into the-city that thence the-Turks more might-be-terrified*
Denique comes Sancti Egidii et episcopus Podiensis consiliati
*finally the-count of-Saint Gilles and the-bishop of-Le-Puy took-counsel*
sunt in unum, qualiter facerent suffodi quamdam
*have into one how they-might-cause to-be-undermined a-certain*
turrim, quae erat ante tentoria eorum. Ordinati sunt homines,
*tower which was before tents their appointed were men*
qui hanc suffodiant, et arbalistae et sagittarii, qui eos
*who it should-undermine and crossbowmen and archers who them*
undique defendant. Foderunt namque illam usque ad radices
*on-all-sides should-defend they-dug for it all-the-way to the-roots*
muri, submiseruntque postes et ligna, ac deinde miserunt
*of-the-wall and-put-under posts and timbers and then put*
ignem. Sero autem facto, cecidit turris iam in nocte; sed,
*fire evening moreover made fell the-tower now in the-night but*
quia nox erat, non potuerunt proeliari cum illis. Nocte vero
*because night it-was not they-could do-battle with them in-night indeed*
illa surrexerunt festinanter Turci et restauraverunt murum
*that rose hastily the-Turks and restored the-wall*
tam fortiter, ut, veniente die, nemo posset eos laedere ex illa
*so strongly that coming the-day no-one could them to-harm from that*
parte. Modo venit comes de Normannia et comes Stephanus
*side now came the-count of Normandy and count Stephen*
et alii plures, ac deinceps Rogerius de Barnavilla. Boamundus
*and others many and thereafter Roger of Barneville Bohemond*
denique obsedit urbem in prima fronte et iuxta eum Tancredus
*finally besieged the-city in the-first front and beside him Tancred*
et postea dux Godefridus ac deinde comes Flandrensis, iuxta
*and afterward duke Godfrey and then the-count of-Flanders beside*

quem Rotbertus Nortmannus et iuxta eum comes Sancti
*whom Robert the-Norman and beside him the-count of-Saint*
Egidii, iuxta quem Podiensis episcopus. Ita vero per terram
*Gilles beside whom of-Le-Puy the-bishop so indeed by land*
fuit obsessa, ut nemo auderet exire neque intrare; fueruntque
*it-was besieged that no-one dared to-go-out nor to-enter and-were*
ibi omnes congregati in unum. Et quis poterat numerare
*there all gathered into one and who could to-number*
tantam Christi militiam? Nullus, ut puto, tot prudentissimos
*so-great of-Christ an-army none as I-think so-many most-prudent*
milites nec antea vidit nec ultra videre poterit. Erat autem
*knights neither before saw nor further to-see shall-be-able there-was moreover*
ex una parte urbis immensus lacus, in quo Turci suas
*on one side of-the-city an-immense lake on which the-Turks their*
mittebant naves, et exibant et intrabant et afferebant herbam,
*sent ships and went-out and entered and brought grass*
ligna et alia plura. Tunc nostri maiores consiliati
*wood and other-things many then our greater-men having-taken-counsel*
in unum, miserunt nuntios Constantinopolim, dicturos
*into one sent messengers to-Constantinople to-say*
imperatori, ut faceret naves conduci ad Civitot, ubi
*to-the-emperor that he-should-cause ships to-be-brought to Civetot where*
portus est, atque iuberet congregari boves, qui eas traherent
*a-port is and should-order to-be-gathered oxen which them should-drag*
per montanas et silvas, usque approximent lacui; quod
*through the-mountains and woods until they-should-approach the-lake which*
continuo factum est, suosque Turcopulos mandavit cum eis.
*at-once done was and-his Turcopoles he-sent with them*
Die vero, quo naves fuerant conductae, noluerunt
*on-the-day indeed on-which the-ships had-been brought they-were-unwilling*
eas statim mittere in lacum, sed, nocte superveniente,
*them at-once to-put into the-lake but night coming-on*

miserunt eas in ipsum lacum plenas Turcopolis bene ornatis
*they-put them into that-very lake full of-Turcopoles well equipped*
armis. Summo autem diluculo stabant naves optime
*with-arms at-the-earliest moreover dawn stood the-ships excellently*
ordinatae, per lacum properantes contra urbem. Videntes
*ordered over the-lake hastening against the-city seeing*
eas Turci mirabantur, ignorantes an esset eorum gens,
*them the-Turks marveled not-knowing whether it-were their people*
an imperatoris. Postquam autem cognoverunt esse gentem
*or the-emperor's after moreover they-knew it-to-be the-people*
imperatoris, timuerunt usque ad mortem, plorantes et
*of-the-emperor they-feared all-the-way to death weeping and*
lamentantes; Francique gaudebant et dabant gloriam Deo.
*lamenting and-the-Franks rejoiced and gave glory to-God*
Videntes autem Turci, quod nullatenus ex suis exercitibus
*seeing moreover the-Turks that in-no-way from their armies*
adiutorium habere possent, legationem mandaverunt imperatori,
*help to-have they-could an-embassy they-sent to-the-emperor*
quia civitatem sponte redderent, si eos omnimodo abire
*that the-city willingly they-would-surrender if them in-every-way to-go-away*
permitteret cum mulieribus et filiis et omnibus substantiis
*he-would-allow with wives and children and all goods*
suis. Tunc imperator, plenus vana et iniqua cogitatione,
*their then the-emperor full of-vain and wicked thought*
iussit illos impunitos abire sine ullo timore ac sibi
*ordered them unpunished to-go-away without any fear and to-himself*
eos Constantinopolim cum magna fiducia adduci. Quos
*them to-Constantinople with great confidence to-be-brought whom*
studiose servabat, ut illos ad Francorum nocumenta et
*zealously he-kept that them for of-the-Franks harms and*
obstacula paratos haberet. Fuimusque in obsidione illa per
*obstacles ready he-might-have and-we-were in siege that for*

VII hebdomadas et III dies, et multi ex nostris illic
*seven weeks and three days and many of our-men there*
receperunt martyrium et laetantes gaudentesque reddiderunt
*received martyrdom and rejoicing and-glad gave-back*
felices animas Deo, et ex pauperrima gente multi mortui
*happy souls to-God and of the-poorest people many died*
sunt fame pro Christi nomine, qui in caelum triumphantes
*have of-hunger for of-Christ the-name who into heaven triumphing*
portaverunt stolam recepti martyrii, una voce dicentes:
*carried the-robe of-received martyrdom with-one voice saying*
Vindica, Domine, sanguinem nostrum, qui pro te effusus est,
*avenge O-Lord blood our which for you shed is*
qui es benedictus et laudabilis in saecula saeculorum. Amen.
*who are blessed and praiseworthy to the-ages of-ages amen*

## IX · THE BATTLE OF DORYLAEUM

*The army marches in two columns, and on the third day countless Turks, screeching in their tongue, fall on Bohemond's. He has the tents pitched and sends the knights to meet them, while the women bring water to the fighters. The other princes come up, and the Turks flee past their tents and are pursued all day. The author praises the Turks' skill in war and reports their claim to descend from the Franks: had they kept the Christian faith, no one could have matched them.*

Interea reddita civitate et Turcis deductis Constantinopolim,
*meanwhile surrendered the-city and the-Turks led-away to-Constantinople*
unde imperator magis magisque gavisus, quod civitas reddita
*whence the-emperor more and-more rejoicing that the-city surrendered*
sit eius potestati, iussit maximas elemosynas erogari
*was to-his power ordered very-great alms to-be-paid-out*
nostris pauperibus. Denique prima die, qua recessimus
*to-our poor finally on-the-first day on-which we-withdrew*

a civitate, venimus ad quemdam pontem, ibique mansimus
*from the-city we-came to a-certain bridge and-there we-stayed*
per duos dies. Tertia autem die, priusquam lux coepisset
*for two days on-the-third moreover day before the-light had-begun*
oriri, surrexerunt nostri et, quia nox erat, non viderunt
*to-rise rose our-men and because night it-was not they-saw-how*
tenere unam viam, sed sunt divisi per duo agmina et
*to-keep one road but were divided into two columns and*
venerunt divisi per duos dies. In uno agmine fuit vir
*came divided for two days in one column was the-man*
Boamundus et Rotbertus Nortmannus et prudens Tancredus
*Bohemond and Robert the-Norman and prudent Tancred*
et alii plures; in alio fuit comes Sancti Egidii et dux
*and others many in the-other was the-count of-Saint Gilles and duke*
Godefridus et Podiensis episcopus et Hugo magnus comesque
*Godfrey and of-Le-Puy the-bishop and Hugh the-Great and-the-count*
Flandrensis et alii plures. Tertia vero die irruerunt Turci
*of-Flanders and others many on-the-third indeed day rushed the-Turks*
vehementer super Boemundum et eos, qui cum ipso erant.
*vehemently upon Bohemond and those who with him were*
Continuo Turci coeperunt stridere et garrire ac clamare
*at-once the-Turks began to-screech and to-chatter and to-shout*
excelsa voce, dicentes diabolicum sonum nescio quomodo
*with-lofty voice saying a-devilish sound I-know-not how*
in sua lingua. Sapiens vir Boamundus videns innumerabiles
*in their tongue the-wise man Bohemond seeing countless*
Turcos, procul stridentes et clamantes daemoniaca voce,
*Turks far-off screeching and shouting with-demonic voice*
protinus iussit omnes milites descendere et tentoria celeriter
*at-once ordered all the-knights to-dismount and the-tents swiftly*
extendere. Priusquam tentoria fuissent extensa, rursus dixit
*to-stretch-out before the-tents had-been stretched-out again he-said*

omnibus militibus: Seniores et fortissimi milites Christi, ecce
*to-all the-knights lords and most-strong knights of-Christ behold*
modo bellum angustum est undique circa nos. Igitur omnes
*now the-battle narrow is on-all-sides around us therefore all*
milites eant viriliter obviam illis, et pedites prudenter et
*the-knights let-go manfully to-meet them and the-foot-soldiers prudently and*
citius extendant tentoria! Postquam vero hoc totum factum
*more-swiftly let-stretch-out the-tents after indeed this all done*
est, Turci undique iam erant circumcingentes nos dimicando
*was the-Turks on-all-sides now were surrounding us by-fighting*
et iaculando ac spiculando et mirabiliter longe lateque
*and by-hurling and by-spearing and wondrously far and-wide*
sagittando. Nos itaque, quamquam nequivimus resistere illis
*by-shooting-arrows we and-so although we-could-not to-resist them*
neque sufferre pondus tantorum hostium, tamen pertulimus
*nor bear the-weight of-so-many enemies yet we-held*
illuc unanimiter gradum. Feminae quoque nostrae in illa die
*there with-one-mind the-step the-women also our on that day*
fuerunt nobis in maximo refugio, quae afferebant ad bibendum
*were to-us in the-greatest refuge who brought for drinking*
aquam nostris proeliatoribus, et forsitan semper confortabant
*water to-our fighters and perhaps always comforted*
illos pugnantes et defendentes. Vir itaque sapiens
*them fighting and defending the-man and-so wise*
Boamundus protinus mandavit aliis, scilicet egregio
*Bohemond at-once sent-word to-the-others namely to-the-excellent*
comiti de Sancto Egidio et inclito duci Godefrido
*count of Saint Gilles and to-the-renowned duke Godfrey*
et Hugoni Magno atque honestissimo Podiensi episcopo
*and to-Hugh the-Great and to-the-most-honorable of-Le-Puy bishop*
aliisque omnibus Christi militibus, quo festinent
*and-to-the-other all of-Christ knights that they-should-hasten*

et ad bellum citius approximent, dicens: Et si hodie
*and to the-battle more-swiftly draw-near saying and if today*
luctari volunt, viriliter veniant. Qui omnimodo prohibentes,
*to-wrestle they-wish manfully let-them-come who in-every-way forbidding*
deludentes illos et dicentes: Verumtamen hoc fallacium
*mocking them and saying nevertheless this deceitful*
est totum. Nam nos non credebamus iam illos esse tam
*is all for we not believed now them to-be so*
pudentes, quod amplius auderent se erigere et proeliari
*honor-loving that further they-would-dare themselves to-raise and to-do-battle*
nobiscum. Dux itaque Godefridus, audax et fortis, ac Hugo
*with-us the-duke and-so Godfrey bold and strong and Hugh*
Magnus simul venerunt prius cum suis exercitibus, episcopus
*the-Great together came first with their armies the-bishop*
quoque Podiensis prosecutus est illos una cum suo exercitu,
*also of-Le-Puy followed has them together with his army*
et comes de Sancto Egidio iuxta illos cum magna gente.
*and the-count of Saint Gilles beside them with a-great people*
Mirabantur ergo nostri valde, unde esset exorta tanta
*marveled therefore our-men greatly whence had arisen so-great*
multitudo Turcorum et Arabum et Saracenorum et aliorum,
*a-multitude of-Turks and of-Arabs and of-Saracens and of-others*
quos enumerare ignoro; quia paene omnes montes et
*whom to-enumerate I-know-not-how because almost all the-mountains and*
colles et valles et omnia plana loca intus et extra undique
*hills and valleys and all level places within and without on-all-sides*
erant cooperta de illa excommunicata generatione. Factus est
*were covered with that excommunicate generation made was*
itaque sermo secretus inter nos laudantes et consulentes atque
*and-so a-speech secret among us praising and counseling and*
dicentes: Estote omnimodo unanimes in fide Christi et
*saying be in-every-way of-one-mind in the-faith of-Christ and*

sanctae crucis vexilli victoria, quia hodie omnes divites,
*of-the-holy cross of-the-banner in-the-victory because today all rich*
si Deo placet, effecti eritis. Continuo fuerunt ordinatae
*if to-God it-pleases made you-shall-be at-once were ordered*
nostrorum acies. In sinistra parte fuit vir sapiens
*of-our-men the-battle-lines on the-left side was the-man wise*
Boamundus et Rotbertus Nortmannus et prudens Tancredus
*Bohemond and Robert the-Norman and prudent Tancred*
ac honestissimus miles Rotbertus de Ansa et inclitus
*and the-most-honorable knight Robert of Anzi and the-renowned*
Richardus de Principatu. Episcopus vero Podiensis venit per
*Richard of the-Principate the-bishop but of-Le-Puy came by*
alteram montanam, undique circumcingens incredulos Turcos;
*the-other mountain on-all-sides surrounding the-unbelieving Turks*
in sinistra quoque parte equitavit fortissimus miles Raimundus,
*on the-left also side rode the-most-strong knight Raymond*
comes de Sancto Egidio. In dextera vero parte fuit honorabilis
*count of Saint Gilles on the-right indeed side was the-honorable*
dux Godefridus et acerrimus miles Flandrensis comes et Hugo
*duke Godfrey and the-most-fierce knight of-Flanders the-count and Hugh*
Magnus et alii plures, quorum nomina ignoro. Statim autem
*the-Great and others many whose names I-know-not at-once moreover*
venientibus militibus nostris, Turci et Arabes et Saraceni et
*coming the-knights our the-Turks and Arabs and Saracens and*
Angulani et omnes barbarae nationes dederunt velociter fugam
*Agulani and all the-barbarous nations gave swiftly flight*
per compendia montium et per plana loca. Erat autem
*by the-short-cuts of-the-mountains and by level places was moreover*
numerus Turcorum, Persarum, Publicanorum, Saracenorum,
*the-number of-the-Turks of-the-Persians of-the-Paulicians of-the-Saracens*
Angulanorum aliorumque paganorum CCCLX milia
*of-the-Agulani and-of-the-other pagans three-hundred-and-sixty thousand*

extra Arabes, quorum numerum nemo scit nisi solus Deus.
*besides the-Arabs whose number no-one knows except alone God*
Fugerunt vero nimis velociter ad sua tentoria, ibique eos
*they-fled indeed very swiftly to their tents and-there them*
diu morari non licuit. Iterum vero arripuerunt fugam,
*long to-stay not it-was-allowed again indeed they-took-up flight*
nosque illos persecuti sumus occidentes tota una die et
*and-we them pursued have killing-them the-whole one day and*
accepimus spolia multa: aurum, argentum, equos et asinos,
*we-received spoils many gold silver horses and asses*
camelos, oves et boves et plurima alia, quae ignoramus,
*camels sheep and oxen and very-many other-things which we-know-not*
et nisi Dominus fuisset nobiscum in bello et aliam
*and unless the-Lord had-been with-us in the-battle and another*
cito nobis misisset aciem, nullus nostrorum evasisset,
*quickly to-us had-sent battle-line none of-ours would-have-escaped*
quia ab hora tertia usque in horam nonam perduravit
*because from the-hour third all-the-way into the-hour ninth lasted*
haec pugna. Sed omnipotens Deus, pius et misericors, qui
*this fight but almighty God pious and merciful who*
non permisit suos milites perire nec in manus inimicorum
*not allowed his knights to-perish nor into the-hands of-the-enemies*
incidere, festine nobis adiutorium misit. Sed fuerunt illic
*to-fall speedily to-us help sent but were there*
mortui duo ex nostris milites honorabiles, scilicet Godefridus
*dead two of our knights honorable namely Godfrey*
de Monte Scabioso et Willelmus Marchisi filius, frater
*of Monte Scaglioso and William of-the-Marquis son brother*
Tancredi, aliique milites et pedites, quorum nomina ignoro.
*of-Tancred and-other knights and foot-soldiers whose names I-know-not*

Quis unquam tam sapiens aut doctus audebit describere
*who ever so wise or learned shall-dare to-describe*
prudentiam, militiam et fortitudinem Turcorum? Qui putabant
*the-prudence the-warfare and the-strength of-the-Turks who thought*
terrere gentem Francorum minis suarum sagittarum, sicut
*to-terrify the-people of-the-Franks with-threats of-their arrows as*
terruerunt Arabes, Saracenos et Hermenios, Suranios et
*they-terrified the-Arabs Saracens and Armenians Syrians and*
Graecos? Sed, si Deo placet, nunquam tantum valebunt
*Greeks but if to-God it-pleases never so-much they-shall-avail*
quantum nostri. Verumtamen dicunt se esse de Francorum
*as our-men nevertheless they-say themselves to-be of of-the-Franks*
generatione, et quia nullus homo naturaliter debet esse miles
*the-generation and that no man by-nature ought to-be a-knight*
nisi Franci et illi. Veritatem dicam, quam nemo audebit
*except the-Franks and they the-truth I-shall-say which no-one shall-dare*
prohibere: Certe, si in fide Christi et Christianitate sancta
*to-forbid certainly if in the-faith of-Christ and Christendom holy*
semper firmi fuissent et unum Dominum in trinitate
*always firm they-had-been and one Lord in trinity*
confiteri voluissent, Deique filium natum de virgine matre,
*to-confess had-wished and-of-God the-son born of a-virgin mother*
passum et resurgentem a mortuis et in caelum suis
*having-suffered and rising from the-dead and into heaven his*
cernentibus discipulis ascendentem, ac deinde consolationem
*beholding disciples ascending and then the-consolation*
Sancti Spiritus perfecte mittentem et eum in caelo et in
*of-the-Holy Spirit perfectly sending and him in heaven and on*
terra regnantem recta mente et fide credidissent, ipsis
*earth reigning with-right mind and faith had-believed than-them*
potentiores vel fortiores vel bellorum ingeniosissimos nullus
*more-powerful or stronger or in-wars most-ingenious no-one*

invenire potuisset: et tamen gratia Dei victi sunt a
*to-find could-have and yet by-the-grace of-God conquered were by*
nostris. Hoc bellum factum est primo die Julii.
*our-men this battle done was on-the-first day of-July*

## X · THROUGH ROMANIA TO HERACLEA AND TARSUS

*Kilij-Arslan tells the Arabs how the Franks' numbers terrified him, and the fleeing Turks deceive the towns and plunder them. The army crosses a waterless land, eating plucked ears and using oxen and goats as beasts. At Heraclea it routs the Turks. Tancred takes Tarsus, but Baldwin claims it and Tancred withdraws, receiving Adana and Mamistra.*

Postquam vero Turci, inimici Dei et Sanctae Christianitatis,
*after indeed the-Turks enemies of-God and of-holy Christendom*
omnino fuerunt devicti, per IV dies et noctes fugientes huc
*wholly were conquered for four days and nights fleeing hither*
et illuc, contigit, ut Solimanus, dux illorum, filius Solimani
*and thither it-happened that Kilij-Arslan the-duke their son of-Suleiman*
veteris, fugeret de Nicea, qui invenit X milia Arabum, qui
*the-old fled from Nicaea who found ten thousand of-Arabs who*
dixerunt ei: O infelix et infelicior omnibus gentilibus! cur
*said to-him O unhappy and more-unhappy than-all the-gentiles why*
tremefactus fugis? Quibus Solimanus lacrimabiliter respondit:
*terrified do-you-flee to-whom Kilij-Arslan tearfully answered*
Quoniam olim cum habuissem omnes Francos devictos, eosque
*since once when I-had all the-Franks conquered and-them*
putarem iam in captivitate ligatos, dum paulatim voluissem
*I-thought now in captivity bound while little-by-little I-wished*
ligare adinvicem, tunc respiciens retro, vidi tam innumerabilem
*to-bind them-together then looking back I-saw so countless*

gentem eorum, ut si vos aut aliquis illic adesset, putaret,
*a-people of-theirs that if you or anyone there were-present he-would-think*
quod omnes montes et colles vallesque et omnia plana loca
*that all the-mountains and hills and-valleys and all level places*
plena essent illorum multitudine. Nos igitur illos cernentes
*full were of-their multitude we therefore them seeing*
statim coepimus capere subitaneum iter, timentes tam
*at-once began to-take a-sudden journey fearing so*
mirabiliter, ut vix evaserimus de illorum manibus: unde
*wondrously that scarcely we-escaped from their hands whence*
adhuc in nimio terrore sumus. Et si mihi et verbis meis
*still in excessive terror we-are and if me and words my*
velletis credere, auferretis vos hinc, quia, si et
*you-would-wish to-believe you-would-take-away yourselves hence because if also*
ipsi potuerint vos solummodo scire, unus ex vobis vix
*they-themselves could you only to-know one of you scarcely*
amplius evadet vivus. At illi audientes talia retrorsum
*further shall-escape alive but they hearing such-things backward*
verterunt dorsa et se expanderunt per universam
*turned backs and themselves spread through all*
Romaniam. Tunc veniebamus nos persequentes iniquissimos
*Romania then came we pursuing the-most-wicked*
Turcos, cotidie fugientes ante nos. At illi venientes ad cuncta
*Turks daily fleeing before us but they coming to all*
castra sive urbes, fingentes et deludentes habitatores terrarum
*castles or cities pretending and deceiving the-inhabitants of-lands*
illarum dicebant: Nos devicimus Christianos omnes et
*those said we have-conquered the-Christians all and*
superavimus illos ita, ut nullus eorum iam unquam audeat
*overcome them so that none of-them now ever may-dare*
erigere se ante nos; tantum permittite nos intus intrare.
*to-raise himself before us only allow us inside to-enter*

Qui intrantes spoliabant ecclesias et domos et alia
*who entering despoiled churches and houses and other-things*
omnia, et ducebant equos secum et asinos et mulos,
*all and led horses with-themselves and asses and mules*
aurum et argentum et ea, quae reperire poterant. Adhuc
*gold and silver and those-things which to-find they-could still*
quoque filios Christianorum secum tollebant et ardebant
*also the-sons of-the-Christians with-themselves they-took and burned*
ac devastabant omnia convenientia sive utilia, fugientes et
*and laid-waste all-things fitting or useful fleeing and*
paventes valde ante faciem nostram. Nos itaque persequebamur
*fearing greatly before the-face our we and-so pursued*
eos per deserta et inaquosam et inhabitabilem terram,
*them through deserts and waterless and uninhabitable land*
ex qua vix vivi evasimus vel exivimus. Fames vero et
*from which scarcely alive we-escaped or went-out hunger but and*
sitis undique coartabant nos, nihilque penitus nobis erat ad
*thirst on-all-sides pressed us and-nothing at-all to-us was for*
edendum, nisi forte vellentes et fricantes spicas manibus
*eating except perhaps plucking and rubbing ears with-hands*
nostris, tali cibo quam miserrime vivebamus. Illic fuit
*our on-such food how most-wretchedly we-lived there was*
mortua maxima pars nostrorum equitum, eo quod
*dead the-greatest part of-our horsemen for-the-reason that*
multi eorum remanserunt pedites, et pro penuria equorum
*many of-them remained foot-soldiers and for lack of-horses*
erant nobis boves loco caballorum, et pro nimia necessitate
*were for-us oxen in-place of-horses and for excessive need*
succedebant nobis capri et multones ac canes ad portandum.
*succeeded to-us goats and wethers and dogs for carrying*

Interea coepimus intrare in terram optimam, plenam
*meanwhile we-began to-enter into a-land most-excellent full*
corporalibus alimentis et deliciis omnibusque bonis, ac
*of-bodily nourishments and delights and-all goods and*
deinceps appropinquavimus Iconio. Habitatores vero terrae
*thereafter we-drew-near to-Iconium the-inhabitants but of-land*
illius suadebant et admonebant nos nobiscum ferre utres
*that persuaded and advised us with-us to-carry skins*
plenos aqua, quia illic in itinere diei unius est maxima
*full of-water because there on the-journey of-day one is the-greatest*
penuria aquae. Nos vero ita fecimus, donec pervenimus
*lack of-water we but so did until we-came*
ad quoddam flumen, ibique hospitati sumus per II dies;
*to a-certain river and-there lodged we-have for two days*
coeperunt autem cursores nostri ante ire, donec pervenerunt
*began moreover the-runners our ahead to-go until they-came*
ad Erachiam, in qua erat Turcorum nimia congregatio,
*to Heraclea in which was of-Turks an-excessive gathering*
exspectans et insidians, quomodo posset Christi milites
*waiting and lying-in-wait how it-might of-Christ the-knights*
nocere et contristare. Quos Turcos Dei omnipotentis milites
*to-harm and grieve which Turks of-God almighty the-knights*
invenientes audacter invaserunt. Superati itaque sunt inimici
*finding boldly attacked overcome and-so were enemies*
nostri in die illa; tamque celeriter fugiebant, quam sagitta
*our on day that and-as swiftly they-fled as an-arrow*
fugit emissa ictu valido chordae et arcus. Nostri igitur
*flies sent by-the-blow strong of-the-string and of-the-bow our-men therefore*
intraverunt statim in civitatem, ibique mansimus per IV dies.
*entered at-once into the-city and-there we-stayed for four days*

Illic divisit se ab aliis Tancredus, Marchisi filius, et
*there divided himself from the-others Tancred of-the-Marquis son and*
Balduinus comes egregius, frater ducis Godefridi; simulque
*Baldwin the-count excellent brother of-duke Godfrey and-together*
intraverunt vallem de Botrenthrot. Divisit quoque se
*entered the-valley of Botrenthrot divided also himself*
Tancredus et venit Tarsum solummodo cum suis militibus.
*Tancred and came to-Tarsus only with his knights*
Exierunt denique Turci de urbe et venerunt obviam eis
*went-out finally the-Turks from the-city and came to-meet them*
atque in unum congregati properaverunt ad bellum contra
*and into one gathered hastened to battle against*
Christianos. Appropinquantibus itaque nostris et pugnantibus,
*the-Christians drawing-near and-so our-men and fighting*
dederunt inimici nostri fugam, revertentes in urbem celeri
*gave the-enemies our flight returning into the-city with-swift*
gressu. Tancredus vero, vir prudens atque honorabilis
*step Tancred but the-man prudent and honorable*
miles Christi, pervenit laxatis loris et castrametatus est ante
*knight of-Christ came loosened reins and encamped has before*
portam urbis. Ex alia igitur parte venit vir inclitus
*the-gate of-the-city from another therefore side came the-man renowned*
comes Balduinus cum suo exercitu, postulans et deprecans
*count Baldwin with his army asking and entreating*
Tancredum, acerrimum militem, quatinus eum amicissime in
*Tancred the-most-fierce knight so-that him most-friendlily into*
societatem civitatis dignaretur suscipere. Cui ait Tancredus:
*the-partnership of-the-city he-would-deign to-receive to-whom says Tancred*
«Te omnimodo in hac societate denego». Nocte itaque
*you in-every-way in this partnership I-refuse night and-so*
superveniente, omnes Turci tremefacti fugam una arripuerunt.
*coming-on all the-Turks terrified flight together took-up*

Exierunt denique habitatores civitatis sub illa noctis obscuritate,
*went-out finally the-inhabitants of-the-city under that of-night darkness*
clamantes excelsa voce: Currite! invictissimi Franci, currite!
*shouting with-lofty voice run most-unconquered Franks run*
quia Turci expergefacti vestro timore omnes pariter recedunt.
*because the-Turks roused by-your fear all together withdraw*
Orta autem die, venerunt maiores civitatis et reddiderunt
*risen moreover the-day came the-greater-men of-the-city and surrendered*
sponte civitatem, dicentes illis, qui super hoc litigabant
*willingly the-city saying to-those who over this were-quarreling*
adinvicem: Sinite modo! Seniores sinite! quia volumus et
*among-themselves stop now lords stop because we-wish and*
petimus dominari et regnare super nos illum, qui heri
*ask to-be-lord and to-reign over us him who yesterday*
tam viriliter pugnavit cum Turcis. Balduinus itaque, mirificus
*so manfully fought with the-Turks Baldwin and-so the-wondrous*
comes, altercabatur et litigabat cum Tancredo, dicens: Intremus
*count wrangled and quarreled with Tancred saying let-us-enter*
simul et spoliemus civitatem: et qui plus potuerit
*together and let-us-despoil the-city and who more shall-have-been-able*
habere, habeat; et qui poterit capere, capiat. Cui obstans
*to-have let-him-have and who can to-take let-him-take to-whom opposing*
fortissimus Tancredus dixit: Absit hoc a me; ego namque
*the-most-strong Tancred said far-be this from me I for*
Christianos nolo exspoliare; homines huius civitatis elegerunt
*Christians wish-not to-despoil the-men of-this city have-chosen*
me dominum super se, meque habere desiderant. Tandem
*me lord over themselves and-me to-have they-desire at-length*
nequivit vir fortis Tancredus diu luctari cum Balduino,
*could-not the-man strong Tancred long to-wrestle with Baldwin*
doctissimo comite, quia illi magnus erat exercitus; tamen
*the-most-learned count because to-him a-great was army yet*

volens nolensque dimisit eam et viriliter recessit cum suo
*willing and-unwilling he-left it and manfully withdrew with his*
exercitu, fueruntque ei statim traditae duae optimae
*army and-were to-him at-once handed-over two most-excellent*
civitates, videlicet Athena et Manustra et plurima castra.
*cities namely Adana and Mamistra and very-many castles*

## XI · THROUGH ARMENIA TO ANTIOCH

*The main army passes through Armenia. At a castle too strong to take, the princes give the land to Simeon, a native, and beyond Caesarea they give a rich city to Peter of the Alps. At Coxon the people surrender, and Raymond sends knights toward Antioch, where Peter of Roaix wins Rusa. The army crosses a devilish mountain where horses fall and knights sell their arms, reaches Marash, and comes down into the valley of Antioch.*

Maior vero exercitus, scilicet Raimundus, comes de Sancto
*the-greater but army namely Raymond count of Saint*
Egidio, et doctissimus Boamundus duxque Godefridus et alii
*Gilles and the-most-learned Bohemond and-duke Godfrey and other*
principes in Hermeniorum intraverunt terram, sitientes atque
*princes into of-the-Armenians entered the-land thirsting and*
aestuantes Turcorum sanguinem. Tandem pervenerunt ad
*burning of-the-Turks for-the-blood at-length they-came to*
quoddam castrum, quod tam forte erat, ut nihil ei possent
*a-certain castle which so strong was that nothing to-it they-could*
facere. Erat autem ibi homo quidam, nomine Simeon, qui
*to-do there-was moreover there a-man certain by-name Simeon who*
in illa ortus fuit regione, quique hanc petiit terram, quo eam
*in that born was region and-who this sought land that it*
de manibus defenderet inimicorum Turcorum, cui sponte
*from the-hands he-might-defend of-the-enemy Turks to-whom willingly*

illi dederunt terram, quique remansit ibi cum sua gente. Nos
*they gave the-land and-who remained there with his people we*
denique exeuntes inde pervenimus feliciter usque Caesaream
*finally going-out thence came happily up-to Caesarea*
Cappadociae, a Cappadocia autem egressi venimus ad
*of-Cappadocia from Cappadocia moreover having-gone-out we-came to*
quamdam civitatem pulcherrimam et nimis uberrimam, quam
*a-certain city most-beautiful and very most-fruitful which*
paululum ante nostrum adventum obsederant Turci per III
*a-little before our coming had-besieged the-Turks for three*
hebdomadas, sed non superaverant; mox illuc advenientibus
*weeks but not had-overcome-it soon thither arriving*
nobis, continuo tradidit se in manu nostra cum magna
*us at-once it-gave itself into the-hand our with great*
laetitia. Hanc igitur petiit quidam miles, cui nomen Petrus
*joy this therefore sought a-certain knight to-whom the-name Peter*
de Alpibus, ab omnibus senioribus, quatinus eam defenderet
*of the-Alps from all the-lords so-that it he-might-defend*
in fidelitate Dei et Sancti Sepulcri et seniorum atque
*in fealty to-God and the-Holy Sepulcher and the-lords and*
imperatoris, cui cum nimio amore gratis concesserunt
*the-emperor to-whom with very-great love freely they-granted*
eam. Sequenti nocte audivit Boamundus, quod Turci, qui
*it on-the-following night heard Bohemond that the-Turks who*
fuerant in obsessione civitatis, frequenter praecederent nos.
*had-been at the-siege of-the-city in-numbers were-going-before us*
Extemplo praeparavit se solummodo cum militibus, quatinus
*forthwith he-prepared himself only with knights so-that*
illos undique expugnaret; sed illos invenire non potuit.
*them on-all-sides he-might-overcome but them to-find not he-could*

Deinde venimus ad quamdam urbem nomine Coxon, in qua
*then we-came to a-certain city by-name Coxon in which*
erat maxima ubertas omnium bonorum, quae nobis erant
*was the-greatest plenty of-all goods which to-us were*
necessaria. Christiani igitur, videlicet alumni urbis illius,
*necessary the-Christians therefore namely the-natives of-city that*
reddiderunt se statim; nosque fuimus ibi optime per III
*surrendered themselves at-once and-we were there excellently for three*
dies, et illic maxime sunt recuperati nostri. Audiens itaque
*days and there most were recovered our-men hearing and-so*
Raimundus, comes de Sancto Egidio, quod Turci, qui erant
*Raymond count of Saint Gilles that the-Turks who were*
in custodia Antiochiae, discessissent, in suo invenit consilio,
*in the-guard of-Antioch had-departed in his he-found counsel*
quod mitteret illuc aliquos ex suis militibus, qui eam
*that he-should-send thither some of his knights who it*
diligenter custodirent. Tandem elegit illos, quos legare volebat,
*diligently should-guard at-length he-chose those whom to-send he-wished*
videlicet Petrum de Castellione vicecomitem, Willelmum de
*namely Peter of Castillon the-viscount William of*
Monte Pislerio, Petrum de Roasa, Petrum Raimundum de
*Mont Pellier Peter of Roaix Peter Raymond of*
Pul, cum D militibus. Venerunt itaque in vallem
*Hautpoul with five-hundred knights they-came and-so into the-valley*
prope Antiochiam ad quoddam castrum Publicanorum; illicque
*near Antioch to a-certain castle of-the-Paulicians and-there*
audierunt Turcos esse in civitate, eamque fortiter defendere
*they-heard the-Turks to-be in the-city and-it strongly to-defend*
praeparabant. Petrus de Roasa divisit se ibi ab aliis, et
*they-were-preparing Peter of Roaix divided himself there from the-others and*
proxima nocte transivit prope Antiochiam, intravitque vallem
*on-the-next night passed near Antioch and-entered the-valley*

de Rugia et invenit Turcos et Saracenos, et praeliatus est
*of Rugia and found Turks and Saracens and fought has*
cum eis et occidit multos ex eis, et alios persecutus est
*with them and killed many of them and others pursued has*
valde. Videntes hoc Hermenii, habitatores terrae illius, illum
*greatly seeing this the-Armenians the-inhabitants of-land that him*
fortiter superasse paganos, continuo reddiderunt se.
*strongly to-have-overcome the-pagans at-once surrendered themselves*
Ipse vero statim coepit Rusam civitatem et plurima castra.
*he but at-once took Rusa the-city and very-many castles*
Nos autem, qui remansimus, exeuntes inde intravimus in
*we moreover who remained going-out thence entered into*
diabolicam montanam, quae tam erat alta et angusta, ut
*a-devilish mountain which so was high and narrow that*
nullus nostrorum auderet per semitam, quae in monte
*none of-ours dared by the-path which on the-mountain*
patebat, ante alium praeire. Illic praecipitabant se
*lay-open before another to-go-ahead there threw themselves-down*
equi et unus saumarius praecipitabat alium. Milites ergo
*horses and one packhorse threw-down another the-knights therefore*
stabant undique tristes, feriebant se manibus prae nimia
*stood on-all-sides sad struck themselves with-hands for excessive*
tristitia et dolore, dubitantes quid facerent de semetipsis
*sadness and grief doubting what they-should-do about themselves*
et de suis armis, vendentes suos clipeos et loricas optimas
*and about their arms selling their shields and hauberks most-excellent*
cum galeis solummodo propter III aut V denarios vel prout
*with helmets only for three or five pennies or as*
quisque poterat habere. Qui autem vendere nequibant, gratis
*each could to-have who moreover to-sell could-not freely*
a se iactabant et ibant. Exeuntes igitur de exsecrata
*from themselves threw and went going-out therefore from the-accursed*

montana pervenimus ad civitatem, quae vocatur Marasim.
*mountain we-came to the-city which is-called Marash*
Cultores vero illius civitatis exierunt obviam nobis laetantes
*the-inhabitants but of-that city went-out to-meet us rejoicing*
et deferentes maximum mercatum; illicque habuimus omnem
*and bringing a-very-great market and-there we-had every*
copiam, exspectando donec veniret dominus Boamundus.
*abundance waiting until should-come lord Bohemond*
Venerunt itaque nostri milites in vallem, in qua regalis
*came and-so our knights into the-valley in which the-royal*
civitas Antiochia sita est, quae est caput totius Syriae,
*city Antioch situated is which is the-head of-all Syria*
quamque Dominus Jesus Christus tradidit beato Petro,
*and-which the-Lord Jesus Christ handed-over to-blessed Peter*
apostolorum principi, quatinus eam ad cultum sanctae fidei
*of-the-apostles the-prince so-that it to the-worship of-the-holy faith*
revocaret, qui vivit et regnat cum Deo Patre in unitate
*he-might-call-back who lives and reigns with God the-Father in the-unity*
Spiritus Sancti Deus per omnia saecula saeculorum. Amen.
*of-the-Holy Spirit God through all ages of-ages amen*

## XII · THE SIEGE OF ANTIOCH BEGINS

*At the Iron Bridge the forerunners rout a relieving force. On October 21 the army besieges three of Antioch's gates and finds plenty around the city. Armenians and Syrians spy for the Turks, who sally against the pilgrims. Bohemond scatters a force from Harenc, and the Turks shoot arrows into his camp.*

Cum coepissemus appropinquare ad Pontem Farreum, cursores
*when we-had-begun to-draw-near to the-Bridge Iron the-runners*
nostri, qui semper solebant nos praecedere, invenerunt Turcos
*our who always were-wont us to-go-before found Turks*
innumerabiles congregatos obviam eis, qui dare adiutorium
*countless gathered to-meet them who to-give help*
Antiochiae festinabant. Irruentes igitur nostri uno corde
*to-Antioch were-hastening rushing therefore our-men with-one heart*
et mente super illos superaverunt Turcos. Consternati sunt
*and mind upon them overcame the-Turks dismayed were*
barbari dederuntque fugam, et multi mortui sunt ex eis
*the-barbarians and-gave flight and many died have of them*
in ipso certamine. Nostri igitur superantes illos, Dei gratia,
*in that-very combat our-men therefore overcoming them of-God by-grace*
acceperunt spolia multa, equos, camelos, mulos, asinos, onustos
*received spoils many horses camels mules asses laden*
frumento et vino. Venientes denique nostri castrametati sunt
*with-grain and wine coming finally our-men encamped have*
super ripam fluminis. Protinus vir sapiens Boamundus cum
*upon the-bank of-the-river at-once the-man wise Bohemond with*
IIII milibus militum venit ante portam civitatis vigilare, si
*four thousand of-knights came before the-gate of-the-city to-watch whether*
forte aliquis nocte latenter exiret aut intraret civitatem.
*perhaps anyone by-night secretly should-go-out or should-enter the-city*

Crastina vero die pervenerunt usque ad Antiochiam
*on-the-next indeed day they-came all-the-way to Antioch*
media die in IV. feria, quae est XII. Kal.
*at-mid day on the-fourth weekday which is the-twelfth-day-before the-Kalends*
Novembris, et obsedimus mirabiliter III portas civitatis,
*of-November and we-besieged wondrously three gates of-the-city*
quoniam in alia parte deerat nobis locus obsidendi,
*since on the-other side was-lacking to-us room of-besieging*
quia alta et nimis angusta montana nos coartabat. Tantum
*because a-high and very narrow mountain us hemmed-in so-much*
autem timebant nos undique inimici nostri Turci, qui erant
*moreover feared us on-all-sides enemies our the-Turks who were*
intus in urbe, ut nemo eorum auderet offendere aliquem
*inside in the-city that no-one of-them dared to-attack anyone*
ex nostris fere per spatium dierum XV. Mox hospitantes
*of our-men almost for the-space of-days fifteen soon lodging*
nos circa Antiochiam reperimus illic omnem abundantiam,
*we around Antioch we-found there every abundance*
videlicet vineas undique plenas, foveas plenas frumento,
*namely vineyards on-all-sides full pits full of-grain*
arbores refertas pomis, et alia multa bona corporibus utilia.
*trees crammed with-fruits and other many goods for-bodies useful*
Hermenii et Surani, qui erant intus in urbe, exeuntes et
*the-Armenians and Syrians who were inside in the-city going-out and*
ostendentes sese fugere, cotidie erant nobiscum, sed eorum
*showing themselves to-flee daily were with-us but their*
uxores in civitate. Illi vero ingeniose investigabant nostrum
*wives in the-city they but cunningly searched-out our*
esse nostramque qualitatem, referebantque omnia his
*being and-our quality and-reported all-things to-these*
excommunicatis, qui in urbe inclusi. Postquam vero Turci
*excommunicates who in the-city shut-in after indeed the-Turks*

fuerunt edocti de nostra essentia, coeperunt paulatim de urbe
*were taught about our being they-began little-by-little from the-city*
exire nostrosque peregrinos undique coangustare, non solum
*to-go-out and-our pilgrims on-all-sides to-hem-in not only*
ex una parte, sed undique erant latentes obviam nobis ad
*from one side but on-all-sides they-were lurking to-meet us toward*
mare et ad montanam. Erat autem non longe castrum,
*the-sea and toward the-mountain there-was moreover not far a-castle*
cui nomen Aregh, ubi erant congregati multi Turci fortissimi,
*to-which the-name Harenc where were gathered many Turks most-strong*
qui frequenter conturbabant nostros. Audientes itaque nostri
*who often troubled our-men hearing and-so our*
seniores talia, nimis doluerunt, miseruntque ex militibus
*lords such-things very-much grieved and-sent some-of knights*
suis, qui diligenter explorarent locum, ubi erant Turci; reperto
*their who diligently should-explore the-place where were the-Turks found*
igitur loco, ubi latebant, nostri milites, qui quaerebant illos,
*therefore the-place where they-lurked our knights who sought them*
obviant eis. At nostris paulatim retrogredientibus, ubi sciebant
*meet them but our-men little-by-little drawing-back where they-knew*
Boamundum esse cum suo exercitu, statim fuerunt illic
*Bohemond to-be with his army at-once were there*
mortui II ex nostris. Hoc audiens Boamundus, surrexit cum
*dead two of our-men this hearing Bohemond rose with*
suis ut fortissimus Christi athleta, et barbari irruerunt
*his-men as the-most-strong of-Christ champion and the-barbarians rushed*
contra illos, eo quod nostri erant pauci; tamen simul
*against them for-the-reason that our-men were few yet together*
iuncti inierunt bellum. Mortui sunt vero multi ex nostris
*joined they-entered battle died have indeed many of our*

inimicis et capti alii ducti sunt ante portam urbis, ibique
*enemies and captured others led were before the-gate of-the-city and-there*
decollabantur, ut magis tristes fierent qui erant in urbe.
*were-beheaded that more sad might-become those-who were in the-city*
Exibant quidem alii de civitate et ascendebant in quandam
*went-out indeed others from the-city and climbed onto a-certain*
portam et sagittabant nos ita, ut sagittae eorum caderent
*gate and shot-arrows-at us so that the-arrows their fell*
in domini Boamundi plateam, et una mulier occubuit
*into of-lord Bohemond the-square and one woman fell-dead*
ictu sagittae.
*by-the-blow of-an-arrow*

## XIII · THE CASTLE OF MAREGART AND THE FORAGING BATTLE

*The princes build a castle on Maregart and guard it in turn as food grows dear before Christmas. Bohemond and the count of Flanders lead twenty thousand to forage in Saracen land, where Turks and Arabs from Jerusalem, Damascus, and Aleppo attack them, but the count, armed with the cross, routs them, and the foragers return praising God.*

Congregati sunt itaque omnes maiores nostri et ordinaverunt
*gathered were and-so all greater-men our and arranged*
concilium, dicentes: Faciamus castrum in vertice montis
*a-council saying let-us-make a-castle on the-top of-the-mount*
Maregart, qui mons est super hostem Boamundi, quo securi
*Maregart which mount is above the-camp of-Bohemond that safe*
atque tuti possimus permanere de Turcorum formidine.
*and secure we-may-be-able to-remain from of-the-Turks fear*
Facto itaque castro atque munito, omnes maiores illud
*made and-so the-castle and fortified all the-greater-men it*

invicem custodiebant. Iamiam coeperant frumentum et
*in-turn guarded now-and-now had-begun grain and*
omnia nutrimenta corporum nimis esse cara ante Natale
*all nourishments of-bodies very to-be dear before the-Birthday*
Domini. Foras penitus non audebamus exire nihilque penitus
*of-the-Lord outside at-all not we-dared to-go-out and-nothing at-all*
in terra Christianorum invenire poteramus ad edendum. In
*in the-land of-the-Christians to-find we-could for eating into*
Saracenorum namque terra nemo intrare audebat nisi cum
*of-the-Saracens for the-land no-one to-enter dared except with*
magna gente. Ad ultimum statuerunt nostri seniores concilium
*a-great people at the-last resolved our lords a-council*
ordinando qualiter regerent tantas gentes. Invenerunt in
*arranging how they-should-rule so-great peoples they-found in*
consilio, ut una pars nostri iret diligenter attrahere
*council that one part of-ours should-go diligently to-bring-in*
stipendium et ubique custodire exercitum; alia quoque pars
*supplies and everywhere to-guard the-army the-other also part*
fiducialiter remaneret custodire hostem. Boamundus denique
*confidently should-remain to-guard the-camp Bohemond finally*
dixit: Seniores et prudentissimi milites, si vultis et honestum
*said lords and most-prudent knights if you-wish and honorable*
et bonum vobis videtur, ego ero cum Flandrensi comite
*and good to-you it-seems I shall-be with the-Flemish count*
iturus cum eo. Celebratis itaque gloriosissime sollemnitatibus
*about-to-go with him celebrated and-so most-gloriously the-solemnities*
Nativitatis, in die lunae, II. scilicet feria, egressi sunt
*of-the-Nativity on the-day of-the-moon the-second namely weekday went-out have*
illi et alii plus quam XX milia militum et peditum,
*they and others more than twenty thousand of-knights and of-foot-soldiers*
ac sani et incolumes intraverunt terram Saracenorum.
*and sound and unharmed entered the-land of-the-Saracens*

Congregati quippe erant multi Turci et Arabes et Saraceni
*gathered indeed were many Turks and Arabs and Saracens*
ab Jerusalem et Damasco et Aleph et ab aliis regionibus,
*from Jerusalem and Damascus and Aleppo and from other regions*
qui veniebant fortitudinem Antiochiae dare. Audientes itaque
*who were-coming strength to-Antioch to-give hearing and-so*
isti Christianorum gentem conductam esse in illorum terram,
*these of-the-Christians the-people led to-be into their land*
ilico praeparaverunt se ad bellum contra Christianos,
*at-once prepared themselves for battle against the-Christians*
atque summo diluculo venerunt in locum, ubi gens nostra
*and at-the-highest dawn came into the-place where people our*
erat in unum. Diviseruntque se barbari et fecerunt
*was in one and-divided themselves the-barbarians and made*
duas acies, unam ante et aliam retro, cupientes ex omni
*two battle-lines one in-front and another behind desiring from every*
parte circumcingere nos. Egregius itaque comes Flandrensis,
*side to-surround us the-excellent and-so count of-Flanders*
undique regimine fidei signoque crucis, quam fideliter
*on-all-sides with-the-rule of-faith and-with-the-sign of-the-cross which faithfully*
cotidie baiulabat, armatus, occurrit illis una cum Boamundo,
*daily he-carried armed ran-to-meet them together with Bohemond*
irrueruntque nostri unanimiter super illos, qui statim
*and-rushed our-men with-one-mind upon them who at-once*
arripuerunt fugam et festinanter verterunt retro scapulas; ac
*took-up flight and hastily turned back shoulders and*
mortui sunt ex illis plurimi, nostrique ceperunt equos eorum
*died have of them very-many and-our-men took horses their*
et alia spolia; alii vero, qui vivi remanserant, velociter fugerunt
*and other spoils others but who alive had-remained swiftly fled*
et in iram perditionis abierunt. Nos autem revertentes cum
*and into the-wrath of-perdition went-away we moreover returning with*

magno tripudio, laudavimus et magnificavimus trinum et
*great rejoicing praised and magnified the-threefold and*
unum Deum, qui vivit et regnat nunc et in aevum. Amen.
*one God who lives and reigns now and into eternity amen*

## XIV · DEFEAT IN THE CAMP AND FAMINE

*With Bohemond and the count away, the Turks sally and kill many, and the bishop of Le Puy loses his standard-bearer. Bohemond returns with little, rebuking the men who straggle off alone. Armenians and Syrians buy grain in the mountains and sell it at ruinous prices, and many of the pilgrims die of hunger.*

Turci denique inimici Dei et sanctae Christianitatis,
*the-Turks finally enemies of-God and of-holy Christendom*
qui erant intus in custodia civitatis Antiochiae, audientes
*who were inside in the-guard of-the-city of-Antioch hearing*
dominum Boamundum et Flandrensem comitem in obsessione
*lord Bohemond and the-Flemish count at the-siege*
non esse, exierunt de civitate et audacter veniebant proeliari
*not to-be went-out from the-city and boldly came to-do-battle*
nobiscum, insidiantes undique, in qua parte obsidio esset
*with-us lying-in-wait on-all-sides on which side the-siege might-be*
languidior, scientes illos prudentissimos milites foris esse,
*more-sluggish knowing those most-prudent knights outside to-be*
inveneruntque, quod in una Martis die possent obsistere
*and-they-found that on one of-Mars day they-could to-withstand*
nobis et laedere. Venerunt vero iniquissimi barbari caute et
*us and harm-us came indeed the-most-wicked barbarians warily and*
irruerunt vehementer super nos, et incautos occiderunt multos
*rushed vehemently upon us and unwary they-killed many*
ex nostris militibus et peditibus. Episcopus quoque Podiensis
*of our knights and foot-soldiers the-bishop also of-Le-Puy*

in illa amara die perdidit suum senescalcum, conducentem
*on that bitter day lost his seneschal leading*
et regentem suum vexillum; et, nisi esset flumen,
*and guiding his banner and unless there-had-been the-river*
quod erat inter nos et illos, saepius invasissent nos
*which was between us and them more-often they-would-have-attacked us*
atque maximam laesionem fecissent in nostram gentem.
*and the-greatest harm would-have-done to our people*
Egrediebatur tunc vir prudens Boamundus cum suo exercitu
*was-going-out then the-man prudent Bohemond with his army*
de terra Saracenorum venitque in Tancredi montanam,
*from the-land of-the-Saracens and-came into of-Tancred the-mountain*
cogitans an forte ibi valeret invenire aliquid, quod
*wondering whether perhaps there he-might-be-able to-find anything which*
potuisset deferri, nam totam terram in expendio miserant:
*could be-carried-off for the-whole land into expenditure they-had-put*
alii quippe invenerant, alii vero vacui redierant. Tunc vir
*some indeed had-found others but empty had-returned then the-man*
sapiens Boamundus increpavit eos dicens: O infelix et
*wise Bohemond rebuked them saying O unhappy and*
miserrima gens! O vilissima omnium Christianorum! Cur tam
*most-wretched people O most-vile of-all Christians why so*
celeriter vultis abire? Sinite modo, sinite, usquequo erimus
*swiftly do-you-wish to-go-away stop now stop until we-shall-be*
congregati in unum; et nolite errare sicut oves non habentes
*gathered into one and do-not stray like sheep not having*
pastorem. Si autem inimici nostri invenerint vos errantes,
*a-shepherd if moreover enemies our shall-have-found you straying*
occident vos, quia die noctuque vigilant, ut vos sine
*they-shall-kill you because by-day and-by-night they-watch that you without*
ductore segregatos sive solos inveniant; vosque cotidie occidere
*a-leader separated or alone they-may-find and-you daily to-kill*

et in captivitatem ducere laborant. Cumque finis esset
*and into captivity to-lead they-labor and-when an-end there-was*
dictis, rediit ad suam hostem cum suis plus vacuis, quam
*to-the-words he-returned to his camp with his-men more empty than*
onustis. Videntes autem Hermenii et Surani, quod nostri
*laden seeing moreover the-Armenians and Syrians that our-men*
penitus vacui rediissent, consiliati in unum abibant per
*wholly empty had-returned having-taken-counsel into one went-away through*
montaneas et praescita loca, subtiliter inquirentes et ementes
*the-mountains and foreknown places subtly inquiring and buying*
frumentum et corporea alimenta, quae ad hostem deferebant,
*grain and bodily nourishments which to the-camp they-carried*
in qua erat fames immensa, et vendebant onus unius asini
*in which was a-famine immense and they-sold the-load of-one ass*
VIII purpuratis, qui appretiabantur CXX solidis
*for-eight purple-pieces which were-valued at-a-hundred-and-twenty shillings*
denariorum. Ibi quidem sunt mortui multi ex nostris, non
*of-pennies there indeed have died many of our-men not*
habentes pretium unde tam carum emere potuissent.
*having the-price whence so dear to-buy they-could-have*

## XV · THE FLIGHT OF WILLIAM THE CARPENTER

*William the Carpenter and Peter the Hermit slip away; Tancred brings them back in disgrace. Bohemond rebukes William as the shame of France, and at the Franks' plea spares him on his oath never to leave the journey, but William soon flees again. The army is so poor that not a thousand of its knights still have good horses.*

Willelmus igitur Carpentarius et Petrus heremita pro
*William therefore the-Carpenter and Peter the-hermit for*
immensa infelicitate ac miseria ipsa latenter recesserunt.
*the-immense unhappiness and misery itself secretly withdrew*
Quos Tancredus persequens apprehendit secumque reduxit
*whom Tancred pursuing seized and-with-himself brought-back*
cum dedecore, qui dextram et fidem illi dederunt, quia
*with disgrace who the-right-hand and faith to-him gave that*
libenter ad hostem redirent et satisfactionem senioribus
*willingly to the-camp they-would-return and satisfaction to-the-lords*
facerent. Tota denique nocte Willelmus uti mala res in
*would-make the-whole finally night William like a-bad thing in*
tenda Boamundi iacuit. Crastina vero die, summo diluculo,
*the-tent of-Bohemond lay on-the-next indeed day at-the-very-first dawn*
veniens erubescendo ante Boamundi praesentiam stetit, quem
*coming blushing before of-Bohemond the-presence he-stood whom*
alloquens Boamundus dixit: O infelix et infamia totius
*addressing Bohemond said O unhappy-one and infamy of-all*
Franciae, dedecus et scelus Galliarum! O nequissime omnium
*France disgrace and crime of-the-Gauls O most-wicked of-all*
quos terra suffert! cur tam turpiter fugisti? Forsitan ob hoc,
*whom the-earth bears why so basely did-you-flee perhaps for this*
quod voluisti tradere hos milites et hostem Christi, sicut
*that you-wished to-betray these knights and the-army of-Christ as*

tradidisti alios in Hispania? Qui omnino tacuit, et nullus
*you-betrayed others in Spain who wholly was-silent and no*
sermo ex eius ore processit. Adunaverunt sese omnes fere
*speech from his mouth proceeded gathered themselves all almost*
Francigenae, rogaveruntque humiliter dominum Boamundum, ne
*the-French-born and-asked humbly lord Bohemond lest*
deterius ei fieri permitteret. Annuit ille sereno vultu et
*worse to-him to-be-done he-should-allow nodded he with-serene face and*
ait: Hoc pro vestri amore libenter consentiam, si mihi toto
*said this for of-you love willingly I-shall-consent if to-me with-whole*
corde et mente iuraverit, quod nunquam recedet ab
*heart and mind he-shall-have-sworn that never he-shall-withdraw from*
Hierosolymitano itinere, sive bono sive malo; et Tancredus
*the-Jerusalem journey whether good or bad and Tancred*
neque per se neque per suos aliquid contrarii ei
*neither through himself nor through his-men anything contrary to-him*
consentiet fieri. Qui auditis his verbis voluntarie concessit;
*shall-consent to-be-done who heard these words willingly conceded*
ipse vero protinus dimisit eum. Postmodum vero Carpentarius,
*he but at-once let-go him afterward indeed the-Carpenter*
maxima captus turpitudine, non diu morans furtim recessit.
*by-the-greatest seized shame not long lingering stealthily withdrew*
Hanc paupertatem et miseriam pro nostris delictis concessit
*this poverty and misery for our offenses granted*
nos habere Deus. In tota namque hoste non valebat
*us to-have God in the-whole for army not was-able*
aliquis invenire mille milites, qui equos haberent optimos.
*anyone to-find a-thousand knights who horses might-have most-excellent*

## XVI · THE DESERTION OF TATIKIOS

*Hearing that a Turkish army is coming, the emperor's man Tatikios pretends to go for help, promising ships with grain and horses, and leaves his tents behind, a perjurer forever. The Turks press the camp on every side, hunger torments it, and the poor flee to Cyprus, Romania, and the mountains.*

Interea inimicus Tetigus audiens, quod exercitus Turcorum
*meanwhile the-enemy Tatikios hearing that the-army of-the-Turks*
venissent super nos, ait se timuisse, arbitransque nos
*had-come upon us said himself to-have-feared and-thinking us*
omnes perisse atque in manibus inimicorum incidisse,
*all to-have-perished and into the-hands of-the-enemies to-have-fallen*
fingens omnia falsa, quae assidue seminare poterat, dixit:
*feigning all false-things which constantly to-sow he-could said*
Seniores et viri prudentissimi, videte, quia nos hic sumus
*lords and men most-prudent see that we here are*
in maxima necessitate et ex nulla parte nobis adiutorium
*in the-greatest need and from no side to-us help*
succedit. Ecce modo sinite me in Romaniae patriam reverti,
*comes behold now allow me into of-Romania the-fatherland to-return*
et ego absque ulla dubitatione faciam huc multas naves
*and I without any doubt shall-cause hither many ships*
venire per mare, onustas frumento, vino, hordeo, carne, farina
*to-come by sea laden with-grain wine barley meat flour*
et caseis, omnibusque bonis, quae sunt nobis necessaria.
*and cheeses and-all goods which are for-us necessary*
Faciam et equos conduci ad vendendum, et mercatum
*I-shall-cause also horses to-be-brought for selling and a-market*
per terram in fidelitate imperatoris huc advenire faciam.
*by land in the-fealty of-the-emperor hither to-arrive I-shall-cause*

Ecce haec omnia vobis fideliter iurabo et attendam.
*behold these-things all to-you faithfully I-shall-swear and shall-attend-to*
Adhuc quoque et domestici mei et papilio meus sunt in
*still also both household my and tent my are in*
campo, unde et firmiter credite, quia quantocius redibo.
*the-field whence also firmly believe that with-all-speed I-shall-return*
Sic itaque fecit finem dictis. Ivit ille inimicus et omnia
*thus and-so he-made an-end to-the-words went that enemy and all*
sua dimisit in campo, et in periurio manet et manebit.
*his-things left in the-field and in perjury remains and shall-remain*
Itaque tali modo inerat nobis maxima necessitas, quia
*and-so in-such way there-was-in us the-greatest need because*
Turci undique constringebant nos, ita ut nullus nostrorum
*the-Turks on-all-sides hemmed-in us so that none of-ours*
auderet iam exire extra tentoria, nam illi constringebant nos
*dared now to-go-out outside the-tents for they hemmed-in us*
ex una parte et fames cruciabat ex alia, succursus vero
*from one side and hunger tormented-us from the-other relief but*
et adiutorium nobis deerat. Gens minuta et pauperrima
*and help to-us was-lacking the-people small and most-poor*
fugiebat Cyprum, Romaniam et in montaneas. Ad mare
*fled to-Cyprus to-Romania and into the-mountains to the-sea*
utique non audebamus ire propter timorem pessimorum
*certainly not we-dared to-go for fear of-the-most-evil*
Turcorum, nusquam erat nobis via patefacta.
*Turks nowhere was to-us a-road opened*

*Bohemond divides the army, leaving the foot to guard the camp, and leads the knights out at evening between the river and the lake. The princes give him command, and he orders six battle lines. When the Turks' main force drives the Franks back, he sends his constable Robert son of Gerard forward like a hungry lion, and the Franks pursue the fleeing Turks to the Iron Bridge. A hundred heads are carried to the city gate, where the emir's envoys are camped.*

Itaque audiens dominus Boamundus innumerabilem gentem
*and-so hearing lord Bohemond a-countless people*
Turcorum venientem super nos, caute venit ad alios dicens:
*of-Turks coming upon us warily came to the-others saying*
Seniores et prudentissimi milites, quid facturi erimus? Nos
*lords and most-prudent knights what about-to-do shall-we-be we*
namque tanti non sumus, ut in duabus partibus pugnare
*for so-great not are that in two parts to-fight*
valeamus. Sed scitis quid faciemus? Faciamus ex nobis
*we-may-be-able but know-you what we-shall-do let-us-make of us*
duas partes: Pars peditum remaneat iugiter custodire
*two parts the-part of-the-foot-soldiers let-remain continually to-guard*
papiliones et quibit nimis obsistere his, qui in civitate
*the-tents and it-shall-be-able much to-withstand those who in the-city*
sunt; alia vero pars militum nobiscum veniat obviam
*are the-other but part of-the-knights with-us let-come to-meet*
inimicis nostris, qui hic hospitati sunt prope nos in castello
*enemies our who here lodged have near us in the-castle*
Areg, ultra Pontem Farreum. Sero autem facto, exiit e
*Harenc beyond the-Bridge Iron evening moreover made went-out from*
tentoriis vir prudens Boamundus cum aliis prudentissimis
*the-tents the-man prudent Bohemond with the-other most-prudent*
militibus ivitque iacere inter flumen et lacum. Summo
*knights and-went to-lie between the-river and the-lake at-the-highest*

diluculo iussit protinus exploratores exire et videre,
*dawn he-ordered at-once scouts to-go-out and to-see*
quot sunt Turcorum turmae et ubi sint aut certe
*how-many are of-the-Turks the-squadrons and where they-are or surely*
quid agant. Exierunt illi et coeperunt subtiliter inquirere,
*what they-are-doing went-out they and began subtly to-inquire*
ubi essent acies Turcorum reconditae. Viderunt tandem
*where were the-battle-lines of-the-Turks hidden they-saw at-length*
Turcos innumerabiles segregatos venire ex parte fluminis
*Turks countless separated coming from the-side of-the-river*
divisos per duas acies; maxima vero virtus illorum veniebat
*divided into two battle-lines the-greatest but power of-them was-coming*
retro. Reversi sunt namque celeriter speculatores, dicentes:
*behind returned have for swiftly the-watchers saying*
Ecce, ecce, veniunt. Igitur estote omnes parati, quia iam
*behold behold they-come therefore be all ready because now*
prope nos sunt. Dixitque vir sapiens Boamundus aliis:
*near us they-are and-said the-man wise Bohemond to-the-others*
Seniores et invictissimi milites, ordinate adinvicem bellum.
*lords and most-unconquered knights order among-yourselves the-battle*
Responderuntque illi: Tu sapiens et prudens, tu magnus
*and-answered they you wise and prudent you great*
et magnificus, tu fortis et victor, tu bellorum arbiter et
*and magnificent you strong and victor you of-wars the-arbiter and*
certaminum iudex, hoc totam fac, hoc totum super te sit!
*of-combats the-judge this all do this all upon you let-be*
Omne bonum quod tibi videtur, nobis et tibi operare et
*every good which to-you seems for-us and for-you work and*
fac! Tunc Boamundus iussit, ut unusquisque principum per
*do then Bohemond ordered that each of-the-princes by*
se dirigeret aciem suam ordinatim. Feceruntque ita, et
*himself should-direct battle-line his in-order and-they-did so and*

ordinatae sunt VI acies. Quinque vero ex eis ierunt adunatim
*ordered were six battle-lines five but of them went in-a-body*
invadere illos. Boamundus itaque paulatim gradiebatur retro
*to-attack them Bohemond and-so little-by-little stepped back*
cum sua acie. Iunctis igitur prospere nostris, unus cominus
*with his battle-line joined therefore successfully our-men one hand-to-hand*
percutiebat alium. Clamor vero resonabat ad caelum. Omnes
*struck another the-shout but resounded to heaven all*
proeliabantur insimul. Imbres telorum obnubilabant aerem.
*fought together showers of-missiles clouded the-air*
Postquam venit maxima virtus illorum, quae erat retro, acriter
*after came the-greatest power of-them which was behind fiercely*
invasit nostros, ita ut nostri paululum iam cederent retro.
*it-attacked our-men so that our-men a-little now yielded back*
Quod ut vidit vir doctissimus Boamundus, ingemuit.
*which when saw the-man most-learned Bohemond he-groaned*
Tunc praecepit suo conostabili, scilicet Rotberto, filio Girardi,
*then he-commanded his constable namely Robert son of-Gerard*
dicens: Vade quam citius potes, ut vir fortis, et recordare
*saying go as quickly-as you-can like a-man strong and remember*
prudentium antiquorumque nostrorum fortium parentum et
*the-prudent and-ancient our strong forefathers and*
esto acer in adiutorium Dei Sanctique Sepulcri; et revera
*be fierce in the-help of-God and-of-the-Holy Sepulcher and in-truth*
scias, quia hoc bellum carnale non est, sed spirituale.
*you-should-know that this battle carnal not is but spiritual*
Esto igitur fortissimus athleta Christi. Vade in pace, Dominus
*be therefore the-bravest champion of-Christ go in peace the-Lord*
sit tecum ubique! Fuit itaque ille undique signo crucis
*be with-you everywhere was and-so he on-all-sides with-the-sign of-the-cross*
munitus; qualiter leo perpessus famem per III aut IV dies,
*fortified like a-lion having-endured hunger for three or four days*

qui exiens a suis cavernis, rugiens ac sitiens sanguinem
*who going-out from his caves roaring and thirsting for-the-blood*
pecudum, sicut improvide ruit ille inter agmina gregum,
*of-cattle as heedlessly rushes he among the-columns of-the-flocks*
dilanians oves fugientes huc et illuc, ita agebat iste
*tearing the-sheep fleeing hither and thither so acted this-one*
inter agmina Turcorum, tam vehementer instabat illis, ut
*among the-columns of-the-Turks so vehemently he-pressed them that*
linguae honorabilis vexilli volitarent super Turcorum capita.
*the-tongues of-the-honorable banner flew over of-the-Turks the-heads*
Videntes autem aliae acies, quod vexillum Boamundi tam
*seeing moreover the-other battle-lines that the-banner of-Bohemond so*
honeste esset ante alios delatum, ilico redierunt retrorsum,
*honorably was before the-others borne at-once returned backward*
nostrique unanimiter invaserunt Turcos, qui omnes stupefacti
*and-our-men with-one-mind attacked the-Turks who all stupefied*
arripuerunt fugam. Nostri itaque persecuti sunt illos et
*took-up flight our-men and-so pursued have them and*
detruncaverunt usque ad Pontem Farreum. Reversi sunt
*cut-to-pieces-them all-the-way to the-Bridge Iron returned have*
autem Turci festinanter in castrum suum, acceperuntque
*moreover the-Turks hastily into castle their and-they-took*
omnia, quae ibi reperire potuerunt, totumque castrum
*all-things which there to-find they-could and-the-whole castle*
spoliaverunt, miseruntque ignem et fugerunt. Hermenii et
*they-despoiled and-they-put fire and fled the-Armenians and*
Surani, scientes Turcos omnino perdidisse bellum, exierunt et
*Syrians knowing the-Turks wholly to-have-lost the-battle went-out and*
excubaverunt per arta loca et occiderunt et apprehenderunt
*kept-watch along narrow places and killed and seized*
multos ex eis. Superati sunt itaque, Deo annuente, in illa die
*many of them overcome were and-so God nodding on that day*

inimici nostri. Satis vero recuperati sunt nostri de equis et
*enemies our enough indeed recovered were our-men in horses and*
de aliis multis, quae erant illis valde necessaria. Et C
*in other many-things which were to-them very necessary and a-hundred*
capita mortuorum detulerunt ante portam civitatis, ubi legati
*heads of-the-dead they-carried before the-gate of-the-city where the-envoys*
ammirati Babyloniae castrametati fuerant, qui mittebantur
*of-the-emir of-Babylon encamped had who were-being-sent*
senioribus. Illi, qui remanserant in tentoriis, tota die
*to-the-lords those who had-remained in the-tents the-whole day*
proeliati sunt cum illis, qui erant in civitate ante III portas
*fought have with those who were in the-city before three gates*
civitatis. Factum est hoc bellum in die Martis ante caput
*of-the-city done was this battle on the-day of-Mars before the-head*
ieiunii, V°. idus Februarii, favente Domino nostro
*of-the-fast on-the-fifth-day-before the-Ides of-February favoring Lord our*
Iesu Christo, qui cum Patre et Spiritu Sancto vivit et
*Jesus Christ who with the-Father and the-Spirit Holy lives and*
regnat Deus per immortalia saecula saeculorum. Amen.
*reigns God through immortal ages of-ages amen*

*The princes resolve to build a castle at the Mahomerie before the bridge gate. While Bohemond and Raymond fetch men from Saint Simeon, the Turks rout the builders and ambush the returning column, martyring over a thousand; but the army, rejoined by Bohemond, crushes the Turks on the narrow bridge, reddening the river with their blood. The Turks bury their dead; the Franks dig them up and build the castle from the tombstones.*

Reversi sunt nostri, agente Deo, triumphantes et gaudentes de
*returned have our-men acting God triumphing and rejoicing about*
triumpho, quem in die illo habuerunt devictis inimicis, qui sunt
*the-triumph which on day that they-had conquered the-enemies who were*
per omnia superati, semper fugientes, huc et illuc vagantes
*in all-things overcome always fleeing hither and thither wandering*
et errantes, alii in Corrozanam, alii vero in Saracenorum
*and straying some into Khorasan others but into of-the-Saracens*
introierunt terram. Videntes autem nostri maiores, quod male
*entered the-land seeing moreover our greater-men that badly*
tractarent et constringerent nos inimici nostri, qui erant
*treated and hemmed-in us enemies our who were*
in civitate, die ac nocte invigilantes et insidiantes, qua
*in the-city by-day and by-night keeping-watch and lying-in-wait on-which*
parte nos laedere possent, congregati in unum dixerunt:
*side us to-harm they-might-be-able gathered into one they-said*
Priusquam perdamus gentem nostram, faciamus castrum ad
*before we-lose people our let-us-make a-castle at*
Machumariam, quae est ante portam urbis, ubi pons
*the-Mahomerie which is before the-gate of-the-city where the-bridge*
est; ibique forsitan poterimus nostros constringere inimicos.
*is and-there perhaps we-shall-be-able our to-hem-in enemies*
Consenserunt omnes et laudaverunt, quod bonum esset ad
*agreed all and approved that good it-would-be for*

faciendum. Comes de Sancto Egidio primus dixit: Estote mihi
*doing the-count of Saint Gilles first said be to-me*
in adiutorium ad faciendum castrum, et ego muniam ac
*in help for making the-castle and I shall-fortify and*
servabo. Respondit Boamundus: Si vos vultis et alii seniores
*shall-keep-it answered Bohemond if you wish and the-other lords*
laudant, ibo vobiscum ad Portum Sancti Simeonis, diligenter
*approve I-shall-go with-you to the-Port of-Saint Simeon diligently*
conducere illos qui illic sunt homines, ut peragant hoc
*to-bring those who there are men that they-may-complete this*
opus; alii, qui sunt remansuri, muniant se undique ad
*work the-others who are about-to-remain let-fortify themselves on-all-sides for*
defendendum, si forte inimici nostri et Dei exierint
*defending if perhaps enemies our and of-God shall-have-gone-out*
de civitate, et in illo loco sint omnes congregati in
*from the-city and in that place should-be all gathered into*
unum, licet ubi nos demonstraremus. Factumque est ita.
*one be-it where we might-show-them and-done was so*
Comes igitur et Boamundus perrexerunt ad Sancti Simeonis
*the-count therefore and Bohemond went-on to of-Saint Simeon*
portum. Nos vero, qui remansimus congregati in unum,
*the-port we but who remained gathered into one*
castrum incipiebamus; dum Turci praeparaverunt se
*the-castle were-beginning when the-Turks prepared themselves*
ilico et exierunt extra civitatem obviam nobis ad proelium.
*at-once and went-out outside the-city to-meet us for battle*
Sic itaque irruerunt super nos et miserunt nostros in fugam,
*thus and-so they-rushed upon us and put our-men to flight*
occideruntque plures ex nostris, unde tristes valde fuimus.
*and-killed many of our-men whence sad greatly we-were*

Crastina autem die videntes Turci, quod maiores nostri
*on-the-next moreover day seeing the-Turks that greater-men our*
deessent et quod praeterita die ivissent ad portum,
*were-absent and that on-the-past day they-had-gone to the-port*
praeparaverunt se et ierunt obviam illis venientibus e
*prepared themselves and went to-meet them coming from*
portu. Tunc videntes comitem et Boamundum venientes et
*the-port then seeing the-count and Bohemond coming and*
conducentes illam gentem, mox coeperunt stridere et garrire
*leading that people soon they-began to-screech and to-chatter*
ac clamare vehementissimo clamore, circumcingendo undique
*and to-shout with-most-vehement shout surrounding on-all-sides*
nostros iaculando, sagittando, vulnerando et crudeliter
*our-men by-hurling by-shooting-arrows by-wounding and cruelly*
detruncando. Nam tam acriter invaserunt nostros, ut illi
*by-cutting-down for so fiercely they-attacked our-men that they*
inirent fugam per maximam montaneam et ubi via eundi
*entered flight over a-very-great mountain and where a-road of-going*
patebat; qui potuit celeri se gressu expedire, evasit
*lay-open who could with-swift himself step get-clear escaped*
vivus, qui vero fugere nequivit, mortem suscepit. Fueruntque
*alive who but to-flee could-not death received and-there-were*
in illa die martyrizati ex nostris militibus seu peditibus
*on that day martyred of our knights or foot-soldiers*
plus quam mille, qui, ut credimus, in caelum laetantes
*more than a-thousand who as we-believe into heaven rejoicing*
ascendebant atque candidati ferentes stolam recepti martyrii,
*ascended and white-robed bearing the-robe of-received martyrdom*
glorificantes et magnificantes Dominum Deum nostrum
*glorifying and magnifying the-Lord God our*
trinum et unum, in quo feliciter triumphabant et dicebant
*threefold and one in whom happily they-triumphed and they-said*

concordabili voce: Quare non defendis sanguinem nostrum,
*with-harmonious voice why not do-you-defend blood our*
qui hodie pro tuo nomine effusus est?
*which today for your name shed has-been*
Itaque Boamundus viam, quam tenuerant, non tenuit, sed
*and-so Bohemond the-road which they-had-held not held but*
celerius cum paucis militibus ad nos venit, qui eramus in
*more-swiftly with few knights to us came who were into*
unum congregati. Tunc nos accensi occisione nostrorum,
*one gathered then we kindled by-the-slaughter of-our-men*
Christi nomine invocato, et S. Sepulcri confidentes
*of-Christ the-name invoked and of-the-Holy Sepulcher trusting*
itinere, iuncti simul pervenimus contra eos ad bellum,
*in-the-journey joined together came against them to battle*
eosque invasimus uno corde et animo. Stabant vero
*and-them we-attacked with-one heart and spirit stood indeed*
inimici Dei et nostri undique iam stupefacti et vehementer
*the-enemies of-God and our on-all-sides now stupefied and vehemently*
perterriti, putantes nostros se devincere et occidere,
*terrified thinking our-men themselves to-conquer and to-kill*
sicut fecerant gentem comitis et Boamundi. Sed Deus
*as they-had-done the-people of-the-count and of-Bohemond but God*
omnipotens hoc illis non permisit. Milites igitur veri Dei
*almighty this to-them not allowed the-knights therefore true of-God*
undique signo crucis armati irruerunt acriter super illos
*on-all-sides with-the-sign of-the-cross armed rushed fiercely upon them*
et fortiter invaserunt; illi autem celeriter fugerunt per
*and strongly attacked they moreover swiftly fled through*
medium angusti pontis ad illorum introitum. Illi, qui vivi
*the-middle of-the-narrow bridge to their entrance those who alive*
nequiverunt transire pontem prae nimia multitudine gentium
*could-not to-cross the-bridge for the-excessive multitude of-peoples*

et caballorum, ibi receperunt sempiternum interitum et
*and of-horses there received everlasting destruction and*
reddiderunt infelices animas Diabolo et Sathanae ministris.
*gave-back unhappy souls to-the-Devil and to-Satan's ministers*
Nos itaque illos superavimus, impellentes in flumen et
*we and-so them overcame driving into the-river and*
deicientes. Unda vero rapidi fluminis undique videbatur
*casting-down the-wave but of-the-rapid river on-all-sides seemed*
fluere rubea Turcorum sanguine. Et si forte aliquis eorum
*to-flow red of-the-Turks with-blood and if perhaps anyone of-them*
voluisset reptare super pontis columnas aut natando ad
*had-wished to-creep over of-the-bridge the-columns or by-swimming to*
terram moliretur exire, vulneratus est a nostris undique
*land should-strive to-go-out wounded he-was by our-men on-all-sides*
stantibus super ripam fluminis. Rumor quoque et clamor
*standing upon the-bank of-the-river the-uproar also and the-shout*
nostrorum et illorum resonabat ad caelum. Pluviae telorum
*of-our-men and of-them resounded to heaven rains of-missiles*
et sagittarum tegebant polum et claritatem diei; altae
*and of-arrows covered the-sky and the-brightness of-the-day lofty*
voces intus et extra. Mulieres christianae urbis veniebant ad
*voices within and without the-women Christian of-the-city came to*
muri fenestras, spectantes misera fata Turcorum et occulte
*of-the-wall the-windows watching the-wretched fates of-the-Turks and secretly*
plaudebant manibus, sicut mos erat illarum. Hermenii et
*applauded with-hands as the-custom was of-them the-Armenians and*
Surani iussu maiorum Turcorum inviti seu spontanei
*Syrians by-the-command of-the-greater Turks unwilling or willing*
sagittas iaciebant foras ad nos. Mortui sunt etiam in anima
*arrows shot outside at us died have also in soul*
et corpore XII ammiralii de Turcorum agmine in proelio
*and body twelve emirs from of-the-Turks the-column in battle*

illo, et alii prudentissimorum et fortiorum militum, qui
*that and others of-the-most-prudent and stronger knights who*
melius civitatem pugnando defendebant, numerus quorum fuit
*better the-city by-fighting defended the-number of-whom was*
M et D. Alii, qui remanserant vivi, iam amplius
*a-thousand and five-hundred the-others who had-remained alive now further*
non audebant clamitare vel garrire in die sive in nocte,
*not dared to-shout or to-chatter by day or by night*
sicut ante solebant. Omnes itaque nos vel illos solummodo
*as before they-were-wont all and-so us or them only*
superavit nox, noxque divisit utrosque in proeliando, iaculando,
*overcame night and-night divided both in fighting hurling*
spiculando, sagittando. Sic superati sunt inimici nostri virtute
*spearing shooting-arrows thus overcome were enemies our by-the-power*
Dei et S. Sepulcri, et ulterius non valuerunt talem
*of-God and of-the-Holy Sepulcher and further not were-able such*
virtutem habere neque in voce neque in opere sicuti prius.
*power to-have neither in voice nor in deed as before*
Nos itaque valde fuimus refecti in illa die de illorum equis
*we and-so greatly were refreshed on that day in their horses*
et de aliis multis rebus, quae satis erant nobis necessariae.
*and in other many things which quite were to-us necessary*
Crastina vero die, summo diluculo, exierunt alii Turci
*on-the-next indeed day at-the-highest dawn went-out other Turks*
de civitate et collegerunt omnia cadavera fetentia Turcorum
*from the-city and gathered all the-corpses stinking of-the-Turks*
mortuorum, quae reperire potuerunt super ripam fluminis,
*dead which to-find they-could on the-bank of-the-river*
exceptis illis, quae in alveo latebant eiusdem fluminis, et
*except those which in the-bed lay-hidden of-the-same river and*
sepelierunt ad Machumariam, quae est ultra pontem ante
*buried-them at the-Mahomerie which is beyond the-bridge before*

portam urbis, simulque illis consepelierunt pallia, bisanteos
*the-gate of-the-city and-together with-them they-buried cloaks bezants*
aureos, arcus, sagittas et alia plurima instrumenta, quae
*gold bows arrows and other very-many implements which*
nominare nequimus. Audientes itaque nostri quod humassent
*to-name we-cannot hearing and-so our-men that they-had-buried*
mortuos suos Turci, omnes sese praeparaverunt et venerunt
*dead their the-Turks all themselves prepared and came*
festinantes ad diabolicum atrium et iusserunt desepeliri et
*hastening to the-devilish courtyard and ordered to-be-unburied and*
frangi tumbas eorum et trahi eos extra sepulcra.
*to-be-broken the-tombs their and to-be-dragged them outside the-sepulchers*
Et eiecerunt omnia cadavera eorum in quandam foveam et
*and they-threw all corpses their into a-certain pit and*
deportaverunt caesa capita ad tentoria nostra, quatinus perfecte
*carried-off the-cut-off heads to tents our so-that perfectly*
sciretur eorum numerus, excepto quod oneraverant IIII equos
*might-be-known their number except that they-had-loaded four horses*
nunciis Ammiralii Babyloniae et miserant ad mare. Quod
*for-the-envoys of-the-emir of-Babylon and had-sent-them to the-sea which*
videntes Turci doluerunt nimis fueruntque tristes usque ad
*seeing the-Turks grieved very-much and-were sad all-the-way to*
necem; nam cotidie dolentes nihil aliud agebant nisi flere et
*death for daily grieving nothing else they-did except to-weep and*
ululare. Tertia vero die coepimus simul iuncti cum gaudio
*to-howl on-the-third indeed day we-began together joined with joy*
magno aedificare castrum supradictum, de lapidibus scilicet,
*great to-build the-castle aforesaid of stones namely*
quos abstraximus de tumulis Turcorum. Peracto itaque castro,
*which we-dragged-out from the-tombs of-the-Turks completed and-so the-castle*
mox coepimus ex omni parte coangustare inimicos nostros,
*soon we-began from every side to-hem-in enemies our*

quorum superbia ad nihilum iam erat redacta. Nos autem
*whose pride to nothing now was reduced we moreover*
secure ambulabamus huc et illuc ad portum et ad montaneas,
*securely walked hither and thither to the-port and to the-mountains*
laudantes et glorificantes Dominum Deum nostrum, cui
*praising and glorifying the-Lord God our to-whom*
est honor et gloria per omnia saecula saeculorum. Amen.
*is honor and glory through all ages of-ages amen*

## XIX · TANCRED HOLDS THE MONASTERY CASTLE

*One path is still open to the Turks, by a castle and a monastery beyond the river. Tancred offers to hold it for four hundred marks of silver and seals the road, seizing the food the Armenians and Syrians bring in. The author confesses he cannot tell all they did before the city fell.*

Iam iam omnes semitae paene prohibitae et incisae undique
*now now all paths almost forbidden and cut-off on-all-sides*
erant Turcis, nisi ex illa parte fluminis, ubi erat castrum
*were to-the-Turks except on that side of-the-river where was a-castle*
et quoddam monasterium. Quod castrum si fuisset a
*and a-certain monastery which castle if it-had-been by*
nobis perfecte munitum, iam nullus eorum auderet extra
*us perfectly fortified now none of-them would-dare outside*
civitatis portam exire. Conciliaverunt se denique nostri
*of-the-city the-gate to-go-out took-counsel themselves finally our-men*
et una voce concorditer dixerunt: Eligamus unum ex
*and with-one voice harmoniously said let-us-choose one of*
nobis, qui robuste teneat illud castrum et nostris inimicis
*us who sturdily may-hold that castle and from-our enemies*
prohibeat montaneas et plana et introitum urbis et
*may-forbid the-mountains and the-plains and the-entrance of-the-city and*

exitum. Plures vero ex illis prohibentes se illud hospitari,
*the-exit many but of them refusing themselves it to-occupy*
nisi forte fuissent multi in unum. Tancredus igitur primus
*unless perhaps they-were many into one Tancred therefore first*
protulit se ante alios, dicens: Si scirem, quid proficui
*put-forward himself before the-others saying if I-knew what of-profit*
mihi attigerit, ego sedule cum meis solummodo hominibus
*to-me would-fall I zealously with my only men*
corroborarem castrum, et viam, per quam inimici nostri
*would-strengthen the-castle and the-road by which enemies our*
solent frequentius saevire, viriliter devetabo illis. Qui continuo
*are-wont more-often to-rage manfully I-shall-bar to-them who at-once*
spoponderunt ei CCCC marcas argenti. Non adquievit
*pledged to-him four-hundred marks of-silver not acquiesced*
Tancredus; quamquam solus erat, tamen perrexit cum suis
*Tancred although alone he-was yet he-went-on with his*
honestissimis militibus ac servientibus, et extemplo abstulit
*most-honorable knights and servants and forthwith took-away*
undique viam et semitam Turcis, ita ut nulli auderent
*on-all-sides the-road and the-path from-the-Turks so that none dared*
ex eis iam timore eius perterriti extra urbis portam exire
*of them now by-fear of-him terrified outside of-the-city the-gate to-go-out*
neque propter herbam, neque propter ligna, neque propter ulla
*neither for grass nor for wood nor for any*
necessaria. Remansit vero ibi Tancredus cum suis coepitque
*necessaries remained indeed there Tancred with his-men and-began*
vehementer ubique coangustare civitatem. Ipsa quoque die
*vehemently everywhere to-hem-in the-city that-very also day*
veniebat maxima pars Hermeniorum et Suranorum secure
*came the-greatest part of-the-Armenians and of-the-Syrians securely*
de montaneis, qui ferebant alimenta Turcis in adiutorium
*from the-mountains who brought nourishments to-the-Turks in help*

civitatis. Quibus advenit obviam Tancredus et apprehendit
*of-the-city whom came to-meet Tancred and seized*
eos et omnia, quae deferebant, videlicet frumentum, vinum,
*them and all-things which they-carried namely grain wine*
hordeum, oleum et alia huiusmodi. Sic itaque robuste
*barley oil and other-things of-this-kind thus and-so sturdily*
et prospere deducebat se Tancredus, iamque habebat
*and successfully conducted himself Tancred and-now had*
prohibitas et incisas omnes semitas Turcis, donec Antiochia
*forbidden and cut-off all paths to-the-Turks until Antioch*
esset capta. Omnia, quae egimus antequam urbs esset
*was taken all-things which we-did before the-city was*
capta, nequeo enarrare, quia nemo est in his partibus sive
*taken I-cannot to-recount because no-one is in these parts whether*
clericus sive laicus, qui omnino possit vel scribere vel
*cleric or layman who wholly could either to-write or*
narrare sicut res gesta est: Tamen aliquantulum dicam.
*tell as the-thing done was yet a-little I-shall-say*

## XX · FIRUZ BETRAYS ANTIOCH

*Firuz, an emir who guards three towers, promises them to Bohemond, who asks the princes for the city if he wins it; they refuse, then agree, saving the emperor's claim, when an enemy army is reported. Bohemond sends a feigned foray, and by night sixty men climb a ladder into Firuz's towers. A gate is broken, the banner is raised, and the city falls on June 3; Yaghi-Siyan flees and is beheaded by Syrians and Armenians.*

Erat quidam ammiratus de genere Turcorum, cui nomen
*there-was a-certain emir of the-race of-the-Turks to-whom the-name*
Pirus, qui maximam amicitiam receperat cum Boamundo.
*Firuz who the-greatest friendship had-received with Bohemond*
Hunc saepe Boamundus pulsabat nuntiis adinvicem missis,
*him often Bohemond pressed with-messengers to-one-another sent*
quo eum infra civitatem amicissime reciperet, eique
*that him within the-city most-amicably he-should-receive and-to-him*
christianitatem liberius promittebat et eum se divitem
*Christianity more-freely he-promised and him himself rich*
facturum cum multo honore mandabat. Consensit ille dictis
*to-make with much honor he-sent-word agreed he to-the-words*
et promissionibus dicens: Tres turres custodio, eique libenter
*and promises saying three towers I-guard and-to-him willingly*
ipsas promitto et, quacunque hora voluerit, in eas eum
*them I-promise and at-whatever hour he-shall-have-wished into them him*
recolligam. Erat itaque Boamundus iam securus de introitu
*I-shall-take-in was and-so Bohemond now secure about the-entrance*
civitatis, et gavisus serenaque mente, placido vultu venit
*of-the-city and having-rejoiced and-with-serene mind with-calm face came*
ad omnes seniores, eisque iocunda verba intulit dicens:
*to all the-lords and-to-them pleasant words brought saying*
Viri, prudentissimi milites, videte, quomodo nos omnes in
*men most-prudent knights see how we all in*

nimia paupertate et miseria sumus, maiores sive minores, et
*excessive poverty and misery are greater or lesser and*
ignoramus penitus, qua parte melius succedat nobis. Igitur
*we-know-not at-all on-which side better it-may-succeed for-us therefore*
si vobis bonum et honestum videtur, eligat se ante
*if to-you good and honorable it-seems let-put-forward himself before*
alios unus ex nobis et si aliquomodo vel ingenio civitatem
*the-others one of us and if in-any-way or by-skill the-city*
acquirere vel ingeniare potuerit, per se vel per alios
*to-acquire or to-contrive he-shall-have-been-able by himself or by others*
concordi voce ei urbem dono concedamus. Qui omnino
*with-harmonious voice to-him the-city as-a-gift let-us-grant who wholly*
prohibuerunt et denegaverunt dicentes: Nemini dimittetur
*forbade and refused saying to-no-one shall-be-given-over*
haec civitas, sed omnes aequaliter habebimus illam; sicut
*this city but all equally we-shall-have it as*
aequalem habuimus laborem, sic inde aequalem habeamus
*equal we-had labor so thence equal let-us-have*
honorem. Itaque Boamundus, auditis his verbis, paulominus
*honor and-so Bohemond heard these words a-little*
subridens protinus recessit. Non multo post audivimus nuntios
*smiling at-once withdrew not much after we-heard messengers*
de exercitu hostium nostrorum, Turcorum, Publicanorum,
*about the-army of-the-enemies our of-the-Turks of-the-Paulicians*
Angulanorum, Azimitarum et aliarum plurimarum nationum
*of-the-Agulani of-the-Azymites and of-other very-many nations*
gentilium, quas numerare neque nominare nescio.
*gentile which to-number nor to-name I-know-not-how*
Statimque adunaverunt se omnes maiores nostri simul,
*and-at-once gathered themselves all greater-men our together*
tenueruntque concilium, dicentes: Quoniam si Boamundus
*and-held a-council saying since if Bohemond*

potuerit adquirere civitatem aut per se aut per
*shall-have-been-able to-acquire the-city either by himself or by*
alios, nos una libenti corde ultro ei donamus,
*others we together with-willing heart of-our-own-accord to-him give-it*
eo tenore ut si imperator venerit nobis in adiutorium
*on-this condition that if the-emperor shall-have-come to-us in help*
et omnem conventionem nobis, sicut promisit et iuravit,
*and every covenant to-us as he-promised and swore*
attendere voluerit, nos ei eam iure reddemus; sin
*to-keep shall-have-wished we to-him it by-right shall-return but-if-not*
autem, Boamundus eam in suam habeat potestatem.
*moreover Bohemond it into his let-have power*
Mox itaque Boamundus coepit humiliter amicum suum
*soon and-so Bohemond began humbly friend his*
cotidiana deprecari petitione, promittendo humillima, maxima
*with-daily to-entreat petition promising most-humble very-great*
et dulcia in hunc modum: Ecce vere modo tempus
*and sweet-things in this way behold truly now a-time*
habemus idoneum, in quo possumus operari quicquid boni
*we-have fit in which we-can work whatever of-good*
volumus; ergo adiuvet me nunc amicus meus Pirus.
*we-wish therefore let-help me now friend my Firuz*
Qui satis gavisus de nuntio ait se illum adiuvare
*who quite having-rejoiced at the-message said himself him to-help*
omnino sicut agere deberet. Nocte itaque veniente proxima,
*wholly as to-do he-ought night and-so coming next*
misit caute filium suum pignus Boamundo, ut securior
*he-sent warily son his as-a-pledge to-Bohemond that more-secure*
fieret de introitu urbis. Misit quoque ei verba in
*he-might-become about the-entrance of-the-city he-sent also to-him words in*
hunc modum: Ut in crastinum omnem Francorum gentem
*this way that on the-morrow the-whole of-the-Franks people*

praeconiare atque summovere faciat, quod in Saracenorum
*to-proclaim and to-move-off he-should-cause that into of-the-Saracens*
terram depraedare vadat, dissimulans ac deinde celeriter
*the-land to-plunder it-should-go pretending and then swiftly*
revertatur per dextram montaneam. Ego vero, ait, ero
*it-should-return by the-right mountain I but said shall-be*
intentione erecta praestolans illa agmina, eaque recipiam
*with-intent erect awaiting those columns and-them I-shall-receive*
in turres, quas in mea habeo potestate ac custodia.
*into the-towers which in my I-hold power and guard*
Dein Boamundus iussit celeriter ad se vocari quendam
*then Bohemond ordered swiftly to himself to-be-called a-certain*
servientem suum, videlicet Malam Coronam, eique praecepit,
*servant his namely Evil Crown and-to-him commanded*
ut quasi praeco commoneret Francorum maximam gentem,
*that as-if a-herald he-should-warn of-the-Franks the-greatest people*
quatinus fideliter praepararet se in Saracenorum itura
*so-that faithfully it-should-prepare itself into of-the-Saracens about-to-go*
terram. Factumque est ita. Credidit itaque Boamundus hoc
*the-land and-done was so entrusted and-so Bohemond this*
consilium duci Godefrido et Flandrensi comiti, comiti
*plan to-duke Godfrey and to-the-Flemish count to-the-count*
quoque de Sancto Egidio atque Podiensi episcopo, dicens:
*also of Saint Gilles and of-Le-Puy to-the-bishop saying*
Quia, Dei favente gratia, hac nocte tradetur nobis
*that of-God favoring grace this night shall-be-handed-over to-us*
Antiochia. Ordinata sunt denique haec omnia: milites
*Antioch ordered were finally these-things all the-knights*
tenuerunt plana et pedites montaneam. Tota nocte
*held the-plain and the-foot-soldiers the-mountain the-whole night*
equitaverunt et ambulaverunt usque prope auroram, ac
*they-rode and walked all-the-way near dawn and*

deinceps coeperunt appropinquare ad turres, quas ille vigil
*thereafter began to-draw-near to the-towers which that watchman*
custodiebat. Confestim descendit Boamundus et praecepit
*guarded at-once dismounted Bohemond and commanded*
omnibus, dicens: Ite securo animo et felici concordia, et
*all saying go with-secure spirit and with-happy concord and*
ascendite per scalam in Antiochiam, quam statim habebimus,
*climb by the-ladder into Antioch which at-once we-shall-have*
si Deo placet, in nostra custodia. Venerunt illi usque ad
*if to-God it-pleases in our keeping came they all-the-way to*
scalam, quae iam erat erecta et fortiter ligata ad civitatis
*the-ladder which now was raised and strongly bound to of-the-city*
merulas, et ascenderunt per illam homines fere LX ex
*the-battlements and climbed by it men almost sixty of*
nostris ac divisi sunt per turres quas ille observabat.
*ours and divided were among the-towers which he watched*
Videns hoc Pirus, quod tam pauci ascendissent ex nostris,
*seeing this Firuz that so few had-climbed of ours*
coepit pavere, timens sibi et nostris, ne in manus
*began to-be-afraid fearing for-himself and for-ours lest into the-hands*
Turcorum inciderent, dixitque: Micro Francos echome (hoc
*of-the-Turks they-should-fall and-said few Franks we-have this*
est: Paucos Francos habemus). Ubi est acerrimus Boamundus?
*is few Franks we-have where is the-most-fierce Bohemond*
ubi est ille miles invictus? Interim descendit quidam serviens
*where is that knight unconquered meanwhile came-down a-certain servant*
Longobardus deorsum et cucurrit quantocius ad Boamundum,
*Lombard down and ran with-all-speed to Bohemond*
dicens: Quid hic stas, vir prudens? Quamobrem huc
*saying why here do-you-stand man prudent wherefore hither*

venisti? Ecce nos iam tres turres habemus! Motus est
*have-you-come behold we now three towers have moved was*
ille cum aliis et omnes gaudentes pervenerunt ad scalam.
*he with the-others and all rejoicing came to the-ladder*
Videntes itaque illi, qui iam erant in turribus, coeperunt
*seeing and-so those who now were in the-towers began*
iocunda voce clamare: Deus le volt! Nos vero idem
*with-joyful voice to-shout God it wills we but the-same*
clamabamus. Nunc coeperunt ilico mirabiliter ascendere;
*shouted now they-began at-once wondrously to-climb*
ascenderunt tamen et cucurrerunt festinanter in alias turres.
*they-climbed yet and ran hastily into the-other towers*
Quos illic inveniebant, mortalem eis continuo dabant
*whom there they-found a-mortal on-them at-once they-passed*
sententiam; fratrem quoque Piri occiderunt. Interea forte
*sentence the-brother also of-Firuz they-killed meanwhile by-chance*
rupta est scala, per quam noster erat ascensus, unde inter
*broken was the-ladder by which our was ascent whence among*
nos orta est immensa angustia et tristitia. Quamquam autem
*us arisen has immense distress and sadness although moreover*
scala fuisset fracta, tamen quaedam porta erat iuxta nos
*the-ladder had-been broken yet a-certain gate was near us*
clausa in sinistra parte, quae quibusdam manebat incognita;
*closed on the-left side which to-some remained unknown*
nox namque erat, sed tamen palpando et inquirendo
*night for it-was but yet by-groping and by-searching*
invenimus eam, omnesque cucurrimus ad illam et, ipsa fracta,
*we-found it and-all ran to it and it broken*
intravimus per eam. Tunc innumerabilis fragor mirabiliter
*we-entered through it then a-countless crash wondrously*
resonabat per totam urbem. Non adquievit Boamundus
*resounded through the-whole city not acquiesced Bohemond*

his, sed ilico imperavit honorabile vexillum deferri
*in-these but at-once he-commanded the-honorable banner to-be-carried*
sursum coram castello in quodam monte; omnes vero pariter
*up in-view-of the-citadel on a-certain hill all but together*
stridebant in civitate. Summo autem diluculo audientes illi,
*screeched in the-city at-the-highest moreover dawn hearing those*
qui foris erant in tentoriis, vehementissimum rumorem strepere
*who outside were in the-tents a-most-vehement uproar to-roar*
per civitatem, exierunt festinantes et viderunt vexillum
*through the-city went-out hastening and saw the-banner*
Boamundi sursum in monte, celerique cursu properantes
*of-Bohemond up on the-hill and-with-swift course hurrying*
venerunt omnes et per portas intraverunt in urbem et
*came all and through the-gates entered into the-city and*
interfecerunt Turcos et Saracenos, quos ibi reppererunt,
*killed the-Turks and Saracens whom there they-found*
extra illos, qui fugerant sursum in castrum. Alii vero
*except those who had-fled up into the-citadel others but*
Turcorum per portas exierunt et fugientes vivi evaserunt.
*of-the-Turks through the-gates went-out and fleeing alive escaped*
Cassianus vero, dominus illorum, timens valde gentem
*Yaghi-Siyan but lord their fearing greatly the-people*
Francorum, dedit se omnimodo fugae cum aliis multis,
*of-the-Franks gave himself in-every-way to-flight with others many*
qui erant cum eo, et fugiendo pervenit in Tancredi terram
*who were with him and by-fleeing came into of-Tancred the-land*
non longe a civitate. Fatigati vero erant equi eorum,
*not far from the-city wearied indeed were horses their*
miseruntque se in quoddam casale et mersi sunt
*and-they-put themselves into a-certain farmstead and sunk were*
in unam domum. Cognoverunt ergo eum habitatores
*into one house knew therefore him the-inhabitants*

illius montaneae, scilicet Suriani et Hermenii, et confestim
*of-that mountain namely Syrians and Armenians and at-once*
apprehenderunt eum truncaveruntque caput illius et tulerunt
*seized him and-cut-off head his and carried-it*
ante Boamundi praesentiam, ut inde mererentur libertatem
*before of-Bohemond the-presence that thence they-might-deserve freedom*
accipere. Balteum quoque eius et vaginam appretiaverunt
*to-receive belt also his and scabbard they-valued*
LX bizanteis. Haec omnia gesta sunt III[a]. die
*at-sixty bezants these-things all done were on-the-third day*
intrante mense Junio, V[a]. feria, III[a]. nonas
*entering the-month of-June on-the-fifth weekday on-the-third-day-before the-Nones*
Junii. Omnes namque plateae civitatis iam undique erant
*of-June all for the-squares of-the-city now on-all-sides were*
plenae cadaveribus mortuorum, ita ut nemo posset sufferre
*full of-the-corpses of-the-dead so that no-one could bear*
ibi esse prae nimis fetoribus: nullus vero poterat ire per
*there to-be for excessive stenches none but could go along*
semitam civitatis, nisi super cadavera mortuorum.
*a-path of-the-city except over the-corpses of-the-dead*

## XXI · KERBOGHA COMES TO ANTIOCH

*Called by Yaghi-Siyan, Kerbogha gathers a vast army and the caliph's leave to kill Christians, and the emir of Jerusalem and the king of Damascus join him. Shams-ad-Daula begs his help and must yield him the citadel. Kerbogha sets a trusted emir over it, laughs at the rusty arms brought to him as the Franks' weapons, and writes to Khorasan that he has the Franks shut in Antioch and will have them killed or led captive.*

Curbaram, princeps militiae Soldani Persiae, dum adhuc
*Kerbogha the-prince of-the-army of-the-Sultan of-Persia while still*
esset Corrozanum, quotiens Cassianus ammiralius Antiochiae
*he-was in-Khorasan as-often-as Yaghi-Siyan the-emir of-Antioch*
legationem ei misit, quo sibi succurreret in tempore
*an-embassy to-him sent that to-him he-should-come-to-aid in time*
opportuno, quoniam gens fortissima Francorum eum
*opportune since the-people bravest of-the-Franks him*
impeditum graviter obsidebat in Antiochia; et, si adiutorium
*hemmed-in grievously was-besieging in Antioch and if help*
ei impenderet, urbem Antiochenam illi traderet aut
*to-him he-should-render the-city Antiochene to-him he-would-hand-over or*
eum maximo munere ditaret; cumque iam habuisset
*him with-a-very-great gift would-enrich and-when now he-had*
maximum exercitum Turcorum, ex longo collectum tempore,
*a-very-great army of-Turks over a-long gathered time*
et licentiam Christianos occidendi accepisset a Calipha,
*and leave Christians of-killing had-received from the-Caliph*
illorum Apostolico, ilico inchoavit iter longae viae
*their apostolic-one at-once he-began the-journey of-the-long road*
Antiochiae. Hierosolymitanus ammiralius in adiutorium cum
*to-Antioch the-Jerusalem emir in help with*
suo exercitu venit; rex Damasci illuc venit cum maxima
*his army came the-king of-Damascus thither came with a-very-great*

gente. Idem vero Curbaram congregavit innumeras gentes
*people the-same but Kerbogha gathered countless peoples*
paganorum, videlicet Turcos, Arabes, Saracenos, Publicanos,
*of-pagans namely Turks Arabs Saracens Paulicians*
Azimitas, Curtos, Persas, Agulanos et alias multas gentes
*Azymites Kurds Persians Agulani and other many peoples*
innumerabiles. Et Agulani fuerunt numero III milia, qui neque
*countless and the-Agulani were in-number three thousand who neither*
lanceas neque sagittas neque ulla arma timebant, quia omnes
*lances nor arrows nor any arms feared because all*
erant undique cooperti ferro et equi eorum; ipsique
*were on-all-sides covered with-iron and horses their and-they-themselves*
nolebant in bellum ferre arma, nisi solummodo gladios. Isti
*were-unwilling into battle to-carry arms except only swords these*
omnes venerunt in obsidionem Antiochiae ad dispergendum
*all came to the-siege of-Antioch for scattering*
Francorum collegium. Et cum appropinquassent urbi, venit
*of-the-Franks the-company and when they-had-drawn-near to-the-city came*
obviam illis Sensadolus, filius Cassiani, ammiralii Antiochiae,
*to-meet them Shams-ad-Daula son of-Yaghi-Siyan the-emir of-Antioch*
et continuo cucurrit ad Curbaram lacrimabiliter rogans eum
*and at-once ran to Kerbogha tearfully asking him*
et dicens: Invictissime princeps, te supplex precor, quatinus
*and saying most-unconquered prince you as-a-suppliant I-beg so-that*
modo mihi succurras; quoniam Franci undique obsident
*now me you-should-aid since the-Franks on-all-sides besiege*
me in Antiocheno oppido, urbemque in suo tenent imperio,
*me in the-Antiochene town and-the-city in their they-hold command*
nosque alienare a regione Romaniae sive Syriae adhuc
*and-us to-estrange from the-region of-Romania or of-Syria still*
autem et Corrozani cupiunt. Omnia patravere quae
*moreover and of-Khorasan they-desire all-things they-have-accomplished which*

voluerunt, patrem occiderunt meum; nihil aliud superest, nisi
*they-wished father they-have-killed my nothing else remains except*
ut me et te et omnes alios ex genere nostro interficiant.
*that me and you and all others of race our they-should-kill*
Ego namque iamdudum tuum exspecto auxilium, ut mihi
*I for long-since your await help that me*
succurras in hoc periculo. Cui ait ille: Si vis, ut ex
*you-should-aid in this peril to-whom says he if you-wish that from*
toto corde in tuo sim proficuo tibique fideliter in hoc
*whole heart in your I-be profit and-to-you faithfully in this*
succurram periculo, illud oppidum in meam trade manum
*I-aid peril that town into my hand-over hand*
et tunc videbis, qualiter in tuo ero proficuo, idque
*and then you-shall-see how in your I-shall-be profit and-it*
faciam custodire meis hominibus. Ait illi Sensadolus: Si
*I-shall-cause to-be-guarded by-my men says to-him Shams-ad-Daula if*
potes omnes Francos occidere mihique capita eorum tradere,
*you-can all the-Franks to-kill and-to-me the-heads their hand-over*
tibi dabo oppidum, tibique faciam hominium et in tua
*to-you I-shall-give the-town and-to-you I-shall-do homage and in your*
fidelitate custodiam illud oppidum. Cui Curbaram: Non
*fealty I-shall-guard that town to-whom Kerbogha not*
ita, inquit, erit, sed continuo in meam manum committe
*so he-says it-shall-be but at-once into my hand commit*
castrum. Tandem volens nolensque commisit illi castrum.
*the-citadel at-length willing and-unwilling he-committed to-him the-citadel*
Tertia vero die postquam intravimus civitatem, eorum
*on-the-third indeed day after we-entered the-city their*
praecursores ante urbem praecurrerunt; exercitus autem illorum
*forerunners before the-city ran-ahead the-army moreover of-them*
ad Pontem Farreum castrametatus est, et expugnaverunt
*at the-Bridge Iron encamped has and they-stormed*

turrim et occiderunt omnes, quos illic invenerunt, et nemo
*a-tower and killed all whom there they-found and no-one*
evasit vivus nisi dominus illorum, quem invenimus ligatum
*escaped alive except the-lord their whom we-found bound*
in vinculis ferreis, facto maiore bello. Crastina vero die, moto
*in chains of-iron made the-greater battle on-the-next indeed day moved*
exercitu paganorum, appropinquaverunt urbi et castrametati
*the-army of-the-pagans they-drew-near to-the-city and encamped*
sunt inter duo flumina, steteruntque ibi per duos dies. Recepto
*have between two rivers and-they-stood there for two days received*
itaque castro, Curbaram convocavit unum ammiralium ex suis,
*and-so the-citadel Kerbogha summoned one emir of his-men*
quem sciebat veracem, mitem et pacificum, et ait illi: Volo,
*whom he-knew truthful mild and peaceable and said to-him I-wish*
ut intres in fidelitatem meam custodire hoc castrum, quoniam
*that you-enter into fealty my to-guard this citadel since*
ex longissimo tempore scio te fidelissimum, ideoque precor
*from a-very-long time I-know you most-faithful and-therefore I-beg*
te, ut summa cautela hoc serves oppidum, adhuc namque
*you that with-the-highest caution this you-keep town still for*
quod scio te in opere prudentissimum, nullum magis
*what I-know you in work most-prudent none more*
veracem et fortissimum hic modo reperire possum. Cui ait
*truthful and bravest here now to-find I-can to-whom says*
ammiralius: Tibi unquam de tali nollem obedire officio;
*the-emir to-you ever in such I-would-not-wish to-obey office*
sed priusquam me tuo arguas stimulo, hoc faciam illo
*but before me with-your you-goad spur this I-shall-do on-that*
tenore, ut, si Franci eiecerint vos de mortali proelio et
*condition that if the-Franks shall-have-thrown you from the-mortal battle and*
vicerint, eis continuo tradam hoc castrum. Dixitque
*shall-have-conquered to-them at-once I-shall-hand-over this citadel and-said*

illi Curbaram: Tam honestum et prudentem te cognosco,
*to-him Kerbogha so honorable and prudent you I-know*
ut omne quicquid boni vis agere, ego consentiam.
*that everything whatever of-good you-wish to-do I shall-consent*
Reversus est itaque Curbaram ad suum exercitum, et protinus
*returned has and-so Kerbogha to his army and at-once*
Turci, deludentes Francorum collegium, detulerunt ante
*the-Turks mocking of-the-Franks the-company carried before*
conspectum Curbaram quendam vilissimum ensem rubigine
*the-sight of-Kerbogha a-certain most-vile sword with-rust*
tectum et teterrimum arcum ligneum et lanceam nimis
*covered and a-most-foul bow wooden and a-lance very*
inutilem, quae abstulerant nuper pauperibus peregrinis,
*useless which they-had-taken-away lately from-poor pilgrims*
dixeruntque: Ecce arma, quae attulerunt Franci obviam
*and-they-said behold the-arms which have-brought the-Franks to-meet*
nobis ad pugnam! Tunc Curbaram coepit subridere, palam
*us for fighting then Kerbogha began to-smile openly*
dicens omnibus, qui in illo aderant collegio: Haec sunt
*saying to-all who in that were-present company these are*
arma bellica et nitida, quae attulerunt Christiani super nos
*the-arms warlike and gleaming which have-brought the-Christians upon us*
in Asiam, quibus putant nos et confidunt expellere ultra
*into Asia with-which they-think us and are-confident to-drive beyond*
confinia Corrozanae et delere nomina nostra ultra Amazonia
*the-borders of-Khorasan and to-blot-out names our beyond the-Amazon*
flumina, qui propulerunt omnes parentes nostros a Romania
*rivers who have-driven-out all forefathers our from Romania*
et Antiochia urbe regia, quae est honorabile caput totius
*and Antioch the-city royal which is the-honorable head of-all*
Syriae. Mox convocavit suum notarium et ait: Scribe cito
*Syria soon he-summoned his notary and said write quickly*

plures chartas, quae in Corrozana sint legendae, videlicet:
*many charters which in Khorasan are to-be-read namely*
Caliphae, nostro Apostolico, ac nostro regi, domino Soldano,
*to-the-Caliph our apostolic-one and to-our king the-lord Sultan*
militi fortissimo, atque omnibus prudentissimis militibus
*the-knight bravest and to-all the-most-prudent knights*
Corrozanae, salus et immensus honor. Satis sint laeti et
*of-Khorasan greeting and immense honor quite let-them-be glad and*
gavisi iocunda concordia et satisfaciant ventribus, imperent
*rejoicing in-pleasant concord and let-them-satisfy their-bellies let-them-command*
et sermocinent per universam regionem illam, ut omnino
*and let-them-discourse through all region that that wholly*
dent sese ad petulantiam et ad luxuriam, multosque filios
*they-give themselves to wantonness and to lust and-many sons*
patrare congaudeant, qui contra Christianos fortiter pugnare
*to-beget let-them-rejoice-together who against the-Christians strongly to-fight*
praevaleant et libenter suscipiant haec tria arma, quae olim
*may-prevail and willingly let-them-receive these three arms which lately*
abstulimus a Francorum turma, et discant modo quae
*we-took-away from of-the-Franks the-troop and let-them-learn now what*
arma attulerit super nos gens Francigena, qualiter optima
*arms has-brought upon us the-people French-born how excellent*
et perfecta sunt, heu! certare contra nostra arma, quae bis
*and perfect they-are alas to-contend against our arms which twice*
aut ter sive quater sunt colata aut purgata ceu argentum
*or thrice or four-times are refined or purified like silver*
aut aurum purissimum. Adhuc quoque sciant omnes, quoniam
*or gold most-pure still also let-know all that*
ego cunctos Francos intus in Antiochia conclusos habeo et
*I all the-Franks inside in Antioch shut-in have and*
castrum in mea libera teneo voluntate, illi vero deorsum sunt
*the-citadel in my free I-hold will they but below are*

in civitate. Habeo etiam omnes illos iam in mea manu, eosque
*in the-city I-have also all them now in my hand and-them*
faciam aut capitalem subire sententiam aut deduci in
*I-shall-cause either the-capital to-undergo sentence or to-be-led into*
Corrozanam in captivitatem nimiam, eo quod minantur
*Khorasan into captivity excessive for-the-reason that they-threaten*
nos suis armis propulsare et expellere ab omnibus finibus
*us with-their arms to-drive-off and to-expel from all borders*
nostris aut eiicere ultra superiorem Indiam, ceu eiecerunt
*our or to-cast beyond the-upper India as they-cast*
omnes parentes nostros a Romania sive Syria. Amodo iuro
*all forefathers our from Romania or Syria henceforth I-swear*
vobis per Machomet et per omnia Deorum nomina, quoniam
*to-you by Muhammad and by all of-the-Gods the-names that*
ante vestram non ero rediturus praesentiam, donec
*before your not I-shall-be about-to-return presence until*
regalem urbem Antiochiam et omnem Syriam sive Romaniam
*the-royal city Antioch and all Syria or Romania*
atque Bulgariam usque in Apuliam acquisiero mea
*and Bulgaria all-the-way into Apulia I-shall-have-acquired with-my*
forti dextera ad Deorum honorem et vestrum et omnium,
*strong right-hand to the-Gods' honor and yours and of-all*
qui sunt ex genere Turcorum. Sic fecit finem dictis.
*who are of the-race of-the-Turks thus he-made an-end to-the-words*

*Kerbogha's mother comes from Aleppo and begs him not to fight the Franks, whose God fights for them as a shepherd guards his flock, as the prophets and the Apostle say. She has read in the stars and the books of the gentiles that the Christians will conquer, and warns that he will not die in this battle but will lose all and die within the year. He refuses, and she returns grieving.*

Mater vero eiusdem Curbaram, quae erat in Aleph civitate,
*the-mother but of-the-same Kerbogha who was in Aleppo the-city*
statim venit ad eum, dixitque illi lacrimabiliter: Fili,
*at-once came to him and-said to-him tearfully son*
suntne vera, quae audio? Cui ait ille: Quae? Et
*are true-things which I-hear to-whom says he what-things and*
dixit illa: Audivi, quia bellum vis committere cum
*said she I-have-heard that battle you-wish to-join with*
Francorum gente. Ait ille: Verum omnino scias. Dixit
*of-the-Franks the-people says he true wholly you-should-know said*
illa: Contestor te, fili, per omnium Deorum nomina et per
*she I-adjure you son by of-all the-Gods the-names and by*
tuam magnam bonitatem, ne bellum cum Francis committas,
*your great goodness not battle with the-Franks to-join*
quoniam tu es miles invictus, et nullam imprudentiam ex
*since you are a-knight unconquered and no imprudence from*
te aut ex tuo exercitu unquam penitus audivi, et te e
*you or from your army ever at-all have-I-heard and you from*
campo ab aliquo victore fugientem quisquam minime invenit.
*the-field by any victor fleeing anyone not-at-all has-found*
Diffamata est tua militia ubique, omnesque prudentes milites
*spread-abroad is your soldiership everywhere and-all prudent knights*
audito tuo nomine contremiscunt. Satis namque scimus, fili,
*heard your name tremble well for we-know son*

quoniam tu es bellipotens et fortis et bellorum ingeniosus,
*that you are war-mighty and strong and in-wars ingenious*
nullaque gens Christianorum vel paganorum ante tuum
*and-no people of-Christians or of-pagans before your*
conspectum aliquam virtutem habere potuit; sed fugiebant
*sight any power to-have could but they-fled*
solummodo audito tuo nomine sicut oves ante leonis
*only heard your name as sheep before of-the-lion*
furorem fugiunt. Ideoque obsecro te, carissime fili, ut meis
*the-fury flee and-therefore I-beseech you dearest son that in-my*
acquiescas consiliis et ne unquam in tuo haesitet animo aut
*you-acquiesce counsels and lest ever in your it-waver mind or*
in tuo inveniatur consilio, ut bellum velis incipere cum
*in your be-found counsel that battle you-should-wish to-begin with*
Christiana gente. Tunc Curbaram, materna audiens monita,
*the-Christian people then Kerbogha the-maternal hearing warnings*
feroci respondit sermone: Quid est hoc, mater, quod
*with-fierce answered speech what is this mother that*
mihi refers? Puto, quod insanis aut furiis es plena.
*to-me you-relate I-think that you-are-mad or with-furies you-are full*
Enimvero mecum habeo plures amiralios, quam Christiani
*indeed with-me I-have more emirs than Christians*
sint, sive maiores sive minores. Respondit ei mater sua: O
*there-be either greater or lesser answered him mother his O*
dulcissime fili, Christiani nequeunt vobiscum bellare; scio
*sweetest son the-Christians cannot with-you to-make-war I-know*
namque, quod non valent nobis pugnam inferre, sed Deus
*for that not they-are-able on-us fight to-bring but God*
eorum pro ipsis cotidie pugnat, eosque diu noctuque sua
*their for them daily fights and-them by-day and-by-night with-his*
protectione defendit et vigilat super eos, sicut pastor vigilat
*protection defends and watches over them as a-shepherd watches*

super gregem suum, et non permittit eos laedi nec
*over flock his and not allows them to-be-harmed nor*
conturbari ab ulla gente, et quicunque volunt eis obstare,
*to-be-troubled by any people and whoever wish them to-oppose*
idem eorum Deus conturbat illos, sicut ipse ait per os
*the-same their God troubles them as he says through the-mouth*
David prophetae: «Dissipa gentes, quae bella volunt», et
*of-David the-prophet scatter the-peoples who wars wish and*
alibi: «Effunde iram tuam in gentes, quae te non noverunt,
*elsewhere pour-out anger your upon the-peoples who you not have-known*
et in regna, quae nomen tuum non invocaverunt».
*and upon the-kingdoms which name your not have-called-upon*
Antequam vero praeparati sint ad incipiendum bellum,
*before indeed prepared they-are for beginning battle*
eorum Deus omnipotens et bellipotens simul cum sanctis
*their God almighty and war-mighty together with saints*
suis omnes inimicos iam habet devictos, quanto magis modo
*his all enemies now has conquered how-much more now*
faciet circa vos, qui eius estis inimici et qui praeparastis
*shall-he-do with you who his are enemies and who have-prepared*
vos obsistere eis tota virtute? Hoc autem, carissime,
*yourselves to-oppose them with-all strength this moreover dearest*
in rei veritate scias, quoniam isti Christiani «filii
*in of-the-thing truth you-should-know that these Christians sons*
Christi» vocati sunt et prophetarum ore «filii adoptionis
*of-Christ called are and of-the-prophets by-the-mouth sons of-adoption*
et promissionis» et secundum Apostolum «heredes Christi»
*and of-promise and according-to the-Apostle heirs of-Christ*
sunt, quibus Christus hereditates repromissas iam donavit
*they-are to-whom Christ the-inheritances promised already has-given*
dicendo per prophetas: «A Solis ortu usque ad
*saying through the-prophets from of-the-sun the-rising all-the-way to*

occasum erunt termini vestri, et nemo stabit contra vos».
*the-setting shall-be borders your and no-one shall-stand against you*
Et qui potest his dictis contradicere vel obstare? Certe si
*and who can these words to-contradict or oppose certainly if*
hoc bellum contra eos inceperis, maximum tibi erit
*this battle against them you-shall-have-begun the-greatest to-you shall-be*
damnum ac dedecus, et multos fideles tuos milites perdes
*loss and disgrace and many faithful your knights you-shall-lose*
et universa spolia, quae apud te habes, amittes et nimio
*and all the-spoils which with you you-have you-shall-lose and with-excessive*
pavore fugiendo everteris. Tu autem in hoc bello non
*terror by-fleeing you-shall-be-overthrown you moreover in this battle not*
morieris modo, sed tamen in hoc anno, quoniam ipse Deus
*shall-die now but yet in this year since he-himself God*
non statim iudicat offendentem se exerta ira, sed quando
*not at-once judges one-offending him with-drawn anger but when*
vult, punit cum manifesta vindicta; ideoque timeo, ne
*he-wishes he-punishes with manifest vengeance and-therefore I-fear lest*
te iudicet poenali tristitia. Non morieris, inquam, modo,
*you he-judge with-penal sadness not you-shall-die I-say now*
verumtamen perditurus es in praesentiarum habita.
*nevertheless about-to-lose you-are for the-present the-things-held*
Curbaram denique valde dolens intimis visceribus, auditis
*Kerbogha finally greatly grieving in-his-inmost bowels heard*
maternis sermonibus, respondit: Mater carissima, quaeso
*the-maternal words answered mother dearest I-ask*
te, quis dixit tibi ista de gente Christiana, quod
*you who said to-you these-things about the-people Christian that*
Deus eorum tantum eos amet et quod ipse pugnandi
*God their so-much them loves and that he of-fighting*
virtutem in se retinet maximam, et quod illi Christiani
*the-power in himself retains the-greatest and that those Christians*

vincent nos in Antiocheno proelio et quod ipsi capturi
*shall-conquer us in the-Antiochene battle and that they about-to-take*
sunt nostra spolia, nosque persecuturi magna victoria, et
*are our spoils and-us about-to-pursue with-great victory and*
quod in hoc anno moriturus sum morte subitanea? Tunc
*that in this year about-to-die I-am by-a-death sudden then*
respondit ei mater sua dolens: Fili carissime, ecce sunt
*answered him mother his grieving son dearest behold there-are*
plus quam centum annorum tempora, de quibus inventum
*more than a-hundred of-years the-times since which found*
est in nostra pagina et in gentilium voluminubus, quoniam
*is in our page and in of-the-gentiles the-volumes that*
gens Christiana super nos foret ventura et nos ubique
*the-people Christian upon us would-be about-to-come and us everywhere*
victura ac super paganos regnatura, et nostra gens
*about-to-conquer and over the-pagans about-to-reign and our people*
illis ubique erit subdita. Sed ignoro, utrum modo an
*to-them everywhere shall-be subject but I-know-not whether now or*
in futuro sint haec eventura. Ego utique misera sum
*in the-future may-be these-things about-to-happen I certainly wretched have*
te secuta ab Aleph, urbe pulcherrima, in qua speculando
*you followed from Aleppo the-city most-beautiful in which by-watching*
atque ingeniose rimando respexi in coelorum astra et
*and cleverly by-searching I-looked into of-the-heavens the-stars and*
sagaciter scrutata sum planetas et duodecim signa sive
*shrewdly scrutinized have the-planets and the-twelve signs or*
sortes innumeras. In eis omnibus repperi, quoniam gens
*lots countless in them all I-found that the-people*
Christiana nos ubique est devictura, ideoque de te
*Christian us everywhere is about-to-conquer and-therefore about you*
timeo valde, nimis maesta, ne ex te remaneam orbata.
*I-fear greatly very-much sorrowful lest of you I-remain bereaved*

Dixit illi Curbaram: Mater carissima, dic mihi omnia, quae
*said to-her Kerbogha mother dearest tell me all-things which*
in corde meo sunt incredula. Quae respondens ait: Hoc,
*in heart my are unbelieving who answering says this*
carissime, libenter faciam, si sciero ea, quae tibi
*dearest willingly I-shall-do if I-shall-have-known those-things which to-you*
sunt incognita. Cui ille dixit: Non sunt igitur Boamundus
*are unknown to-whom he said not are therefore Bohemond*
et Tancredus Francorum Dii et non eos liberant de
*and Tancred of-the-Franks Gods and not them they-free from*
inimicis suis et non ipsi manducant in uno quoque prandio
*enemies their and not they eat at one every meal*
II milia vaccas et IV milia porcos? Respondit mater: Fili
*two thousand cows and four thousand pigs answered the-mother son*
carissime, Boamundus et Tancredus mortales sunt sicut alii
*dearest Bohemond and Tancred mortal are like others*
omnes; sed Deus eorum valde diligit eos prae omnibus aliis
*all but God their greatly loves them before all others*
et virtutem proeliandi dat eis prae ceteris. Nam Deus
*and the-power of-fighting gives to-them before the-rest for God*
illorum, omnipotens est nomen eius, qui fecit caelum et
*their almighty is the-name his who made heaven and*
terram et fundavit maria et omnia, quae in eis sunt, cuius
*earth and founded the-seas and all-things which in them are whose*
sedes in caelo est parata in aeternum, cuius potestas ubique
*seat in heaven is prepared into eternity whose power everywhere*
est metuenda. Ait filius: Si ita est causa, cum eis proeliari
*is to-be-feared says the-son if so is the-case with them to-fight*
non desinam. Itaque audiens mater eius, quod nullomodo
*not I-shall-cease and-so hearing mother his that in-no-way*

acquiesceret consiliis suis, maestissima recessit retrorsum in
*he-would-acquiesce in-counsels her most-sorrowful withdrew back to*
Aleph, deferens secum cuncta spolia, quae conducere potuit.
*Aleppo carrying with-herself all the-spoils which to-bring she-could*

## XXIII · THE FRANKS BESIEGED IN ANTIOCH

*Kerbogha attacks from the citadel side, and the Franks are driven into the city through a gate so narrow that many are crushed. William of Grandmesnil and others let themselves down the wall by night and tell the sailors at Saint Simeon that all are lost; the ships flee, and the Turks burn the ships left behind. The Franks wall themselves off and are reduced to eating horses and asses.*

Tertia vero die armavit se Curbaram et maxima pars
*on-the-third indeed day armed himself Kerbogha and the-greatest part*
Turcorum cum eo, veneruntque ad civitatem ex illa parte,
*of-the-Turks with him and-they-came to the-city from that side*
in qua erat castrum. Nos autem putantes resistere posse
*in which was the-citadel we moreover thinking to-resist to-be-able*
illis, paravimus bellum contra eos; sed tam magna fuit
*them prepared battle against them but so great was*
virtus illorum, quod nequivimus illis resistere; sicque coacti
*the-power of-them that we-could-not them to-resist and-thus compelled*
intravimus civitatem; quibus fuit tam mirabiliter arta et
*we-entered the-city for-whom was so wondrously tight and*
angusta porta, ut illic fuerint multi mortui oppressione
*narrow the-gate that there there-were many dead by-the-crushing*
aliorum. Interea alii pugnabant extra urbem, alii intus, in
*of-others meanwhile some fought outside the-city others inside on*
V[a] feria per totum diem usque ad vesperam. Inter
*the-fifth weekday through the-whole day all-the-way to evening among*

haec Willelmus de Grentamasnil et Albericus frater eius
*these-things William of Grandmesnil and Aubrey brother his*
et Wido Trursellus et Lambertus Pauper, isti omnes timore
*and Guy Trousseau and Lambert the-Poor these all by-fear*
perterriti de hesterno bello, quod duraverat usque ad
*terrified from yesterday's battle which had-lasted all-the-way to*
vesperam, nocte latenter dimissi sunt per murum fugientes
*evening by-night secretly let-down were over the-wall fleeing*
pedibus contra mare, ita ut neque in manibus neque in
*on-foot toward the-sea so that neither on the-hands nor on*
pedibus remaneret aliquid nisi solummodo ossa. Multique alii
*the-feet remained anything except only bones and-many others*
fugerunt cum illis, quos nescio. Venientes igitur ad naves, quae
*fled with them whom I-know-not coming therefore to the-ships which*
erant ad Portum Sancti Simeonis, dixerunt nautis: Quid hic,
*were at the-Port of-Saint Simeon they-said to-the-sailors why here*
miseri, statis? Omnes nostri mortui sunt et nos mortem
*wretches do-you-stand all our-men dead are and we death*
vix evasimus, quia exercitus Turcorum undique obsident
*scarcely escaped because the-armies of-the-Turks on-all-sides besiege*
alios in urbe. At illi audientes talia stabant stupefacti,
*the-others in the-city but they hearing such-things stood stupefied*
ac timore perterriti cucurrerunt ad naves et miserunt se
*and by-fear terrified ran to the-ships and put themselves*
in mare. Deinde supervenientes Turci, quos invenerunt,
*on the-sea then coming-upon-them the-Turks whom they-found*
occiderunt, et naves, quae in alveo fluminis remanserant,
*they-killed and the-ships which in the-bed of-the-river had-remained*
combusserunt igni et apprehenderunt spolia eorum.
*they-burned with-fire and seized the-spoils their*
Nos denique, qui remansimus, nequivimus sufferre pondus
*we finally who remained could-not bear the-weight*

armorum illorum; fecimusque murum inter nos et illos,
*of-the-arms of-them and-we-made a-wall between us and them*
quem custodiebamus diu noctuque. Interea tanta oppressione
*which we-guarded by-day and-by-night meanwhile by-such oppression*
fuimus oppressi, ut equos et asinos nostros manducaremus.
*we-were oppressed that horses and asses our we-ate*

## XXIV · THE PRIEST'S VISION AND THE OATH

*A priest tells the princes that Christ, with his mother and Saint Peter, appeared to him, rebuked the army's sins with pagan and Christian women, and promised help within five days if they return to him and sing* Congregati sunt *daily. He offers to leap from a tower to prove it, and the bishop of Le Puy has him swear to it on the Gospels and the cross. The princes swear not to flee, and Tancred vows not to withdraw while he has forty knights with him.*

Quodam vero die stantibus nostris maioribus sursum ante
*on-a-certain indeed day standing our greater-men up before*
castellum tristibus ac dolentibus, venit quidam sacerdos ad eos
*the-citadel sad and grieving came a-certain priest to them*
et dixit: Seniores, si vobis placet, audite rem quamdam, quam
*and said lords if to-you it-pleases hear a-thing certain which*
in visione vidi: Cum nocte una iacerem in ecclesia S.
*in a-vision I-saw when on-a-night one I-lay in the-church of-Saint*
Mariae, matris Domini nostri Jesu Christi, apparuit mihi
*Mary the-mother of-the-Lord our Jesus Christ appeared to-me*
Salvator mundi cum sua genetrice et beato Petro, apostolorum
*the-Savior of-the-world with his mother and blessed Peter of-the-apostles*
principe, stetitque ante me et dixit mihi: «Agnoscis me»?
*the-prince and-he-stood before me and said to-me do-you-know me*
Cui respondi: «Non». His dictis, ecce apparuit integra crux
*to-whom I-answered no these said behold appeared a-whole cross*

in capite eius. Iterum ergo interrogavit me Dominus, dicens:
*on head his again therefore asked me the-Lord saying*
«Agnoscis me»? Cui dixi: «Te alio modo non agnosco,
*do-you-know me to-whom I-said you in-other way not I-know*
nisi quia crucem in capite tui cerno sicut Salvatoris nostri».
*except that a-cross on the-head of-you I-see as of-the-Savior our*
Qui dixit: «Ego sum». Statim cecidi ad pedes eius, rogans
*who said I am at-once I-fell at the-feet his asking*
humiliter, ut subveniret nobis in oppressione illa, quae
*humbly that he-would-come-to-aid us in oppression that which*
super nos erat. Respondit Dominus: «Bene adiuvi vos et
*upon us was answered the-Lord well I-have-helped you and*
amodo adiuvabo. Ego permisi vos habere Niceam civitatem
*henceforth I-shall-help I allowed you to-have Nicaea the-city*
et omnia devincere bella, et conduxi vos huc usque et
*and all to-conquer the-battles and I-led you hither all-the-way and*
condolui vestrae miseriae, quam passi fuistis in obsidione
*I-grieved-with your misery which suffered you-had in the-siege*
Antiochiae. Ecce in auxilio opportuno misi vos sanos et
*of-Antioch behold in help opportune I-put you sound and*
incolumes in civitatem; et ecce, multam pravam dilectionem
*unharmed into the-city and behold much depraved love*
operantes cum Christianis et pravis paganis mulieribus,
*you-are-working with Christian and depraved pagan women*
unde immensus fetor ascendit in caelum.» Tunc alma Virgo
*whence an-immense stench rises into heaven then the-kindly Virgin*
et beatus Petrus ceciderunt ad pedes eius, rogantes eum et
*and blessed Peter fell at the-feet his asking him and*
deprecantes, ut suum in hac tribulatione adiuvaret populum.
*entreating that his in this tribulation he-would-help people*
Dixitque beatus Petrus: «Domine, per tot tempora tenuit
*and-said blessed Peter O-Lord for so-many times has-held*

paganorum gens domum meam, in qua multa et ineffabilia
*of-the-pagans the-people house my in which many and unspeakable*
mala fecerunt. Modo vero expulsis inimicis inde, Domine,
*evils they-have-done now indeed driven-out the-enemies thence O-Lord*
laetantur angeli in caelis.» Dixitque mihi Dominus: «Vade
*rejoice the-angels in the-heavens and-said to-me the-Lord go*
ergo et dic populo meo, ut revertatur ad me, et ego
*therefore and say to-people my that it-return to me and I*
revertar ad illum et infra V dies mittam ei magnum
*shall-return to it and within five days I-shall-send to-it great*
adiutorium, et cotidie decantet responsorium: Congregati
*help and daily let-it-sing the-responsory gathered*
sunt, totum cum versu. Seniores, si hoc non creditis esse
*are whole with the-verse lords if this not you-believe to-be*
verum, sinite modo me in hanc scandere turrim, mittamque
*true allow now me into this to-climb tower and-I-shall-throw*
me deorsum; si vero fuero incolumis, credatis hoc
*myself down if indeed I-shall-have-been unharmed may-you-believe this*
esse verum, sin autem ullam laesionem fuero passus,
*to-be true but-if-not moreover any harm I-shall-have suffered*
decollate me aut in ignem proiicite me. Tunc Podiensis
*behead me or into the-fire throw me then of-Le-Puy*
episcopus iussit, ut adferrentur Evangelia et crux, quatinus
*the-bishop ordered that be-brought the-Gospels and the-cross so-that*
iuraret ille hoc esse verum. Consiliati sunt omnes maiores
*should-swear he this to-be true took-counsel have all greater-men*
nostri in illa hora, ut iurarent sacramentum, quod illorum
*our in that hour that they-should-swear an-oath that of-them*
nullus fugeret neque pro morte neque pro vita, quamdiu vivi
*none would-flee neither for death nor for life as-long-as alive*
essent. Primus dicitur iurasse Boamundus, deinde comes
*they-should-be first is-said to-have-sworn Bohemond then the-count*

Sancti Egidii et Rotbertus Nortmannus ac dux Godefridus
*of-Saint Gilles and Robert the-Norman and duke Godfrey*
et comes Flandrensis. Tancredus vero iuravit ac promisit
*and the-count of-Flanders Tancred but swore and promised*
tali modo, quia, quamdiu secum XL milites haberet,
*in-such way that as-long-as with-himself forty knights he-should-have*
non solum ex illo bello, sed etiam ab Hierosolymitano
*not only from that battle but also from the-Jerusalem*
itinere non esset recessurus. Nimis autem exsultavit
*journey not he-would-be about-to-withdraw very-much moreover exulted*
Christiana congregatio, hoc audiens sacramentum.
*the-Christian congregation this hearing oath*

## XXV · SAINT ANDREW AND THE LANCE

*Saint Andrew appears twice to a pilgrim named Peter, shows him where the Lord's lance lies buried in Saint Peter's church, and rebukes him for not digging it up, promising that whoever carries it in battle will never be overcome. The people doubt until Peter swears it, and they take heart at the promise that their enemies will be conquered.*

Erat autem quidam peregrinus de nostro exercitu, cui
*there-was moreover a-certain pilgrim from our army to-whom*
nomen Petrus, cui ante quam civitatem intraremus, apparuit
*the-name Peter to-whom before that we-entered the-city appeared*
Sanctus Andreas apostolus, dicens: Quid agis, bone vir?
*Saint Andrew the-apostle saying what are-you-doing good man*
Cui ille respondit: Tu quis es? Dixit ei apostolus: Ego
*to-whom he answered you who are said to-him the-apostle I*
sum Andreas apostolus. Agnoscas, fili, quia, dum villam
*am Andrew the-apostle you-should-know son that when the-town*

intraveris, vadens ad ecclesiam beati Petri, ibi invenies
*you-shall-have-entered going to the-church of-blessed Peter there you-shall-find*
lanceam Salvatoris nostri Jesu Christi, ex qua in crucis
*the-lance of-the-Savior our Jesus Christ with which on of-the-cross*
pendens patibulo vulneratus est. Haec omnia dicens
*hanging the-gibbet wounded he-was these-things all saying*
apostolus continuo recessit. Ipse autem timens revelare consilium
*the-apostle at-once withdrew he moreover fearing to-reveal the-counsel*
apostoli, noluit indicare nostris peregrinis. Aestimabat
*of-the-apostle was-unwilling to-make-known to-our pilgrims he-thought*
autem se visum videre et dixit ad eum: Domine, quis hoc
*moreover himself a-vision to-see and said to him Lord who this*
crediderit? In illa vero hora accepit eum Sanctus Andreas et
*would-believe in that indeed hour took him Saint Andrew and*
portavit eum usque ad locum, ubi lancea erat recondita in
*carried him all-the-way to the-place where the-lance was hidden in*
terra. Iterum cum essemus ita ut superius diximus, venit
*the-earth again when we-were so as above we-said came*
Sanctus Andreas rursus, dicens ei: Quare non abstulisti
*Saint Andrew again saying to-him why not have-you-taken-away*
lanceam de terra ut ego tibi praecepi? Scias revera,
*the-lance from the-earth as I to-you commanded you-should-know in-truth*
quia quicunque lanceam hanc portaverit in bello, numquam
*that whoever lance this shall-have-carried in battle never*
ab hoste superabitur. Petrus vero continuo revelavit mysterium
*by an-enemy shall-be-overcome Peter but at-once revealed the-mystery*
apostoli hominibus nostris. Populus autem non credebat, sed
*of-the-apostle to-men our the-people moreover not believed but*
prohibebat dicens: Quomodo possumus hoc credere? Omnino
*refused-it saying how can-we this to-believe wholly*
enim erant paventes et protinus mori putabant. Accessit
*for they-were fearing and at-once to-die they-thought approached*

itaque ille et iuravit hoc totum veracissimum esse, quoniam
*and-so he and swore this all most-true to-be since*
ei Sanctus Andreas bis in visione apparuerat eique dixerat:
*to-him Saint Andrew twice in a-vision had-appeared and-to-him had-said*
Surge, vade et dic populo Dei, ne timeat, sed firmiter
*rise go and say to-the-people of-God lest it-fear but firmly*
toto corde credat in unum verum Deum, eruntque
*with-whole heart let-it-believe in one true God and-they-shall-be*
ubique victuri, et infra V dies mandabit eis Dominus
*everywhere about-to-conquer and within five days shall-send to-them the-Lord*
talem rem, unde laeti et gavisi manebunt, et, si certare
*such a-thing whence glad and rejoicing they-shall-remain and if to-contend*
voluerint, mox ut exierint unanimiter ad bellum,
*they-shall-have-wished as-soon as they-shall-have-gone-out with-one-mind to battle*
omnes inimici eorum vincentur et nemo stabit contra
*all the-enemies their shall-be-conquered and no-one shall-stand against*
illos. Audientes itaque, quod inimici eorum ab eis omnino
*them hearing and-so that the-enemies their by them wholly*
essent vincendi, protinus coeperunt sese vivificare et
*were about-to-be-conquered at-once they-began themselves to-revive and*
confortabant se adinvicem dicentes: Expergiscimini et
*comforted themselves among-one-another saying awake and*
estote ubique fortes et prudentes, quoniam in proximo
*be everywhere strong and prudent since in the-near-future*
erit nobis Deus in adiutorium; et erit maximum
*shall-be for-us God in help and he-shall-be the-greatest*
refugium populo suo, quem respicit in maerore manentem.
*refuge to-people his whom he-beholds in sorrow remaining*

## XXVI · FIRE AND FAMINE IN THE CITY

*The citadel Turks press so hard that three knights are trapped in a tower, where Hugh the Mad fights all day. When the men will not leave the houses, Bohemond sets fire to the city, and about two thousand churches and houses burn. The Franks wall off the citadel; a fire falls from heaven on the Turkish camp; and hunger drives the pilgrims to eat leaves, thistles, and hides.*

Turci denique, qui erant seorsum in castello, undique tam
*the-Turks finally who were apart in the-citadel on-all-sides so*
mirabiliter coangustabant nos, ut quadam die incluserint
*wondrously hemmed-in us that on-a-certain day they-shut-in*
tres milites ex nostris in turrim, quae erat ante eorum
*three knights of ours in a-tower which was before their*
castellum. Exierant namque gentiles et irruerant super illos
*citadel had-gone-out for the-gentiles and had-rushed upon them*
tam acriter, ut nequirent sufferre pondus eorum. Duo ex
*so fiercely that they-could-not bear the-weight of-them two of*
militibus exierunt de turri vulnerati, et tertius per
*the-knights went-out from the-tower wounded and the-third through*
totam diem viriliter defendebat se de Turcorum invasione
*the-whole day manfully defended himself from of-the-Turks the-attack*
tam prudenter, ut in ipsa die duos Turcos straverit super
*so prudently that on that-very day two Turks he-laid-low upon*
aditum muri caesis hastis. Nam tres hastae detruncatae
*the-approach of-the-wall broken the-spears for three spears cut-to-pieces*
sunt in illa die in manibus suis. Illi vero acceperunt capitalem
*were on that day in hands his they but received the-capital*
sententiam. Erat nomen illi Hugo li Forcenez, de exercitu
*sentence was the-name to-him Hugh the Mad from the-army*
Gosfridi de Monte Scabioso. Videns autem vir venerabilis
*of-Godfrey of Monte Scaglioso seeing moreover the-man venerable*

Boamundus, quia nullatenus posset conducere gentes sursum
*Bohemond that in-no-way he-could to-lead the-peoples up*
in castellum ad bellum (nam qui erant inclusi in domibus,
*to the-citadel for battle for those-who were shut-in in the-houses*
timebant alii fame, alii timore Turcorum), iratus est valde
*feared some from-hunger others from-fear of-the-Turks angered was greatly*
iussitque confestim mitti ignem per urbem in illa parte,
*and-ordered at-once to-be-put fire through the-city in that part*
in qua erat Cassiani palatium. Quod videntes illi, qui erant
*in which was of-Yaghi-Siyan the-palace which seeing those who were*
in civitate, dereliquerunt domos et omnia, quae habebant,
*in the-city abandoned the-houses and all-things which they-had*
fugiebantque alii in castellum, alii ad portam comitis Sancti
*and-fled some into the-citadel others to the-gate of-the-count of-Saint*
Egidii, alii ad portam ducis Godefridi, unusquisque ad suam
*Gilles others to the-gate of-duke Godfrey each to his-own*
gentem. Tunc nimia tempestas venti subito surrexit, ita ut
*people then an-excessive storm of-wind suddenly rose so that*
nemo posset se regere rectum. Boamundus itaque vir
*no-one could himself to-guide straight Bohemond and-so the-man*
sapiens contristatus est valde, timens pro ecclesia Sancti Petri
*wise saddened was greatly fearing for the-church of-Saint Peter*
et Sanctae Mariae aliisque ecclesiis. Haec ira duravit ab
*and of-Saint Mary and-the-other churches this wrath lasted from*
hora tertia usque in mediam noctem, fueruntque crematae
*the-hour third all-the-way into the-middle night and-there-were burned*
fere II milia ecclesiarum et domorum. Veniente autem
*almost two thousand of-churches and of-houses coming moreover*
media nocte statim omnis feritas ignis cecidit. Itaque
*the-middle night at-once all the-savagery of-the-fire fell and-so*
Turci habitantes in castello intra urbem bellabant nobiscum
*the-Turks dwelling in the-citadel within the-city made-war with-us*

diu noctuque, et nihil aliud disseparabat nos nisi arma.
*by-day and-by-night and nothing else separated us except arms*
Videntes hoc nostri, quod non possent diu haec pati,
*seeing this our-men that not they-could long these-things to-suffer*
quoniam qui habebat panem, non licebat ei manducare,
*since he-who had bread not it-was-allowed to-him to-eat*
et qui habebat aquam, non licebat bibere, fecerunt
*and who had water not it-was-allowed to-drink they-made*
murum inter nos et ipsos petra et calce, et aedificaverunt
*a-wall between us and them with-stone and lime and built*
castellum et machinas, ut securi essent. Pars autem
*a-castle and engines that secure they-might-be part moreover*
Turcorum remansit in castello agendo nobiscum bellum, alia
*of-the-Turks remained in the-citadel making with-us war the-other*
vero pars hospitata erat prope castellum in una valle. Nocte
*but part lodged had near the-citadel in a valley night*
quippe superveniente ignis de caelo apparuit ab occidente
*indeed coming-on a-fire from heaven appeared from the-west*
veniens et appropinquans cecidit intra Turcorum exercitus,
*coming and drawing-near fell within of-the-Turks the-army*
unde mirati sunt et nostri et Turci. Mane autem facto
*whence marveled have both our-men and the-Turks morning moreover made*
tremefacti Turci fugerunt omnes pariter pro ignis timore
*terrified the-Turks fled all together for of-the-fire fear*
ante domini Boamundi portam, illicque hospitati sunt. Pars
*before of-lord Bohemond the-gate and-there lodged have the-part*
vero, quae erat in castello, agebat bellum cum nostris die
*but which was in the-citadel made war with our-men by-day*
noctuque sagittando, vulnerando, occidendo. Alia autem
*and-by-night by-shooting-arrows by-wounding by-killing the-other moreover*
pars undique obsedit civitatem, ita ut nullus nostrorum
*part on-all-sides besieged the-city so that none of-ours*

civitatem auderet exire aut intrare nisi nocte et occulte.
*the-city dared to-go-out-of or to-enter except by-night and secretly*
Ita vero eramus obsessi et oppressi ab illis paganis, inimicis
*so indeed we-were besieged and oppressed by those pagans the-enemies*
Dei et Christianitatis, quorum numerus fuit innumerabilis.
*of-God and of-Christendom whose number was countless*
Istique profani et inimici Dei ita tenebant nos inclusos
*and-these profane-men and enemies of-God so held us shut-in*
in urbe Antiochiae, ut multi mortui fuerint fame,
*in the-city of-Antioch that many dead were of-hunger*
quoniam parvus panis vendebatur uno bisantio, de vino non
*since a-small loaf was-sold for-one bezant of wine not*
loquar. Equinas namque carnes aut asininas manducabant
*I-shall-speak horse for meat or asses' they-ate*
et vendebant; vendebant quoque gallinam XV solidis,
*and sold they-sold also a-hen for-fifteen shillings*
ovum duobus solidis, unam nucem uno denario. Omnia
*an-egg for-two shillings one nut for-one penny all-things*
enim valde erant cara: folia fici, vitis et cardui
*for very were dear the-leaves of-the-fig of-the-vine and of-the-thistle*
omniumque arborum coquebant et manducabant, tantam
*and-of-all trees they-cooked and ate such*
famem immensam habebant. Alii coria caballorum et
*hunger immense they-had others the-hides of-horses and*
camelorum et asinorum atque boum seu bufalorum sicca
*of-camels and of-asses and of-oxen or of-buffaloes dried*
decoquebant et manducabant. Istas et multas anxietates ac
*boiled-down and ate these and many anxieties and*
angustias, quas nominare nequeo, passi sumus pro Christi
*straits which to-name I-cannot suffered we-have for of-Christ*

nomine et Sancti Sepulcri via deliberanda. Tales quoque
*the-name and of-the-Holy Sepulcher the-road to-be-freed such also*
tribulationes et fames ac timores passi sumus per XXVI dies.
*tribulations and hungers and fears suffered we-have for twenty-six days*

## XXVII · STEPHEN OF BLOIS TURNS THE EMPEROR BACK

*Stephen of Blois, count of Chartres and the army's chosen leader, feigns sickness, flees, and seeing the Turkish tents from a mountain tells the emperor at Philomelium that all are lost. The emperor turns back and lays the land waste. Bohemond's brother Guy weeps for Bohemond, then calls Stephen a half-dog whose word is false, but the army turns back, and many die on the road.*

Imprudens itaque Stephanus, Carnotensis comes, quem omnes
*the-imprudent and-so Stephen of-Chartres the-count whom all*
nostri maiores elegerant, ut esset ductor nostrorum,
*our greater-men had-chosen that he-should-be the-leader of-our-men*
maxima se finxit deprimi infirmitate, priusquam
*by-the-greatest himself feigned to-be-weighed-down sickness before*
Antiochia esset capta, turpiterque recessit in aliud castrum,
*Antioch was taken and-basely withdrew into another castle*
quod vocatur Alexandreta. Nos itaque cotidie praestolabamur
*which is-called Alexandretta we and-so daily awaited*
eum, quatinus subveniret nobis in adiutorio, qui eramus
*him so-that he-might-come-to-aid us in help who were*
inclusi in urbe salutifero carentes auxilio. At ille, postquam
*shut-in in the-city of-saving lacking aid but he after*
audivit gentem Turcorum circumcingentem et obsidentem
*he-heard the-people of-the-Turks surrounding and besieging*
nos, latenter ascendit super proximam montaneam, quae
*us secretly climbed onto the-nearest mountain which*

stabat prope Antiochiam, viditque innumerabilia tentoria,
*stood near Antioch and-saw countless tents*
vehementique captus timore recessit, fugitque festinanter cum
*and-by-vehement seized fear withdrew and-fled hastily with*
suo exercitu. Veniens autem in suum castrum, exspoliavit
*his army coming moreover into his castle he-despoiled*
illud et celeri cursu retrovertitur. Postquam vero venit
*it and with-swift course turns-back after indeed he-came*
obviam imperatori ad Philomenam, seorsum vocavit eum
*to-meet the-emperor at Philomelium apart he-called him*
secreto dicens: Scias revera, quoniam capta est Antiochia
*secretly saying you-should-know in-truth that taken is Antioch*
et castrum minime captum est, nostrique omnes gravi
*and the-citadel not-at-all taken is and-our-men all by-grievous*
oppressione obsessi sunt et, ut puto, a Turcis modo interfecti
*oppression besieged are and as I-think by the-Turks now killed*
sunt. Revertere ergo retro quam citius potes, ne et ipsi
*were return therefore back as quickly-as you-can lest also they*
inveniant te et hanc gentem, quam tecum ducis. Tunc
*find you and this people which with-you you-lead then*
imperator timore perterritus clam vocavit Widonem, fratrem
*the-emperor by-fear terrified secretly called Guy brother*
Boamundi, et quosdam alios, et ait illis: Seniores, quid
*of-Bohemond and certain others and said to-them lords what*
faciemus? Ecce omnes nostri districta obsessione impediti sunt
*shall-we-do behold all our-men by-tight siege hampered are*
et forsitan in hac hora omnes a Turcorum manibus mortui
*and perhaps in this hour all by of-the-Turks the-hands dead*
sunt aut in captivitatem ducti, sicut iste infelix comes
*are or into captivity led as this unhappy count*
turpiter fugiens narrat. Si vultis, revertamur retro celeri
*basely fleeing tells if you-wish let-us-return back with-swift*

cursu, ne et nos moriamur repentina morte, quemadmodum
*course lest also we die by-a-sudden death just-as*
et illi mortui sunt. Cum Wido, miles honestissimus,
*also they died have when Guy knight most-honorable*
talia audisset fallacia, cum omnibus statim coepit plorare
*such-things had-heard falsehoods with all at-once began to-weep*
atque vehementissimo ululatu plangere, unaque voce omnes
*and with-most-vehement howling to-lament and-with-one voice all*
dicebant: O Deus verus, trinus et unus, quamobrem haec
*said O God true threefold and one wherefore these-things*
fieri permisisti? Cur populum sequentem te in manibus
*to-be-done have-you-allowed why the-people following you into the-hands*
inimicorum incidere permisisti et viam tui itineris
*of-the-enemies to-fall have-you-allowed and the-road of-your journey*
tuique Sepulcri liberare volentes tam cito dimisisti?
*and-of-your Sepulcher to-free those-wishing so quickly have-you-abandoned*
Certe, si verum est hoc verbum, quod ab istis nequissimis
*certainly if true is this word which from these most-wicked-men*
audivimus, nos et alii Christiani derelinquemus te, nec
*we-have-heard we and other Christians shall-forsake you nor*
te amplius rememorabimur, et unus ex nobis non audebit
*you further shall-we-remember and one of us not shall-dare*
ulterius invocare nomen tuum. Et fuit hic sermo maestissimus
*further to-invoke name your and was this talk most-sorrowful*
in tota militia, ita ut nullus illorum sive episcopus sive
*in the-whole army so that none of-them whether bishop or*
abbas seu clericus seu laicus auderet invocare Christi nomen
*abbot or cleric or layman dared to-invoke of-Christ the-name*
per plures dies. Nemo namque poterat consolari Widonem
*for many days no-one for could console Guy*
plorantem et ferientem se manibus suosque frangentem
*weeping and striking himself with-hands and-his breaking*

digitos et dicentem: Heu mihi! domine mi Boamunde,
*fingers and saying alas for-me lord my Bohemond*
honor et decus totius mundi, quem omnis mundus
*honor and glory of-the-whole world whom all the-world*
timebat et amabat! Heu mihi tristis! non merui dolens
*feared and loved alas for-me sad not I-deserved grieving*
tuam videre honestissimam speciem, qui nullam rem magis
*your to-see most-honorable appearance who no thing more*
videre desiderabam. Quis mihi det, ut ego moriar pro
*to-see desired who for-me would-grant that I might-die for*
te, dulcissime amice et domine? Cur ego ex utero matris
*you sweetest friend and lord why I from the-womb of-mother*
meae exiens non statim mortuus fui? Cur ad hanc lugubrem
*my going-out not at-once dead was why to this mournful*
diem perveni? Cur non demersus fui in mare? Cur non
*day have-I-come why not drowned was-I in the-sea why not*
ex equo cecidi fracto collo, ut recepissem repentinum
*from my-horse did-I-fall broken my-neck that I-might-have-received sudden*
interitum? Utinam tecum recepissem felix martyrium, ut
*destruction would-that with-you I-had-received happy martyrdom that*
cernerem te gloriosissimum recepisse finem! Cumque omnes
*I-might-see you most-glorious to-have-received an-end and-when all*
cucurrissent ad eum, quatinus consolarentur eum, ut iam
*had-run to him so-that they-might-console him that now*
finem daret planctui, in se reversus ait: Forsitan
*an-end he-should-give to-the-lament into himself having-returned he-says perhaps*
creditis huic semicano imprudenti militi? Unquam vere non
*you-believe this half-dog imprudent knight ever truly not*
audivi loqui de militia aliqua, quam idem fecisset.
*I-have-heard speak of feat-of-arms any which the-same had-done*
Sed turpiter et inhoneste recedit sicut nequissimus et
*but basely and dishonorably he-withdraws like a-most-wicked and*

infelix, et quicquid miser nuntiat, sciatis falsum esse.
*unhappy-man and whatever the-wretch announces know false to-be*
Interea iussit imperator suis hominibus dicens: Ite et
*meanwhile ordered the-emperor his men saying go and*
conducite omnes homines istius terrae in Bulgariam et
*lead all the-men of-this land into Bulgaria and*
explorate et devastate universa loca, ut, cum venerint
*scour and lay-waste all places that when shall-have-come*
Turci, nihil possint hic reperire. Voluissent noluissent
*the-Turks nothing they-may-be-able here to-find willing-or unwilling*
nostri, reversi sunt retrorsum dolentes amarissime usque ad
*our-men returned have back grieving most-bitterly all-the-way to*
mortem; fueruntque mortui multi ex peregrinis languentes
*death and-there-were dead many of the-pilgrims languishing*
nec valentes fortiter militiam sequi, remanebantque morientes
*nor able strongly the-army to-follow and-they-remained dying*
in via. Omnes vero alii reversi sunt Constantinopolim.
*on the-road all but the-others returned have to-Constantinople*

## XXVIII · THE LANCE FOUND, AND ENVOYS TO KERBOGHA

*Thirteen men dig all day in Saint Peter's church, and the pilgrim Peter finds the lance as he foretold, to great joy. The princes send Peter the Hermit and Herluin to ask Kerbogha why he has invaded Christian land, and to bid him withdraw, taking all his goods with him. Kerbogha answers that the Franks may have land and friendship if they become Turks, or else death or captivity.*

Nos igitur, auditis sermonibus illius, qui nobis Christi
*we therefore heard the-words of-him who to-us of-Christ*
revelationem retulit per verba apostoli, statim festinantes
*the-revelation reported through the-words of-the-apostle at-once hastening*

pervenimus ad locum in Sancti Petri ecclesia, quem
*came to the-place in of-Saint Peter the-church which*
ille demonstraverat. Et foderunt ibi XIII homines a
*he had-shown and dug there thirteen men from*
mane usque ad vesperam: sicque homo ille invenit
*morning all-the-way to evening and-thus man that found*
lanceam, sicut indicaverat, et acceperunt illam cum magno
*the-lance as he-had-indicated and they-received it with great*
gaudio et timore; fuitque orta immensa laetitia in tota
*joy and fear and-was arisen immense gladness in the-whole*
urbe. Ab illa hora accepimus inter nos consilium belli.
*city from that hour we-took among us counsel of-battle*
Porro statuerunt omnes maiores nostri consilium, quatinus
*further resolved all greater-men our a-council so-that*
nuntium mitterent ad inimicos Christi Turcos, qui per
*a-messenger they-should-send to the-enemies of-Christ the-Turks who through*
aliquem interpretem interrogaret eos securo eloquio dicens:
*some interpreter should-ask them with-secure eloquence saying*
Quamobrem superbissime in Christianorum introissent
*wherefore most-proudly into of-the-Christians they-had-entered*
terram et cur castrametati sint et quare Christi servos
*the-land and why encamped they-have and why of-Christ the-servants*
occidant et conquassent. Cumque iam finis esset dictis,
*they-kill and they-shatter and-when now an-end there-was to-the-words*
invenerunt quosdam viros, Petrum scilicet heremitam et
*they-found certain men Peter namely the-hermit and*
Herluinum, illisque dixerunt haec omnia: Ite ad exsecratum
*Herluin and-to-them said these all-things go to the-accursed*
Turcorum exercitum et diligenter narrate eis haec
*of-the-Turks army and diligently tell to-them these-things*
omnia, interrogantes eos, cur audacter et superbissime
*all asking them why boldly and most-proudly*

introierint terram Christianorum et nostram. His dictis
*they-have-entered the-land of-the-Christians and ours these said*
recesserunt nuntii veneruntque ad profanum collegium,
*withdrew the-messengers and-came to the-profane company*
dicentes omnia missa verba Curbaram et aliis ita: Satis
*saying all the-sent words to-Kerbogha and to-the-others thus enough*
multumque mirantur nostri maiores et seniores, quamobrem
*and-much marvel our greater-men and lords wherefore*
temere ac superbissime in Christianorum introistis terram
*rashly and most-proudly into of-the-Christians you-have-entered the-land*
et illorum. Putamus forsitan et credimus, quia huc ideo
*and theirs we-think perhaps and believe that hither for-this*
venistis, quoniam per omnia vultis effici Christiani; aut
*you-have-come because in all-things you-wish to-be-made Christians or*
propterea igitur huc venistis, ut per omnia Christianos
*on-that-account therefore hither you-have-come that in all-things the-Christians*
afficiatis? Rogant vos igitur omnes pariter nostri maiores, ut
*you-may-afflict ask you therefore all together our greater-men that*
velociter recedatis a terra Dei et Christianorum, quam
*swiftly you-withdraw from the-land of-God and of-the-Christians which*
beatus Petrus apostolus iam dudum praedicando ad Christi
*blessed Peter the-apostle long since by-preaching to of-Christ*
culturam convertit. At illi permittunt adhuc vobiscum deduci
*the-worship converted but they allow still with-you to-be-led*
omnia vestra: scilicet equos et mulos, asinos et camelos,
*all-things your namely horses and mules asses and camels*
oves et boves et omnia alia ornamenta permittunt vobiscum,
*sheep and oxen and all other furnishings they-allow with-you*
quocumque volueritis, ferre. Tunc Curbaram, princeps
*wherever you-shall-have-wished to-carry then Kerbogha the-prince*
militiae Soldani Persidis, cum omnibus aliis, pleni superbia,
*of-the-army of-the-Sultan of-Persia with all the-others full of-pride*

feroci respondere sermone: Deum vestrum et vestram
*with-fierce to-answer speech God your and your*
Christianitatem nec optamus nec volumus, vosque cum
*Christianity neither we-desire nor wish and-you with*
illis omnino respuimus. Huc usque iam venimus, eo
*them wholly we-spit-out hither up-to now we-have-come for-the-reason*
quod valde miramur, quamobrem seniores ac maiores, quos
*that greatly we-marvel wherefore the-lords and greater-men whom*
memoratis, cur terram, quam abstulimus effeminatis gentibus,
*you-mention why the-land which we-took-away from-effeminate peoples*
illi vocant esse suam. Vultis namque scire quid vobis
*they call to-be theirs do-you-wish for to-know what to-you*
dicimus? Revertimini ergo quantocius et dicite vestris
*we-say return therefore with-all-speed and say to-your*
senioribus, quia, si per omnia cupiunt effici Turci et
*lords that if in all-things they-desire to-be-made Turks and*
Deum vestrum, quem vos inclini colitis, abnegare volunt et
*God your whom you bowed worship to-deny they-wish and*
leges vestras spernere, nos illis hanc et satis plus dabimus
*the-laws your to-spurn we to-them this and enough more shall-give*
de terra et civitates et castella; adhuc autem quod nemo
*of land and cities and castles further moreover that none*
vestrorum remanebit pedes, sed erunt omnes milites, sicut
*of-yours shall-remain a-foot-soldier but they-shall-be all knights as*
et nos sumus; et habebimus semper eos in summa amicitia.
*also we are and we-shall-have always them in the-highest friendship*
Sin autem, sciant se per omnia capitalem subire
*but-if-not moreover let-them-know themselves in all-things the-capital to-undergo*
sententiam aut deducti in vinculis Corrozanam in captivitate
*sentence or led in chains to-Khorasan in captivity*
perpetua servient nobis nostrisque infantibus per sempiterna
*perpetual they-shall-serve us and-our children through everlasting*

tempora. Nuntii vero nostri velociter reversi sunt retrorsum,
*times the-messengers but our swiftly returned have back*
referentes omnia, quae respondisset eis gens crudelissima.
*reporting all-things which had-answered them the-most-cruel people*
Fertur Herluinus utramque scisse linguam fuitque interpres
*is-said Herluin both to-have-known tongue and-was interpreter*
Petro Eremitae. Interea exercitus noster in utraque tremefactus
*to-Peter the-hermit meanwhile army our on both terrified*
parte ignorabat quid faceret: ex una enim parte coangustabat
*side knew-not what it-should-do on one for side hemmed-in*
eos cruciabilis fames, in alia constringebat timor Turcorum.
*them tormenting hunger on the-other constrained the-fear of-the-Turks*

## XXIX · THE GREAT BATTLE OF ANTIOCH

*After three days' fasting and processions, six battle-lines march out, the bishop of Le Puy bearing the lance, while clergy march with them praying and others bless them from the wall. Kerbogha lets them come out, then falters; a seventh line meets a flanking force; and a host on white horses led by Saints George, Mercurius, and Demetrius comes to help. The Turks flee, the citadel surrenders to Bohemond, and its emir is baptized. The battle is fought on June 28.*

Tandem triduanis expletis ieiuniis et processionibus celebratis
*at-length three-day completed fasts and processions celebrated*
ab una ecclesia in aliam, de peccatis suis confessi
*from one church to another of sins their confessed*
sunt et absoluti, fideliterque corpori et sanguini Christi
*have and absolved and-faithfully in-the-body and blood of-Christ*
communicaverunt: datisque eleemosynis fecerunt celebrari
*communicated and-given alms they-caused to-be-celebrated*
missas. Deinde stabilitae sunt VI acies ex eis intra
*masses then established were six battle-lines of them within*

civitatem: in prima vero acie, in primo videlicet capite,
*the-city in the-first indeed battle-line in the-first namely head*
fuit Hugo Magnus cum Francigenis et Flandrensi comite;
*was Hugh the-Great with the-French-born and the-Flemish count*
in secunda dux Godefridus cum suo exercitu; in tertia vero
*in the-second duke Godfrey with his army in the-third indeed*
fuit Rotbertus Nortmannus cum suis militibus; in quarta
*was Robert the-Norman with his knights in the-fourth*
fuit Podiensis episcopus, portans secum lanceam Salvatoris,
*was of-Le-Puy the-bishop carrying with-himself the-lance of-the-Savior*
cum sua gente et cum exercitu Raimundi comitis Sancti
*with his people and with the-army of-Raymond the-count of-Saint*
Egidii, qui remansit sursum custodire castellum pro timore
*Gilles who remained up to-guard the-citadel for fear*
Turcorum, ne descenderent in civitatem; in quinta acie
*of-the-Turks lest they-should-come-down into the-city in the-fifth battle-line*
fuit Tancredus, Marchisi filius, cum sua gente; in sexta
*was Tancred of-the-Marquis son with his people in the-sixth*
etenim fuit vir sapiens Boamundus cum sua militia.
*indeed was the-man wise Bohemond with his army*
Episcopi nostri et presbyteri et clerici ac monachi sacris
*bishops our and presbyters and clerics and monks in-sacred*
vestibus induti nobiscum exierunt cum crucibus, orantes et
*vestments clothed with-us went-out with crosses praying and*
deprecantes Dominum, ut nos salvos faceret et custodiret
*entreating the-Lord that us safe he-should-make and should-guard*
et ab omnibus malis eriperet. Alii stabant super murum
*and from all evils should-rescue others stood upon the-wall*
portae, tenentes sacras cruces in manibus suis, signando
*of-the-gate holding holy crosses in hands their signing*
et benedicendo nos. Ita nos ordinati et signo crucis
*and blessing us so we ordered and by-the-sign of-the-cross*

protecti exivimus per portam, quae est ante Machomariam.
*protected went-out through the-gate which is before the-Mahomerie*
Postquam Curbaram vidit Francorum acies tam pulchre
*after Kerbogha saw of-the-Franks the-battle-lines so beautifully*
ordinatas exire unam post aliam, dixit: Sinite eos exire,
*ordered go-out one after another he-said allow them to-go-out*
ut melius eos habeamus in potestate nostra. Postquam vero
*that better them we-may-have in power our after indeed*
fuerunt foris de urbe viditque Curbaram ingentem Francorum
*they-were outside of the-city and-saw Kerbogha the-huge of-the-Franks*
gentem, valde timuit. Mox mandavit suo amiralio, qui omnia
*people greatly he-feared soon he-sent-word to-his emir who all-things*
habebat in custodia, ut, si ille videret ignem accensum
*had in keeping that if he should-see a-fire kindled*
in capite hostis, protinus praeconari faceret omnem
*at the-head of-the-army at-once to-be-proclaimed he-should-cause the-whole*
exercitum redire, sciens Turcos amisisse bellum. Continuo
*army to-return knowing the-Turks to-have-lost the-battle at-once*
Curbaram coepit paulatim redire retro contra montaneam,
*Kerbogha began little-by-little to-go-back back toward the-mountain*
nostrique paulatim persequebantur illos. Denique divisi sunt
*and-our-men little-by-little pursued them finally divided were*
Turci: una pars ivit contra mare, et alii steterunt illic,
*the-Turks one part went toward the-sea and others stood there*
putantes nostros includere inter se. Videntes hoc nostri,
*thinking our-men to-shut-in between themselves seeing this our-men*
fecerunt similiter. Illic fuit ordinata acies septena ex
*did likewise there was ordered a-battle-line seventh from*
acie ducis Godefridi et comitis Nortmanniae, et
*the-battle-line of-the-duke Godfrey and of-the-count of-Normandy and*
caput illius fuit Reinaldus. Hanc miserunt obviam Turcis,
*the-head of-it was Rainald this-one they-sent to-meet the-Turks*

qui veniebant a mari. Turci autem proeliati sunt cum illis
*who came from the-sea the-Turks moreover fought have with them*
et sagittando multos occiderunt ex nostris. Aliae autem
*and by-shooting-arrows many killed of our-men the-other moreover*
turmae ordinatae sunt a flumine usque ad montaneam,
*squadrons ordered were from the-river all-the-way to the-mountain*
quod distat per II milliaria. Coeperunt vero turmae
*which is-distant by two miles began indeed the-squadrons*
ex utraque parte exire nostrosque undique circumcingere
*from both side to-go-out and-our-men on-all-sides to-surround*
iaculando, sagittando, vulnerando. Exibant quoque de
*by-hurling by-shooting-arrows by-wounding went-out also from*
montaneis innumerabiles exercitus, habentes equos albos,
*the-mountains countless armies having horses white*
quorum vexilla omnia erant alba. Videntes itaque nostri
*whose banners all were white seeing and-so our-men*
hunc exercitum, ignorabant penitus, quid hoc esset et qui
*this army knew-not at-all what this might-be and who*
essent, donec cognoverunt esse adiutorium Christi, cuius
*they-were until they-knew it-to-be the-help of-Christ whose*
ductores fuerunt Sancti Georgius, Mercurius et Demetrius.
*leaders were the-Saints George Mercurius and Demetrius*
Haec verba credenda sunt, quia plures ex nostris viderunt.
*these words to-be-believed are because many of ours saw-it*
Turci autem, qui stabant in parte maris, videntes, quod
*the-Turks moreover who stood on the-side of-the-sea seeing that*
non possent suffere amplius, miserunt ignem in herbam,
*not they-could to-bear further put fire in the-grass*
ut videntes illi, qui erant in tentoriis, fugerent. At illi,
*that seeing those who were in the-tents should-flee but they*
cognoscentes illud signum, arripuerunt omnia honorabilia
*knowing that signal snatched-up all the-honorable*

spolia et fugerunt. Nostri vero paulatim militabant, ubi
*spoils and fled our-men but little-by-little fought where*
maxima virtus eorum erat, scilicet ad tentoria illorum. Dux
*the-greatest power of-them was namely at the-tents of-them duke*
Godefridus et Flandrensis comes et Hugo magnus equitabant
*Godfrey and the-Flemish count and Hugh the-Great rode*
iuxta aquam, ubi virtus illorum erat. Isti primitus signo
*beside the-water where the-power of-them was these first with-the-sign*
crucis muniti unanimiter invaserunt illos. Videntes hoc
*of-the-cross fortified with-one-mind attacked them seeing this*
aliae acies, simili modo invaserunt illos, exclamaverunt
*the-other battle-lines in-like way attacked them shouted*
autem Persae et Turci. Nos itaque invocantes Deum
*moreover the-Persians and Turks we and-so invoking God*
vivum et verum equitavimus contra illos et in nomine
*living and true rode against them and in the-name*
Jesu Christi et Sancti Sepulchri incepimus bellum et Deo
*of-Jesus Christ and of-the-Holy Sepulcher we-began the-battle and God*
iuvante devicimus eos. Turci vero tremefacti arripuerunt
*helping we-conquered them the-Turks but terrified took-up*
fugam, nostrique illos persequebantur iuxta tentoria. Itaque
*flight and-our-men them pursued beside the-tents and-so*
milites Christi magis amabant persequi illos quam ulla
*the-knights of-Christ more loved to-pursue them than any*
spolia quaerere. Et persecuti sunt eos usque ad Pontem
*spoils to-seek and pursued have them all-the-way to the-Bridge*
Farreum ac deinde usque ad castellum Tancredi. Illi vero
*Iron and then all-the-way to the-castle of-Tancred they but*
dimiserunt ibi papiliones suos et aurum et argentum
*left there tents their and gold and silver*
multaque ornamenta, oves quoque et boves, equos et mulos,
*and-many furnishings sheep also and oxen horses and mules*

camelos et asinos, frumentum et vinum, farinam et alia
*camels and asses grain and wine flour and other*
multa, quae nobis erant necessaria. Hermenii et Suriani,
*many-things which to-us were necessary the-Armenians and Syrians*
qui habitabant in illis partibus, audientes nos superasse
*who dwelt in those parts hearing us to-have-overcome*
Turcos, cucurrerunt ad montaneam obviantes illis, et quantos
*the-Turks ran to the-mountain meeting them and as-many-as*
comprehenderunt ex illis, interfecerunt. Nos autem revertentes
*they-caught of them they-killed we moreover returning*
ad civitatem cum magno gaudio laudavimus et benediximus
*to the-city with great joy praised and blessed*
Deum, qui victoriam dedit populo suo. Ammiralius itaque,
*God who victory gave to-people his the-emir and-so*
qui castellum custodiebat, videns Curbaram et omnes
*who the-citadel guarded seeing Kerbogha and all*
alios fugientes e campo ante Francorum exercitum,
*the-others fleeing from the-field before of-the-Franks the-army*
magis timuit: statim vero cum magna festinatione petebat
*more feared at-once indeed with great haste he-sought*
Francorum vexilla. Comes igitur Sancti Egidii, qui illic
*of-the-Franks the-banners the-count therefore of-Saint Gilles who there*
astabat ante castellum, iussit ei portari suum vexillum.
*stood-by before the-citadel ordered to-him to-be-carried his banner*
Ille autem accepit illud et diligenter misit in turrim. Statim
*he moreover received it and diligently put-it into the-tower at-once*
dixerunt Longobardi, qui illic stabant: Hoc vexillum non est
*said the-Lombards who there stood this banner not is*
Boamundi. Interrogavit ille et dixit: Cuius est? Qui dixerunt:
*of-Bohemond asked he and said whose is-it who said*
Sancti Egidii comitis. Accessit ille et apprehenso vexillo
*of-Saint Gilles the-count approached he and seized the-banner*

reddidit comiti. Ipsa vero hora venit vir venerabilis
*gave-it-back to-the-count in-that-very indeed hour came the-man venerable*
Boamundus deditque illi suum vexillum; ille autem illud
*Bohemond and-gave him his banner he moreover it*
accepit cum magno gaudio et iniit pactum cum domino
*received with great joy and entered a-pact with lord*
Boamundo, ut pagani, qui vellent christianitatem recipere,
*Bohemond that the-pagans who wished Christianity to-receive*
essent cum eo, et qui vellent abire, sanos et absque
*should-be with him and who wished to-go-away sound and without*
ulla laesione abire permitteret. Consensit ille quicquid
*any harm to-go-away he-should-allow agreed he whatever*
ammiralius postulavit, et continuo misit suos servientes in
*the-emir asked and at-once sent his servants into*
castellum. Non post multos dies baptizatus est ammiralius
*the-citadel not after many days baptized was the-emir*
cum illis, qui Christum recognoscere maluerunt. Illos vero,
*with those who Christ to-acknowledge preferred those but*
qui suas voluerunt tenere leges, fecit dominus Boamundus
*who their wished to-keep laws caused lord Bohemond*
conduci in Saracenorum terram. Hoc bellum factum est
*to-be-led into of-the-Saracens the-land this battle done was*
in IVº. Kalendas Julii, in vigilia apostolorum Petri
*on the-fourth-day-before the-Kalends of-July on the-vigil of-the-apostles Peter*
et Pauli, regnante Domino nostro Jesu Christo, cui est
*and Paul reigning Lord our Jesus Christ to-whom is*
honor et gloria in sempiterna saecula. Amen.
*honor and glory to everlasting ages amen*

*The princes send Hugh the Great to summon the emperor to take over the city; Hugh goes and never returns. The princes wait for November, since the land is dry in summer, and Raymond Pilet takes Talamania and a Saracen castle but is routed before Marra. In the city the bishop of Le Puy dies on August 1, mourned as the support of the poor, whom he urged the knights to honor.*

Et cum iam essent omnes inimici nostri — Deo trino et
*and when now were all enemies our to-God threefold and*
uno summoque dignas referimus grates — per omnia devicti,
*one and-highest worthy we-render thanks in all-things conquered*
huc illucque fugientes, alii semivivi, alii vulnerati in vallibus
*hither and-thither fleeing some half-alive others wounded in the-valleys*
et in nemoribus et in arvis et in viis deficiebant mortui.
*and in the-groves and in the-fields and on the-roads they-failed dead*
Populus vero Christi, victores scilicet peregrini, reversi sunt
*the-people but of-Christ the-victors namely the-pilgrims returned have*
gaudentes felici triumpho, devictis hostibus, in civitatem.
*rejoicing in-the-happy triumph conquered the-foes into the-city*
Statim omnes nostri seniores, videlicet dux Godefridus, comes
*at-once all our lords namely duke Godfrey the-count*
Sancti Egidii Raimundus, Boamundus, comes Nortmanniae
*of-Saint Gilles Raymond Bohemond the-count of-Normandy*
dominus Rotbertus, comesque Flandrensis et alii omnes
*lord Robert and-the-count of-Flanders and others all*
miserunt nobilissimum militem Hugonem Magnum imperatori
*sent the-most-noble knight Hugh the-Great to-the-emperor*
Constantinopolim, ut ad recipiendam civitatem veniret et
*to-Constantinople that for receiving the-city he-should-come and*
conventiones, quas erga illos habebat, expleret: ivit nec postea
*the-covenants which toward them he-had should-fulfill he-went nor afterward*

rediit. Postquam vero haec omnia facta sunt, congregati
*returned after indeed these-things all done were gathered*
omnes nostri maiores ordinaverunt concilium, quemadmodum
*all our greater-men ordained a-council how*
hunc feliciter valerent conducere et regere populum, donec
*this happily they-might-be-able to-lead and to-rule people until*
peragerent iter Sancti Sepulcri, pro quo huc usque
*they-should-complete the-journey of-the-Holy Sepulcher for which hither up-to*
multa erant passi pericula. Inventum est in concilio, quia
*many they-had suffered perils found it-was in the-council that*
nondum auderent intrare in paganorum terram, eo
*not-yet they-should-dare to-enter into of-the-pagans the-land for-the-reason*
quod valde in aestivo tempore est arida et inaquosa: ideoque
*that greatly in the-summer time it-is dry and waterless and-therefore*
acceperunt terminum attendendum ad Kalendas Novembris.
*they-took a-term to-be-awaited to the-Kalends of-November*
Denique divisi sunt seniores, et unusquisque profectus est in
*finally divided were the-lords and each set-out has into*
terram suam, donec esset terminus eundi, feceruntque principes
*land his until should-be the-term of-going and-made the-princes*
praeconari per universam urbem, ut, si forte aliquis egens
*to-be-proclaimed through all the-city that if perhaps anyone needy*
illic adesset et auro et argento careret, conventione facta cum
*there were-present and of-gold and silver lacked covenant made with*
illis remanere si vellet, ab eis cum gaudio retentus esset.
*them to-remain if he-wished by them with joy retained he-would-be*
Erat autem ibi quidam miles de exercitu comitis Sancti
*there-was moreover there a-certain knight from the-army of-the-count of-Saint*
Egidii, cui nomen Raimundus Piletus; hic plurimos
*Gilles to-whom the-name Raymond Pilet he very-many*
retinuit homines, milites et pedites. Egressus est ille cum
*retained men knights and foot-soldiers went-out has he with*

collecto exercitu et viriliter introiit in Saracenorum terram
*gathered army and manfully entered into of-the-Saracens the-land*
et profectus est ultra duas civitates et pervenit ad quoddam
*and set-out has beyond two cities and came to a-certain*
castrum, cui nomen Talamania. Habitatores castri, scilicet
*castle to-which the-name Talamania the-inhabitants of-the-castle namely*
Suriani, confestim sua sponte se tradiderunt ei.
*Syrians at-once of-their own-accord themselves surrendered to-him*
Cumque omnes essent ibi fere per VIII dies, nuntii venerunt
*and-when all were there almost for eight days messengers came*
ad eum dicentes: Quoniam hic prope nos est castrum
*to him saying that here near us is a-castle*
Saracenorum multitudine plenum. Ad hoc castrum ilico ierunt
*of-Saracens with-a-multitude full to this castle at-once went*
Christi milites peregrini et undique invaserunt illud, quod
*of-Christ the-knights pilgrims and on-all-sides attacked it which*
continuo ab illis captum est Christi adiutorio. Apprehenderunt
*at-once by them taken was of-Christ with-the-help they-seized*
igitur omnes illius loci colonos, et qui christianitatem
*therefore all of-that place the-farmers and who Christianity*
recipere noluerunt, occiderunt, qui vero Christum recognoscere
*to-receive were-unwilling they-killed who but Christ to-acknowledge*
maluerunt, vivos conservarunt. Reversi sunt itaque hoc peracto
*preferred alive they-kept returned have and-so this completed*
nostri Franci cum magno gaudio ad prius castrum. Tertia
*our Franks with great joy to the-former castle on-the-third*
vero die exierunt et venerunt ad quamdam urbem, cui
*indeed day they-went-out and came to a-certain city to-which*
nomen Marra, quae illic erat prope illos. Erant autem ibi
*the-name Marra which there was near them were moreover there*
multi Turci congregati et Saraceni ab Aleph civitate et ab
*many Turks gathered and Saracens from Aleppo the-city and from*

omnibus urbibus et castris, quae circa illam sunt. Exierunt
*all the-cities and castles which around it are went-out*
ergo barbari contra illos ad bellum, nostrique aestimantes
*therefore the-barbarians against them to battle and-our-men thinking*
luctari cum illis proeliando, coegerunt eos in fugam, et
*to-wrestle with them by-fighting drove them into flight and*
tamen reversi, per totum diem invadebant nostros
*yet having-returned through the-whole day they-attacked our-men*
adinvicem; et usque ad vesperam perduravit illa invasio.
*by-turns and all-the-way to evening lasted that attack*
Aestus namque erat immensus; nequibant iam nostri sufferre
*the-heat for was immense could-not now our-men bear*
tantam sitim, quoniam nullatenus ad bibendum invenire
*such thirst since in-no-way for drinking to-find*
ibi aquam poterant; voluerunt tamen ad illorum castrum
*there water they-could they-wished yet to their castle*
secure redire. Pro illorum enim peccatis Suriani et minuta
*securely to-return for of-them for the-sins the-Syrians and the-small*
gens nimio pavore correpti, mox coeperunt viam carpere
*people by-excessive terror seized soon began the-road to-take*
retrorsum. Ut autem Turci viderunt illos retrocedentes,
*backward as moreover the-Turks saw them going-back*
statim coeperunt illos persequi, et victoria illis ministrabat
*at-once they-began them to-pursue and victory to-them supplied*
vires, multi namque ex ipsis reddiderunt animas Deo,
*strength many for of them gave-back souls to-God*
cuius amore illic congregati fuerant. Haec occisio facta est
*for-whose love there gathered they-had-been this slaughter done was*
V$^{o}$ die in mense Julio. Reversi sunt autem Franci illi,
*on-the-fifth day in the-month of-July returned have moreover the-Franks those*
qui remanserant, in suum castrum, et fuit ibi Raimundus
*who had-remained into their castle and was there Raymond*

cum sua gente per plures dies. Alii vero, qui in Antiochia
*with his people for many days others but who in Antioch*
remanserant, steterunt in ea cum gaudio et laetitia magna,
*had-remained stayed in it with joy and gladness great*
quorum rector et pastor extitit Podiensis episcopus, qui
*of-whom the-ruler and shepherd stood-forth of-Le-Puy the-bishop who*
nutu Dei gravi aegritudine captus est et, ut Dei
*by-the-nod of-God by-grievous sickness seized was and as of-God*
voluntas fuit, migravit ab hoc saeculo et in pace requiescens
*the-will was departed from this world and in peace resting*
obdormivit in Domino, in solemnitate scilicet sancti Petri
*fell-asleep in the-Lord on the-solemnity namely of-Saint Peter*
quae dicitur ad Vincula. Unde magna angustia et tribulatio
*which is-called in Chains whence great distress and tribulation*
immensusque dolor fuit in tota Christi militia, quia ille
*and-immense grief was in the-whole of-Christ army because he*
erat sustentamentum pauperum, consilium divitum, ipseque
*was the-support of-the-poor the-counsel of-the-rich and-he*
ordinabat clericos, praedicabat et summonebat milites dicens:
*ordered the-clerics preached and admonished the-knights saying*
Quia nemo ex vobis salvari potest, nisi honorificet pauperes
*that no-one of you to-be-saved can unless be-honor the-poor*
et reficiat, vosque non potestis salvari sine illis, ipsique
*and refresh-them and-you not can be-saved without them and-they*
vivere nequeunt sine vobis: Oportet igitur, ut ipsi cotidiana
*to-live cannot without you it-behooves therefore that they with-daily*
supplicatione pro vestris orent delictis Deum, quem in
*supplication for your should-pray offenses God whom in*
multis cotidie offenditis, unde vos rogo, ut pro Dei
*many-things daily you-offend whence you I-ask that for of-God*
amore eos diligatis et in quantum potestis eos sustentetis.
*love them you-love and in as-much-as you-can them you-sustain*

*Raymond takes Albara, kills its Saracens, and has a bishop chosen for it, who is taken to Antioch to be consecrated. At All Saints the princes gather in Antioch, but Bohemond claims the city under the old covenant, while Raymond holds to his oath to the emperor. The judges fear to rule; Raymond agrees to accept the peers' judgment, saving the emperor's fealty, and each fortifies his own part of the city.*

Non post multum vero temporis venit vir venerabilis
*not after much indeed of-time came the-man venerable*
Raimundus, comes de Sancto Egidio, et intravit in
*Raymond count of Saint Gilles and entered into*
Saracenorum terram et pervenit ad quamdam urbem, quae
*of-the-Saracens the-land and came to a-certain city which*
vocatur Albara, quam invasit una cum suo exercitu,
*is-called Albara which he-attacked together with his army*
eamque continuo cepit; et occidit omnes Saracenos et
*and-it at-once took and killed all the-Saracens and*
Saracenas, maiores et minores, quos ibi reperit. Quam
*the-Saracen-women greater and lesser whom there he-found which*
postquam suo continuit imperio, ad Christi revocavit fidem,
*after by-his he-held command to of-Christ he-called-back the-faith*
quaesivitque consilium a suis sapientissimis viris, ut
*and-sought counsel from his most-wise men that*
episcopum in hac urbe devotissime praeordinari faceret, qui
*a-bishop in this city most-devoutly to-be-preordained he-might-cause who*
illam ad Christi cultum fideliter revocaret et de domo
*it to of-Christ the-worship faithfully should-call-back and from a-house*
diabolica templum Deo vivo et vero et oracula Sanctorum
*devilish a-temple to-God living and true and oratories of-the-Saints*
consecraret. Novissime elegerunt quemdam honorabilem ac
*should-consecrate at-the-last they-chose a-certain honorable and*

sapientissimum virum et duxere illum in Antiochiam ad
*most-wise man and led him into Antioch for*
consecrandum; factumque est ita. Alii autem, qui in
*being-consecrated and-done was so the-others moreover who in*
Antiochia remanserant, fuerunt ibidem cum gaudio
*Antioch had-remained were in-the-same-place with joy*
et laetitia. Appropinquante vero termino, videlicet festo
*and gladness drawing-near indeed the-term namely on-the-feast*
Omnium Sanctorum, regressi sunt omnes maiores nostri in
*of-All Saints returned have all greater-men our into*
unum in Antiochiam, omnesque simul coeperunt quaerere,
*one into Antioch and-all together began to-seek*
qualiter iter Sancti Sepulcri valerent peragere,
*how the-journey of-the-Holy Sepulcher they-might-be-able to-complete*
dicentes: Quoniam appropinquaverat eundi terminus, nulla
*saying since there-had-drawn-near of-going the-term no*
erat hora conturbandi amplius! Boamundus autem quaerebat
*was hour of-disturbing further Bohemond moreover sought*
cotidie conventionem, quam omnes seniores olim habuerant
*daily the-covenant which all the-lords once had-had*
ei in reddendam civitatem; sed comes Sancti Egidii ad
*with-him in surrendering the-city but the-count of-Saint Gilles to*
nullam conventionem volebat se emollire erga Boamundum,
*no covenant wished himself to-soften toward Bohemond*
eo quod timebat se peierare erga imperatorem;
*for-the-reason that he-feared himself to-perjure toward the-emperor*
tamen saepe fuerunt congregati in ecclesia Sancti Petri
*yet often they-were gathered in the-church of-Saint Peter*
ad faciendum quod iustum erat. Boamundus recitavit suam
*for doing what just was Bohemond recited his*
conventionem suumque ostendit compotum. Comes Sancti
*covenant and-his showed account the-count of-Saint*

Egidii similiter sua patefecit verba et iusiurandum, quod
*Gilles likewise his laid-open words and the-oath which*
fecerat imperatori per consilium Boamundi. Episcopi et dux
*he-had-made to-the-emperor by the-counsel of-Bohemond the-bishops and duke*
Godefridus, Flandrensisque comes et comes de Nortmannia
*Godfrey and-the-Flemish count and the-count of Normandy*
aliique seniores divisi sunt ab aliis et intraverunt ubi
*and-other lords divided were from the-others and entered where*
est cathedra Sancti Petri, ut ibi iudicium inter utrumque
*is the-throne of-Saint Peter that there judgment between both*
discernerent. Postea vero timentes, ne Sancti Sepulcri
*they-might-decide afterward indeed fearing lest of-the-Holy Sepulcher*
via perturbaretur, noluerunt aperte iudicium dicere.
*the-road be-disturbed they-were-unwilling openly the-judgment to-speak*
Ait denique comes Sancti Egidii: Priusquam via Sancti
*says finally the-count of-Saint Gilles before the-road of-the-Holy*
Sepulcri remaneat, si Boamundus nobiscum venire voluerit,
*Sepulcher remain if Bohemond with-us to-come shall-have-wished*
quicquid nostri pares, videlicet dux Godefridus et Flandrensis
*whatever our peers namely duke Godfrey and the-Flemish*
comes et Rotbertus Nortmannus aliique seniores laudaverint,
*count and Robert the-Norman and-other lords shall-have-approved*
ego fideliter consentiam salva fidelitate imperatoris. Hoc
*I faithfully shall-consent saving the-fealty of-the-emperor this*
totum laudavit Boamundus, et promiserunt ambo in manibus
*all approved Bohemond and promised both in the-hands*
episcoporum, quod nullo modo per se via Sancti
*of-the-bishops that in-no way through them the-road of-the-Holy*
Sepulcri deturbaretur. Tunc accepit Boamundus consilium
*Sepulcher would-be-disturbed then took Bohemond counsel*
cum suis hominibus, quomodo muniret castrum de alta
*with his men how he-should-fortify the-castle of the-high*

montanea hominibus et victu. Similiter comes Sancti Egidii
*mountain with-men and food likewise the-count of-Saint Gilles*
accepit consilium cum suis, quomodo muniret palatium
*took counsel with his-men how he-should-fortify the-palace*
Cassiani admiralii et turrim, quae est super portam pontis,
*of-Yaghi-Siyan the-emir and the-tower which is over the-gate of-the-bridge*
qui est ex parte Portus Sancti Simeonis, muniret, inquam,
*which is on the-side of-the-Port of-Saint Simeon should-fortify I-say*
hominibus et victu, qui non deficeret longo tempore.
*with-men and food which not would-fail for-a-long time*

## XXXII · THE CITY OF ANTIOCH

*Antioch is a beautiful city with four great mountains within its walls and a wondrous citadel on the highest. It has three hundred and sixty monasteries, a patriarch with a hundred and fifty-three bishops, a double wall, and four hundred and fifty towers, with the Farfar flowing by. Seventy-five kings founded it; the Franks besieged it eight months, were besieged three weeks, and rested there five months.*

Haec urbs Antiochia scilicet valde est pulchra et honorabilis,
*this city Antioch namely very is beautiful and honorable*
quia infra muros eius sunt IV montaneae maximae et nimis
*because within walls its are four mountains very-great and very*
altae. In altiori quoque est castellum aedificatum, mirabile et
*high on the-higher also is a-citadel built wondrous and*
nimis forte. De deorsum est civitas honorabilis et conveniens
*very strong from below is the-city honorable and fitting*
omnibusque ornata honoribus, quoniam multae ecclesiae sunt
*and-with-all adorned honors since many churches are*
in ea aedificatae; CCC et LX monasteria in se continet.
*in it built three-hundred and sixty monasteries in itself it-holds*

Sub suo iugo continet patriarcha CLIII episcopos.
*under its yoke holds the-patriarch a-hundred-and-fifty-three bishops*
Clauditur civitas duobus muris, maior quoque valde est altus
*is-enclosed the-city by-two walls the-greater also very is high*
et mirabiliter latus magnisque lapidibus compositus, in quo
*and wondrously broad and-of-great stones composed in which*
sunt ordinatae CCCCL turres; modisque omnibus est
*are ordered four-hundred-and-fifty towers and-in-ways all is*
civitas formosa; ab oriente clauditur IV magnis montaneis;
*the-city beautiful from the-east it-is-enclosed by-four great mountains*
ab occidente secus muros urbis fluit quoddam flumen,
*on the-west along the-walls of-the-city flows a-certain river*
cui nomen Farfar: et ita noluerunt stulte neque
*to-which the-name Farfar and so they-were-unwilling foolishly nor*
inane dimittere regalem civitatem Antiochiam, quae tantae
*idly to-give-up the-royal city Antioch which of-such*
auctoritatis fuit, quod eam prius LXXV reges constituerunt,
*authority was that it before seventy-five kings established*
quorum fuit caput Antiochus rex, a quo dicitur
*of-whom was the-head Antiochus the-king from whom it-is-called*
Antiochia. Istam civitatem tenuerunt Franci obsessam per
*Antioch this city held the-Franks besieged for*
VIII menses et unum diem, postea fuerunt intus inclusi per
*eight months and one day afterward they-were inside shut-in for*
III hebdomadas a Turcis et ab aliis paganis, quorum numero
*three weeks by the-Turks and by other pagans than-whose number*
nunquam fuit maior congregatio hominum vel Christianorum
*never was a-greater gathering of-men either of-Christians*
vel paganorum. Tamen adiutorio Dei et Sancti Sepulcri
*or of-pagans yet with-the-help of-God and of-the-Holy Sepulcher*

devictis illis a Christianis Dei, requievimus cum gaudio et
*conquered them by the-Christians of-God we-rested with joy and*
laetitia magna in Antiochia per V menses et VIII dies.
*gladness great in Antioch for five months and eight days*

## XXXIII · THE SIEGE OF MARRA

*In November Raymond besieges Marra, joined by Bohemond. Ladders fail, so Raymond builds a wooden tower on wheels from which William of Montpellier and others hurl stones. Gouffier of Lastours climbs the wall, the Saracens flee as the wall is undermined, and the city falls on December 11. Bohemond robs, kills, or sells those he promised to shelter, and the starving Franks eat the dead.*

Quibus expletis, mense Novembrio discessit Raimundus
*which completed in-the-month of-November departed Raymond*
comes Sancti Egidii cum suo exercitu ab Antiochia,
*count of-Saint Gilles with his army from Antioch*
venitque per unam civitatem, quae vocatur Rugia, et
*and-came through one city which is-called Rugia and*
per aliam, quae dicitur Albaria. Quarto vero die exeunte
*through another which is-called Albara on-the-fourth indeed day going-out-of*
Novembrio pervenit ad Marram civitatem, in qua maxima
*November he-came to Marra the-city in which the-greatest*
multitudo Saracenorum et Turcorum et Arabum et aliorum
*multitude of-Saracens and of-Turks and of-Arabs and of-other*
paganorum erat congregata, ipseque comes in crastinum
*pagans was gathered and-he the-count on the-morrow*
invasit eam. Non post multum vero temporis Boamundus
*attacked it not after much indeed of-time Bohemond*
cum suo exercitu secutus est comites et applicatus est cum
*with his army followed has the-counts and joined was with*

eis in die dominica. Secunda vero feria nimis fortiter
*them on the-day of-the-Lord on-the-second indeed weekday very strongly*
invaserunt undique civitatem, et tam acriter tamque fortiter,
*they-attacked on-all-sides the-city and so fiercely and-so strongly*
ut scalae starent erectae ad murum. Sed tam maxima erat
*that ladders stood raised to the-wall but so very-great was*
virtus paganorum, quod illa die nihil eos offendere aut
*the-power of-the-pagans that on-that day nothing them to-offend or*
nocere potuerunt. Videntes autem seniores, quia nihil agere
*to-harm they-could seeing moreover the-lords that nothing to-do*
poterant et frustra laborabant, fecit Raimundus comes de
*they-could and in-vain they-labored caused Raymond count of*
Sancto Egidio fieri quoddam ligneum castrum forte et
*Saint Gilles to-be-made a-certain wooden castle strong and*
altum. Quod castrum ingeniatum et aedificatum erat super
*high which castle contrived and built was upon*
IV rotas, super quod stabant plures milites et Evrardus
*four wheels upon which stood many knights and Everard*
venator, tubam fortiter sonans; subter vero erant armati
*the-huntsman the-trumpet strongly sounding beneath indeed were armed*
milites, qui deduxerunt castrum usque prope urbis murum
*knights who led the-castle up-to near of-the-city the-wall*
iuxta turrim quamdam. Quod videns gens pagana, statim
*beside a-tower certain which seeing the-people pagan at-once*
fecerunt instrumentum, quo iactabant maximos lapides
*made an-engine by-which they-hurled very-great stones*
super castrum, ita ut paene nostros milites occiderent.
*upon the-castle so that almost our knights they-killed*
Iaciebant quoque graecos ignes super castrum, putantes
*they-hurled also Greek fires upon the-castle thinking*
illud ardere et devastari. Sed Deus omnipotens noluit,
*it to-burn and to-be-laid-waste but God almighty was-unwilling*

ut castrum arderet hac vice; supereminebat enim omnes
*that the-castle should-burn this time it-towered-over for all*
muros civitatis. Milites igitur nostri, qui erant in superiori
*the-walls of-the-city the-knights therefore our who were in the-upper*
solario, videlicet Willelmus de Monte Pislerio et alii multi,
*story namely William of Mont Pellier and others many*
iactabant immensos lapides super illos, qui stabant in muro
*hurled immense stones upon those who stood on the-wall*
urbis, et ita percutiebant eos super clipeos, ut clipeus
*of-the-city and so struck them upon their-shields that shield*
et inimicus caderent deorsum in civitatem in mortem. Ita
*and enemy fell down into the-city to death so*
faciebant isti; alii vero tenebant in hastis honorabilia signa
*did these others but held on spears honorable standards*
et cum lanceis et hamis ferreis putabant eos trahere ad
*and with lances and hooks iron thought them to-drag to*
se, et sic proeliati sunt usque ad vesperam. Retro
*themselves and thus fought have all-the-way to evening behind*
castrum stabant presbyteri, clerici, sacris vestibus induti,
*the-castle stood presbyters clerics in-sacred vestments clothed*
orantes et obsecrantes Deum, ut suum defenderet populum
*praying and beseeching God that his he-should-defend people*
et christianitatem exaltaret ac paganismum deponeret. In
*and Christendom should-exalt and paganism should-put-down on*
alia vero parte certabant nostri milites cotidie cum illis,
*the-other indeed side contended our knights daily with them*
erigentes scalas ad murum urbis, sed virtus paganorum erat
*raising ladders to the-wall of-the-city but the-power of-the-pagans was*
tanta, ut nihil proficere nostri possent. Tamen Gulferus de
*so-great that nothing to-achieve our-men could yet Gouffier of*
Daturre primus ascendit per scalam in murum, sed statim
*Lastours first climbed by a-ladder onto the-wall but at-once*

fuit fracta scala pro multitudine aliorum; tamen ascendit
*was broken the-ladder for the-multitude of-the-others yet climbed*
ipse cum aliquantis supra murum; illi autem, qui ascendebant,
*he with some onto the-wall they moreover who climbed*
expediebant circa illos murum. Alii quoque invenerunt
*cleared around them the-wall others also found*
aliam scalam erexeruntque eam festinanter ad murum, et
*another ladder and-raised it hastily to the-wall and*
ascenderunt per eam multi milites et pedites, statimque
*climbed by it many knights and foot-soldiers and-at-once*
ascenderunt super murum. Saraceni igitur tam robuste
*climbed onto the-wall the-Saracens therefore so sturdily*
invaserunt illos per murum et per terram sagittando et
*attacked them along the-wall and along the-ground by-shooting-arrows and*
spiculando comminus cum suis lanceis, ut multi ex nostris
*by-spearing hand-to-hand with their lances that many of our-men*
timore perterriti demitterent se per murum. Tamdiu vero
*by-fear terrified let-down themselves over the-wall so-long indeed*
illi prudentissimi viri, qui remanserant in muro, sufferebant
*those most-prudent men who had-remained on the-wall endured*
illorum persecutionem, quamdiu alii, qui subter castrum
*their persecution as-long-as the-others who beneath the-castle*
erant, foderunt murum urbis. Videntes vero Saraceni, quod
*were dug-under the-wall of-the-city seeing indeed the-Saracens that*
nostri fodissent murum, statim timore perterriti inierunt
*our-men had-dug-under the-wall at-once by-fear terrified entered*
fugam in civitatem. Hoc totum factum est in die
*flight into the-city this all done was on the-day*
sabbati ad horam vesperi, occidente sole, XI[a]. die
*of-the-Sabbath at the-hour of-evening setting the-sun on-the-eleventh day*
intrante Decembri. Boemundus igitur fecit per interpretem
*entering December Bohemond therefore caused through an-interpreter*

loqui Saracenis maioribus, ut ipsi cum suis mulieribus et
*to-speak to-the-Saracen greater-men that they with their wives and*
infantibus aliisque substantiis mitterent se in unum
*children and-other goods should-put themselves into one*
palatium, quod est supra portam, ipseque defenderet eos de
*palace which is above the-gate and-he would-defend them from*
mortali sententia. Intraverunt vero omnes nostri in civitatem
*the-mortal sentence entered indeed all our-men into the-city*
et quicquid boni invenerunt in domibus et in foveis, hoc
*and whatever of-good they-found in the-houses and in the-pits this*
unusquisque ad suum continebat proprium. Facto autem die
*each to his kept own made moreover the-day*
ubicunque reperiebant quemquam illorum, sive masculum
*wherever they-found any of-them whether male*
sive feminam, occidebant. Nullus angulus civitatis deerat
*or female they-killed no corner of-the-city was-lacking*
vacuus Saracenorum cadaveribus, vixque poterat aliquis per
*empty of-Saracen corpses and-scarcely could anyone through*
vias ire civitatis nisi calcando super Saracenorum cadavera.
*the-streets go of-the-city except by-treading upon of-the-Saracens the-corpses*
Boamundus denique illos, quos iusserat in palatium intrare,
*Bohemond finally those whom he-had-ordered into the-palace to-enter*
apprehendit, illisque abstulit omnia quae habebant, videlicet
*seized and-from-them took-away all-things which they-had namely*
aurum, argentum aliaque ornamenta; alios vero fecit occidi,
*gold silver and-other furnishings others but he-caused to-be-killed*
alios autem iussit conduci ad vendendum Antiochiae. Mora
*others moreover he-ordered to-be-led for selling at-Antioch the-delay*
autem Francorum fuit in illa urbe per unum mensem et IV
*moreover of-the-Franks was in that city for one month and four*
dies, in qua fuit mortuus Oriensis episcopus. Fuerunt ibi
*days in which dead was of-Orange the-bishop there-were there*

ex nostris, qui illic non invenerunt sicuti opus eis erat,
*of our-men who there not found as need to-them was*
tantum ex longa mora, quantum ex districtione famis,
*as-much from the-long delay as from the-tightness of-hunger*
quia foris nequiverant aliquid invenire ad capiendum; sed
*because outside they-had-been-unable anything to-find for taking but*
scindebant corpora mortuorum, eo quod in ventribus
*they-cut-open the-bodies of-the-dead for-the-reason that in the-bellies*
eorum inveniebant bisanteos reconditos, alii vero caedebant
*their they-found bezants hidden others but cut*
carnes eorum per frusta et coquebant ad manducandum.
*the-flesh their into pieces and cooked-it for eating*

## XXXIV · RAYMOND MARCHES SOUTH

*The princes fail to reconcile Bohemond and Raymond, who sets out barefoot from Marra in January and is joined at Kafartab by the count of Normandy. The king of Shaizar sends guides, the army plunders a valley and takes Kephalia and a castle in the valley of Desem, and keeps the Purification there. The kings of Homs and Tripoli seek peace; the army besieges Arqa and seizes Tortosa by a ruse of fires.*

Boamundus autem non potuit apud comitem Sancti Egidii
*Bohemond moreover not could with the-count of-Saint Gilles*
concordari super id, quod petebat, iratusque reversus est
*be-reconciled about that which he-sought and-angered returned has*
Antiochiam. Comes igitur Raimundus non diu moratus
*to-Antioch the-count therefore Raymond not long having-delayed*
mandavit per suos legatos Antiochiae duci Godefrido et
*sent-word through his envoys at-Antioch to-duke Godfrey and*
Flandrensi comiti ac Rotberto Nortmanno et Boamundo, ut
*to-the-Flemish count and to-Robert the-Norman and to-Bohemond that*

ipsi venirent ad Rugiam civitatem loqui cum eo. Veneruntque
*they should-come to Rugia the-city to-speak with him and-came*
illuc omnes seniores et fecerunt concilium, quomodo honeste
*thither all the-lords and held a-council how honorably*
possent tenere viam Sancti Sepulchri, pro qua moti
*they-might-be-able to-hold the-road of-the-Holy Sepulcher for which moved*
sunt et usque huc perventum sit. Nequiverunt concordare
*were and up-to hither come it-has-been they-could-not to-reconcile*
cum Raimundo Boamundum, nisi Raimundus comes redderet
*with Raymond Bohemond unless Raymond the-count should-return*
Antiochiam ei. Noluit comes ad hoc assentire pro
*Antioch to-him was-unwilling the-count to this to-assent for*
fiducia, quam fecerat imperatori. Comites denique et dux
*the-fealty which he-had-made to-the-emperor the-counts finally and the-duke*
reversi sunt in Antiochiam una cum Boamundo. Comes
*returned have into Antioch together with Bohemond the-count*
vero Raimundus reversus est ad Marram, ubi peregrini
*but Raymond returned has to Marra where the-pilgrims*
erant; mandavit quoque suis militibus honestare palatium et
*were he-ordered also his knights to-equip the-palace and*
castellum, quod erat supra portam pontis civitatis.
*the-castle which was above the-gate of-the-bridge of-the-city*
Videns autem Raimundus, quod nullus seniorum voluisset
*seeing moreover Raymond that none of-the-lords had-wished*
causa eius ire in viam Sancti Sepulcri, exivit nudis
*on-account-of him to-go on the-road of-the-Holy Sepulcher went-out with-bare*
pedibus de Marra XIII[a] die intrante Januario et
*feet from Marra on-the-thirteenth day entering January and*
pervenit usque Capharda, fuitque ibi per III dies. Illic
*came up-to Kafartab and-was there for three days there*
adiunxit se comes Nortmanniae comiti Raimundo. Rex
*joined himself the-count of-Normandy to-count Raymond the-king*

autem Cesareae multotiens mandaverat per suos nuntios
*moreover of-Shaizar many-times had-sent-word through his messengers*
comiti Marrae et Caphardae, quod cum eo pacem vellet
*to-the-count at-Marra and at-Kafartab that with him peace he-wished*
habere et de suo pretium ei daret et Christianos
*to-have and from his-own a-price to-him would-give and the-Christian*
peregrinos diligeret fiduciamque faceret, quia quantum
*pilgrims would-love and-fealty would-make that as-far-as*
continet eius imperium peregrinis non esset offendiculum,
*extends his empire to-the-pilgrims not there-would-be an-obstacle*
et mercatum de equis et de corporalibus alimentis daret
*and a-market of horses and of bodily nourishments he-would-give*
gaudenter. Exierunt autem nostri et venerunt hospitari
*gladly went-out moreover our-men and came to-lodge*
iuxta Cesaream super fluvium Farfar. Cumque vidisset rex
*beside Shaizar upon the-river Farfar and-when had-seen the-king*
Cesareae contubernium Francorum tam prope civitatem
*of-Shaizar the-company of-the-Franks so near the-city*
hospitatum esse, doluit animo et iussit illis devetari
*lodged to-be he-grieved in-mind and ordered to-them to-be-forbidden*
mercatum, nisi discederent a civitatis confinio. Crastina
*the-market unless they-should-depart from of-the-city the-border on-the-next*
vero die misit cum illis duos Turcos, suos videlicet nuntios,
*indeed day he-sent with them two Turks his namely messengers*
qui eis monstrarent fluminis vadum eosque conducerent,
*who to-them should-show of-the-river the-ford and-them should-lead*
ubi invenire possent ad capiendum. Denique venerunt in
*where to-find they-might-be-able for taking finally they-came into*
vallem quandam subter quoddam castrum ibique depraedati
*a-valley certain beneath a-certain castle and-there plundered*
sunt plus quam quinque animalium milia et satis frumenti
*have more than five of-animals thousand and enough of-grain*

atque alia bona, unde valde fuit refecta tota Christi
*and other goods whence greatly was refreshed the-whole of-Christ*
militia. Tamen illud castrum reddidit se comiti eique
*army yet that castle surrendered itself to-the-count and-to-him*
dedit equos et aurum purissimum, et iuraverunt sua lege,
*gave horses and gold most-pure and they-swore by-their law*
quod peregrinis nil exinde fieret mali; fuimusque ibi
*that to-the-pilgrims nothing thence would-be-done of-evil and-we-were there*
per V dies. Egressi etenim inde pervenimus gaudentes
*for five days having-gone-out indeed thence we-came rejoicing*
hospitari ad quoddam Arabum castrum. Exivit igitur dominus
*to-lodge at a-certain of-Arabs castle went-out therefore the-lord*
castri et concordatus est cum comite. Exeuntes vero
*of-the-castle and agreed has with the-count going-out indeed*
inde pervenimus ad quandam civitatem pulcherrimam et
*thence we-came to a-certain city most-beautiful and*
omnibus bonis refertam, in quadam valle sitam, nomine
*with-all goods crammed in a-certain valley situated by-name*
Kephaliam. Habitatores vero illius audientes Francos venisse,
*Kephalia the-inhabitants but of-it hearing the-Franks to-have-come*
dimiserunt urbem et hortos plenos oleribus et domos
*left the-city and the-gardens full of-vegetables and the-houses*
plenas alimentis corporalibus et fugerunt. Tertia die
*full of-nourishments bodily and fled on-the-third day*
egressi ab illa urbe transivimus per altam et immensam
*having-gone-out from that city we-crossed over a-high and immense*
montaneam et intravimus in vallem Desem, in qua erat
*mountain and we-entered into the-valley Desem in which was*
maxima ubertas omnibus bonis; fuimusque ibi per dies fere
*the-greatest plenty in-all goods and-we-were there for days about*
quindecim. Hic prope nos erat quoddam castrum, in quo
*fifteen here near us was a-certain castle in which*

erat congregata maxima paganorum multitudo. Quod castrum
*was gathered the-greatest of-pagans multitude which castle*
aggressi sunt nostri, idque fortiter superassent, nisi
*attacked have our-men and-it strongly they-would-have-overcome unless*
Saraceni iactassent foras immensas turmas animalium; reversi
*the-Saracens had-thrown outside immense herds of-animals returned*
sunt nostri deferentes omnia bona ad sua tentoria. Summo
*have our-men carrying all the-goods to their tents at-the-highest*
autem diluculo collegerunt nostri suos papiliones et venerunt
*moreover dawn gathered our-men their tents and came*
obsidere idem castrum, ibique putabant extendere tentoria,
*to-besiege the-same castle and-there they-thought to-stretch-out the-tents*
sed gens pagana omnino dedit se fugae ac dimiserunt
*but the-people pagan wholly gave itself to-flight and they-left*
castrum vacuum. Intrantes autem nostri invenerunt ibi
*the-castle empty entering moreover our-men found there*
omnem abundantiam frumenti, vini, farinae, olei et quicquid
*every abundance of-grain of-wine of-flour of-oil and whatever*
eis opus erat. Illic devotissime celebravimus festivitatem
*to-them need was there most-devoutly we-celebrated the-festival*
Purificationis sanctae Mariae, veneruntque illuc nuntii de
*of-the-Purification of-holy Mary and-came thither messengers from*
Camela civitate. Rex namque illius mandavit comiti equos,
*Homs the-city the-king for of-it sent to-the-count horses*
aurum, et pactus est cum eo, quod Christianos nullo
*gold and covenanted has with him that the-Christians in-no*
modo offenderet, sed eos diligeret et honoraret. Rex autem
*way he-would-offend but them would-love and would-honor the-king moreover*
Tripolis mandavit comiti, quoniam cum eo fideliter pactum
*of-Tripoli sent-word to-the-count that with him faithfully a-pact*
iniret et amicitiam haberet, si ei placeret, misitque
*he-would-enter and friendship would-have if to-him it-pleased and-he-sent*

illi equos X, et IV mulas, et aurum. Sed comes ait nullo
*to-him horses ten and four mules and gold but the-count said in-no*
modo cum eo pacem se recipere, nisi ille Christianus
*way with him peace himself to-accept unless he a-Christian*
efficeretur. Exeuntes autem de optima valle pervenimus
*should-become going-out moreover from the-most-excellent valley we-came*
ad quoddam castrum, quod dicitur Archae, in die lunae,
*to a-certain castle which is-called Arqa on the-day of-the-moon*
scilicet IIª. feria, mediante februario, circa quod
*namely the-second weekday midway-through February around which*
tentoria tetendimus. Quod castrum plenum erat innumerabili
*tents we-stretched which castle full was of-a-countless*
gente paganorum, videlicet Turcorum, Saracenorum, Arabum,
*people of-pagans namely of-Turks of-Saracens of-Arabs*
Publicanorum, qui mirabiliter munierunt castrum illud et
*of-Paulicians who wondrously fortified castle that and*
defendebant se fortiter. Tunc exeuntes XIV ex nostris
*defended themselves strongly then going-out fourteen of our*
militibus ierunt contra Tripolim urbem, quae erat secus nos.
*knights went toward Tripoli the-city which was beside us*
Isti XIV invenerunt circa LX Turcos et alios quosdam, qui
*these fourteen found about sixty Turks and others certain who*
habebant ante se collectos homines et animalia plus quam
*had before them gathered men and animals more than*
MD. Qui signo crucis muniti invaserunt eos et
*fifteen-hundred who with-the-sign of-the-cross fortified attacked them and*
Deo iuvante mirabiliter superaverunt illos et occiderunt VI ex
*God helping wondrously overcame them and killed six of*
illis et apprehenderunt VI equos. De exercitu vero Raimundi
*them and seized six horses from the-army indeed of-Raymond*
comitis exierunt Raimundus Piletus et Raimundus, vicecomes
*the-count went-out Raymond Pilet and Raymond the-viscount*

de Tentoria, veneruntque ante Tortosam civitatem et fortiter
*of Turenne and-came before Tortosa the-city and strongly*
aggrediuntur illam, quae nimis erat munita multitudine
*attack it which very was fortified by-a-multitude*
paganorum. Sero autem iam facto secesserunt in quendam
*of-pagans evening moreover now made they-withdrew into a-certain*
angulum ibique hospitati sunt, feceruntque innumerabiles
*corner and-there lodged have and-made countless*
ignes, quasi tota hostis esset ibi. Pagani vero timore
*fires as-if the-whole army were there the-pagans but by-fear*
perterriti nocte latenter fugerunt et dimiserunt civitatem
*terrified by-night secretly fled and left the-city*
plenam omnibus bonis, quae etiam valde optimum portum
*full of-all goods which also a-very most-excellent port*
secus mare in se retinet. Crastina autem die venerunt
*beside the-sea in itself holds on-the-next moreover day came*
nostri, ut undique invaderent illam, inveneruntque illam
*our-men that on-all-sides they-might-attack it and-they-found it*
vacuam et intrantes habitaverunt in ea usque dum obsessio
*empty and entering dwelt in it up-to while the-siege*
esset ante urbem Archae. Est prope istam alia urbs, quae
*was before the-city of-Arqa there-is near this another city which*
dicitur Maraclea; admiralius, qui eam regebat, pactus est
*is-called Maraclea the-emir who it ruled covenanted has*
cum nostris et misit nostros in civitatem nostraque vexilla.
*with our-men and put our-men into the-city and-our banners*

*Godfrey and the count of Flanders besiege Jabala, then make terms and join Raymond at Arqa against a rumored army that never comes. The Franks rout the men of Tripoli and plunder beasts beyond Desem. The siege lasts three months less a day, ships bring supplies, and Anselm of Ribemont dies. With new beans and grain ripening, they resolve to finish the journey.*

Dux quoque Godefridus et Boamundus Flandrensisque
*the-duke also Godfrey and Bohemond and-the-Flemish*
comes venerunt usque ad Lichiam civitatem. Disseparavit
*count came all-the-way to Latakia the-city separated*
enim se Boamundus ab eis et reversus est Antiochiam.
*for himself Bohemond from them and returned has to-Antioch*
Illi vero venerunt et obsederunt quandam urbem, cui
*they but came and besieged a-certain city to-which*
nomen Gibellum. Audiens itaque Raimundus, comes de
*the-name Jabala hearing and-so Raymond count of*
Sancto Egidio, quod innumerabilis gens paganorum rueret
*Saint Gilles that a-countless people of-pagans was-rushing*
super nos ad certum bellum, ilico consilium habuit cum
*upon us to sure battle at-once counsel had with*
suis, ut mandet senioribus, qui sunt in obsidione Gibelli,
*his-men that he-send-word to-the-lords who are at the-siege of-Jabala*
quatinus eis subvenirent. Quod illi audientes statim
*so-that to-them they-should-come-to-aid which they hearing at-once*
pacti sunt cum ammiralio, facientes pacem cum eo, et
*covenanted have with the-emir making peace with him and*
acceperunt equos et aurum, dimiseruntque urbem venientes
*received horses and gold and-left the-city coming*
ad nos in adiutorium. Sed illi non venerunt ad bellum
*to us in help but they not came to battle*

contra nos. Itaque comites praedicti hospitati sunt ultra
*against us and-so the-counts aforesaid lodged have beyond*
flumen ibique obsederunt castrum illud. Non multo post
*the-river and-there besieged castle that not much after*
equitaverunt nostri contra Tripolim inveneruntque extra
*rode our-men toward Tripoli and-found outside*
civitatem Turcos, Arabes et Saracenos, quos invaserunt
*the-city Turks Arabs and Saracens whom attacked*
nostri et miserunt eos in fugam et occiderunt maximam
*our-men and put them to flight and killed the-greatest*
partem nobilium urbis. Tanta fuit paganorum occisio et
*part of-the-nobles of-the-city so-great was of-the-pagans the-slaughter and*
sanguinis effusio, ut etiam aqua, quae in civitate fluebat,
*of-blood the-shedding that even the-water which in the-city flowed*
videretur rubere et fluere in cisternas eorum, unde valde
*seemed to-redden and to-flow into cisterns their whence greatly*
fuerunt tristes alii dolentesque. Iam vero erant tanto
*were sad the-others and-grieving now indeed they-were by-such*
timore perterriti, ut nullus eorum auderet exire extra
*fear terrified that none of-them dared to-go-out outside*
civitatis portam. Alia vero die equitaverunt nostri ultra
*of-the-city the-gate on-another indeed day rode our-men beyond*
Desem et invenerunt boves et oves et asinos multaque
*Desem and found oxen and sheep and asses and-many*
animalia, camelos quoque depraedati sunt fere III milia.
*animals camels also plundered have almost three thousand*
Obsedimus vero castrum supradictum per III menses minus
*we-besieged indeed the-castle aforesaid for three months less*
una die; ibique Pascha Domini celebravimus IVº.
*one day and-there the-Pasch of-the-Lord we-celebrated on-the-fourth-day-before*
idus Aprilis. Naves quippe nostrae venerunt prope nos in
*the-Ides of-April the-ships indeed our came near us into*

quendam portum, quamdiu fuimus in illa obsidione, deferentes
*a-certain port as-long-as we-were in that siege bringing*
maximum mercatum, scilicet frumentum, vinum et carnem
*a-very-great market namely grain wine and meat*
et caseum et hordeum et oleum, unde maxima ubertas
*and cheese and barley and oil whence the-greatest plenty*
fuit in tota expeditione. In illa denique obsidione feliciter
*was in the-whole expedition in that finally siege happily*
acceperunt martyrium plures ex nostris, videlicet Anselmus de
*received martyrdom many of our-men namely Anselm of*
Ribomont, Willelmus Picardus et alii plures, quos ignoro.
*Ribemont William the-Picard and others many whom I-know-not*
Rex quoque Tripolis saepe nuntios mittebat senioribus, ut
*the-king also of-Tripoli often messengers sent to-the-lords that*
dimitterent castrum et cum eo concordarentur. Audientes
*they-should-give-up the-castle and with him be-reconciled hearing*
itaque nostri hoc, scilicet et dux Godefridus et Raimundus,
*and-so our-men this namely both duke Godfrey and Raymond*
comes S. Egidii, ac Rotbertus Nortmannus Flandrensisque
*count of-Saint Gilles and Robert the-Norman and-the-Flemish*
comes, videntesque novos fructus properasse, quia in medio
*count and-seeing the-new fruits to-have-hastened because in mid*
Martio comedebamus novellas fabas, medio quoque Aprili
*March we-ate new beans in-mid also April*
frumentum, consiliati sunt nostri dicentes: Bonum valde esse
*grain took-counsel have our-men saying good very to-be*
Hierosolymitanum iter explere cum novis fructibus.
*the-Jerusalem journey to-complete with the-new fruits*

*The king of Tripoli frees more than three hundred pilgrims, gives bezants and horses, and promises to become a Christian if they win. The army marches by the coast through Beirut, Sidon, Tyre, Acre, and Haifa, keeps Pentecost at Caesarea, and at Ramla, abandoned by its Saracens, sets a bishop over Saint George's church.*

Discessimus igitur a castro et pervenimus Tripolim in VI[a].
*we-departed therefore from the-castle and came to-Tripoli on the-sixth*
feria, XIII[o]. die intrante Maio, ibique fuimus per III
*weekday on-the-thirteenth day entering May and-there we-were for three*
dies. Tandem concordatus est rex Tripolis cum senioribus,
*days at-length reconciled was the-king of-Tripoli with the-lords*
illisque continuo dissolvit plusquam CCC peregrinos, qui
*and-to-them at-once he-released more-than three-hundred pilgrims who*
illic capti erant, deditque XV milia bisanteos et XV equos
*there captured had-been and-he-gave fifteen thousand bezants and fifteen horses*
magni pretii; dedit etiam nobis magnum mercatum equorum,
*of-great price he-gave also to-us a-great market of-horses*
asinorum omniumque bonorum, unde nimis ditata est omnis
*of-asses and-of-all goods whence very-much enriched was all*
Christi militia. Pactus est vero cum illis, quia, si bellum,
*of-Christ the-army covenanted has indeed with them that if the-battle*
quod eis admiralius Babyloniae parabat, possent devincere
*which for-them the-emir of-Babylon was-preparing they-could to-win*
et Hierusalem apprehendere, ille Christianus efficeretur
*and Jerusalem seize he a-Christian would-become*
terramque ab eis recognosceret, atque tali modo factum est
*and-the-land from them would-acknowledge and in-such way made was*
placitum. Nos autem discessimus ab urbe in II[a]. feria
*the-agreement we moreover departed from the-city on the-second weekday*

mensis Maii, transivimusque per viam artam et arduam
*of-the-month of-May and-we-crossed by a-road narrow and steep*
tota die ac nocte et pervenimus ad castrum, cui nomen
*the-whole day and night and came to a-castle to-which the-name*
Bethelon, deinde ad urbem, quae dicitur Zebari secus mare,
*Batrun then to the-city which is-called Jubail beside the-sea*
in qua passi sumus nimiam sitim, et sic defessi pervenimus
*in which suffered we-have excessive thirst and thus exhausted we-came*
ad flumen, cui nomen Braym. Deinde transivimus nocte
*to a-river to-which the-name Ibrahim then we-crossed by-night*
ac die Ascensionis Domini per montem, in quo est via
*and on-the-day of-the-Ascension of-the-Lord over a-mountain on which is a-road*
nimis angusta, et illic putavimus inimicos insidiantes nobis
*very narrow and there we-thought enemies lying-in-wait-for us*
invenire, sed Deo annuente nullus eorum audebat properare
*to-find but God nodding none of-them dared to-hasten*
ante nos. Nostri denique milites, praecedentes nos, liberaverunt
*before us our finally knights going-before us cleared*
ante nos viam illam, et applicuimus ad civitatem iuxta
*before us road that and we-arrived at a-city beside*
mare, quae dicitur Baruth, et inde venimus ad aliam urbem,
*the-sea which is-called Beirut and thence we-came to another city*
quae vocatur Sagitta, dehinc ad aliam, quae dicitur Sur, et
*which is-called Sidon thence to another which is-called Tyre and*
de Sur ad Acram civitatem. De Acra vero venimus ad
*from Tyre to Acre the-city from Acre indeed we-came to*
castrum, cui nomen Cayphas, ac deinceps hospitati sumus
*a-castle to-which the-name Haifa and thereafter lodged we-have*
iuxta Caesaream ibique celebravimus Pentecosten III[a]. die
*beside Caesarea and-there we-celebrated Pentecost on-the-third day*
exeunte Maio. Deinde venimus ad urbem Ramola, quam
*going-out-of May then we-came to the-city Ramla which*

Saraceni dimiserant vacuam propter metum Francorum, iuxta
*the-Saracens had-left empty for fear of-the-Franks beside*
quam erat honorabilis ecclesia, in qua requievit pretiosissimum
*which was an-honorable church in which rested the-most-precious*
sancti Georgii corpus, quia illic a perfidis paganis pro
*of-Saint George body because there by faithless pagans for*
Christi nomine feliciter martyrium suscepit. Ibi consiliati
*of-Christ the-name happily martyrdom he-received there took-counsel*
sunt nostri maiores, ut illic eligerent episcopum, qui
*have greater-men our that there they-should-choose a-bishop who*
hanc custodiret et erigeret ecclesiam, cui suas dederunt
*this should-guard and should-raise church to-which their they-gave*
decimas, et auro argentoque ditaverunt, et equis ac
*tithes and with-gold and-silver enriched-it and with-horses and*
animalibus aliis, quo devote et honeste viveret cum illis,
*animals other that devoutly and honorably he-might-live with those*
qui cum eo essent. Remansit ipse illic cum gaudio.
*who with him should-be remained he there with joy*

## XXXVII · THE SIEGE OF JERUSALEM BEGINS

*On June 6 the army reaches Jerusalem and invests it on three sides. Raymond Pilet's knights defeat a band of Arabs. A first assault fails for want of ladders, and the army suffers thirst, watering beasts six miles off. Of a hundred knights sent to guard the ships at Jaffa, thirty are surrounded and Achard of Montmerle is killed before Raymond Pilet rides to their aid and routs the enemy.*

Nos autem laetantes et exsultantes usque ad civitatem
*we moreover rejoicing and exulting all-the-way to the-city*
Hierusalem pervenimus feria tertia, VIII°
*Jerusalem came on-the-weekday third on-the-eighth-day-before*

idus Junii, eamque mirabiliter obsedimus. Robertus namque
*the-Ides of-June and-it wondrously we-besieged Robert for*
Normannus eam obsedit a septentrione iuxta sancti Stephani
*the-Norman it besieged from the-north beside of-Saint Stephen*
protomartyris ecclesiam, ubi gaudenter lapidatus est pro
*the-protomartyr the-church where joyfully stoned he-was for*
nomine Christi; iuxta eum Robertus Flandrensis comes. Ab
*the-name of-Christ beside him Robert the-Flemish count from*
occidente vero obsedit eam dux Godefridus et Tancredus. A
*the-west indeed besieged it duke Godfrey and Tancred from*
meridie obsedit eam comes Sancti Egidii, scilicet in monte
*the-south besieged it the-count of-Saint Gilles namely on mount*
Sion, circa ecclesiam sanctae Mariae, matris Domini, ubi
*Zion around the-church of-holy Mary the-mother of-the-Lord where*
Dominus cum suis cenavit discipulis. Tertia vero die ex
*the-Lord with his supped disciples on-the-third indeed day of*
nostris, scilicet Raimundus Piletus et Raimundus de Taurina
*our-men namely Raymond Pilet and Raymond of Turenne*
et alii plures causa proeliandi invenerunt CC Arabes
*and others many for-the-sake of-fighting found two-hundred Arabs*
et proeliati sunt Christi milites contra illos incredulos et
*and fought have of-Christ the-knights against those unbelievers and*
Deo adiuvante fortiter illos superaverunt et occiderunt multos
*God helping strongly them overcame and killed many*
ex eis et apprehenderunt XXX equos. Secunda vero veniente
*of them and seized thirty horses on-the-second indeed coming*
feria aggredimur fortissime civitatem tam mirabiliter, ut,
*weekday we-attack most-strongly the-city so wondrously that*
si scalae fuissent paratae, in nostra fuisset civitas manu.
*if ladders had-been prepared in our would-have-been the-city hand*
Tamen minorem stravimus murum, et unam scalam ereximus
*yet the-lesser we-laid-low wall and one ladder we-raised*

ad maiorem murum, super quam ascendebant nostri milites
*to the-greater wall upon which climbed our knights*
et comminus percutiebant Saracenos suis ensibus et lanceis
*and hand-to-hand struck the-Saracens with-their swords and lances*
et defensores civitatis. Fueruntque mortui multi ex nostris,
*and the-defenders of-the-city and-there-were dead many of our-men*
sed plures ex illis. In illa autem obsidione panes ad emendum
*but more of them in that moreover siege loaves for buying*
invenire non poteramus fere per spatium dierum X, donec
*to-find not we-could almost for the-space of-days ten until*
venit nuntius nostrarum navium, et in nimia pressura sitis
*came a-messenger of-our ships and in excessive pressure of-thirst*
detenti fuimus, ita ut per nimium terrorem et pavorem
*held we-were so that through excessive terror and fear*
per VI milia nostros potaremus equos et alia animalia. Siloa
*for six miles our we-watered horses and other animals Siloam*
namque fons, qui est ad radicem montis Sion, sustinebat
*for the-spring which is at the-root of-mount Zion sustained*
nos, sed tamen cara vendebatur aqua inter nos. Postquam
*us but yet dear was-sold the-water among us after*
enim venit nuntius nostrarum navium, acceperunt inter
*for came the-messenger of-our ships took among*
se nostri seniores consilium, quemadmodum mitterent
*themselves our lords counsel how they-should-send*
milites, qui fideliter custodirent homines et naves in portu
*knights who faithfully should-guard the-men and ships in the-port*
Japhiae. Summo autem diluculo exierunt C milites de
*of-Jaffa at-the-highest moreover dawn went-out a-hundred knights from*
exercitu Raimundi, comitis S. Egidii, Raimundus Piletus
*the-army of-Raymond the-count of-Saint Gilles Raymond Pilet*
et Achardus de Mommellou et Willelmus de Sabra, et
*and Achard of Montmerle and William of Sabran and*

ibant cum fiducia ad portum. Diviserunt se denique
*went with confidence to the-port divided themselves finally*
XXX milites ex nostris ab aliis et invenerunt DCC
*thirty knights of ours from the-others and found seven-hundred*
Arabes et Turcos et Saracenos de exercitu amiravisi, quos
*Arabs and Turks and Saracens from the-army of-the-emir whom*
invaserunt fortiter Christi milites; sed tam magna fuit virtus
*attacked strongly of-Christ the-knights but so great was the-power*
illorum super nostros, ut undique circumcingerent illos, et
*of-them over our-men that on-all-sides they-surrounded them and*
occiderunt Achardum de Mommellou et pauperes homines
*killed Achard of Montmerle and poor men*
pedites. Cum autem tenerent nostros iam inclusos, qui
*foot-soldiers when moreover they-held our-men now shut-in who*
omnes putabant mori, venit alius quidam nuntius, dicens
*all thought to-die came another certain messenger saying*
Raimundo Pileto: Quid hic astas cum his militibus? Ecce
*to-Raymond Pilet why here do-you-stand with these knights behold*
omnes nostri in nimia districtione Arabum et Turcorum
*all our-men in excessive tightness of-Arabs and of-Turks*
et Saracenorum sunt et forsitan in hac hora omnes mortui
*and of-Saracens are and perhaps in this hour all dead*
sunt: succurrite ergo illis, succurrite! Audientes nostri haec,
*are come-to-aid therefore them come-to-aid hearing our-men this*
statim cuccurrerunt celeri cursu et festinanter pervenerunt
*at-once ran with-swift course and hastily came*
usque ad illos proeliando. Paganorum vero gens, videns
*all-the-way to them fighting of-the-pagans but the-people seeing*
Christi milites, divisit se et fecerunt duo agmina. Nostri
*of-Christ the-knights divided itself and made two columns our-men*
autem, invocato Christi nomine, tam acriter invaserunt illos
*moreover invoked of-Christ the-name so fiercely attacked those*

incredulos, ut quisque miles prosterneret suum. Videntes vero
*unbelievers that each knight laid-low his-man seeing indeed*
illi, quod non possent stare ante Francorum fortitudinem,
*they that not they-could to-stand before of-the-Franks the-strength*
timore nimio perterriti, verterunt scapulas retro, quos nostri
*by-fear excessive terrified turned shoulders back whom our-men*
persequentes fere per spatia IV milium occiderunt multos
*pursuing almost for the-spaces of-four miles killed many*
ex eis; unumque retinuerunt vivum, qui nova eis per
*of them and-one kept alive who news to-them in*
ordinem diceret; retinuerunt quoque CIII equos.
*order might-tell they-kept also a-hundred-and-three horses*
In eadem obsidione tanta oppressione sitis fuimus gravati,
*in the-same siege by-such oppression of-thirst we-were weighed-down*
ut sueremus coria boum et bufalorum, in quibus deferebamus
*that we-sewed the-hides of-oxen and of-buffaloes in which we-carried*
aquas fere per spatium VI miliariorum; ex illis quippe vasculis
*waters almost for the-space of-six miles from those indeed little-vessels*
fetida utebamur aqua, et quantum ex olida aqua et hordeaceo
*stinking we-used water and as-much-as from foul water and barley*
pane in nimia districtione et afflictione eramus cotidie. Saraceni
*bread in excessive tightness and affliction we-were daily the-Saracens*
namque in cunctis fontibus et aquis latentes insidiabantur
*for in all springs and waters lurking lay-in-wait-for*
nostris eosque ubique occidebant et dilaniabant; animalia
*our-men and-them everywhere killed and tore-to-pieces the-animals*
quoque secum in suas cavernas et speluncas deducebant.
*also with-them into their caverns and caves they-led*

*Godfrey and Raymond build wooden castles; after a procession round the city, the assault comes on Friday. Letold climbs the wall while Godfrey fights from his castle, and the Franks slaughter the fleeing defenders in Solomon's Temple ankle-deep in blood. Raymond, his ditch filled, hears the news; the emir in the Tower of David yields to him, the pilgrims weep at the Sepulcher, and next morning the Saracens on the Temple roof are beheaded, angering Tancred.*

Tunc seniores nostri ordinaverunt, quomodo ingeniare
*then lords our ordained how to-contrive*
possent civitatem, ut ad adorandum nostri Salvatoris
*they-might-be-able the-city that for worshiping of-our Savior*
intrarent Sepulcrum. Feceruntque duo lignea castra et
*they-might-enter the-Sepulcher and-they-made two wooden castles and*
alia plura machinamenta. Dux Godefridus suum fecit
*other many engines the-duke Godfrey his made*
castrum cum machinis, et Raimundus comes similiter,
*castle with engines and Raymond the-count likewise*
quibus de longinquis terris attrahebant ligna. Saraceni
*for-which from distant lands they-dragged timber the-Saracens*
igitur, videntes nostros facientes has machinas, mirabiliter
*therefore seeing our-men making these engines wondrously*
muniebant civitatem et turres nocte accrescebant. Videntes
*fortified the-city and the-towers by-night they-raised seeing*
autem nostri seniores, ex qua parte esset civitas magis
*moreover our lords from which side was the-city more*
languida, illuc in quadam nocte sabbati deportaverunt
*weak thither on a-certain night of-the-Sabbath they-carried*
nostram machinam et ligneum castrum in orientalem partem.
*our engine and the-wooden castle to the-eastern part*
Summo autem diluculo erexerunt ea et aptaverunt et
*at-the-highest moreover dawn they-raised them and fitted and*

ornaverunt castrum in Ima. et IIa. et IIIa. feria. Comes
*equipped the-castle on the-first and second and third weekday the-count*
namque S. Egidii a meridiana plaga reficiebat suam
*for of-Saint Gilles from the-southern quarter was-repairing his*
machinam. Interea in tanta pressura sitis fuimus districti,
*engine meanwhile in such pressure of-thirst we-were constrained*
ut unus homo non posset pro uno denario ad sufficientiam
*that one man not could for one penny to sufficiency*
habere aquam aut exstinguere sitim suam. Nocte vero ac
*have water or quench thirst his by-night indeed and*
die, in IVa. et Va. feria, mirabiliter aggredimur civitatem
*by-day on the-fourth and fifth weekday wondrously we-attack the-city*
ex omni parte. Sed antequam invaderemus eam, ordinaverunt
*from every side but before we-attacked it ordained*
episcopi et sacerdotes praedicando et commonendo omnes,
*the-bishops and priests by-preaching and by-admonishing all*
ut processionem Deo in circuitu Hierusalem celebrarent
*that a-procession to-God in the-circuit of-Jerusalem they-should-celebrate*
et orationes atque eleemosynas et ieiunia fideliter facerent.
*and prayers and alms and fasts faithfully should-make*
Sexta vero feria, summo mane, undique aggredimur urbem
*on-the-sixth indeed weekday at-highest morning on-all-sides we-attack the-city*
et nihil ei nocere potuimus, eramusque omnes stupefacti
*and nothing it to-harm we-could and-we-were all stupefied*
ac in nimio pavore. Appropinquante autem hora, scilicet in
*and in excessive fear drawing-near moreover the-hour namely in*
qua Dominus noster Iesus Christus dignatus est pro nobis
*which Lord our Jesus Christ deigned has for us*
sufferre patibulum crucis, nostri milites fortiter pugnabant
*to-bear the-gibbet of-the-cross our knights strongly fought*
in castello, videlicet dux Godefridus et comes Eustachius,
*in the-castle namely duke Godfrey and count Eustace*

frater eius. Tunc ascendit quidam miles ex nostris, Letholdus
*brother his then climbed a-certain knight of ours Letold*
nomine, super murum urbis. Mox vero, ut ascendit,
*by-name onto the-wall of-the-city soon indeed as he-climbed*
omnes defensores civitatis fugerunt per muros et per
*all the-defenders of-the-city fled along the-walls and through*
civitatem, nostrique subsecuti persequebantur eos occidendo
*the-city and-our-men having-followed pursued them killing*
et detruncando usque ad templum Salomonis; ibique talis
*and cutting-down all-the-way to the-temple of-Solomon and-there such*
occisio fuit, ut nostri in sanguine illorum pedes usque ad
*slaughter was that our-men in the-blood of-them feet all-the-way to*
cavillas mitterent. At Raimundus comes a meridie conduxit
*the-ankles put but Raymond the-count from the-south led*
suum exercitum et castellum usque prope murum; sed inter
*his army and castle all-the-way near the-wall but between*
castellum et murum erat quaedam fovea nimis profunda.
*the-castle and the-wall was a-certain ditch very deep*
Tunc consiliati sunt nostri, ut implerent foveam, feceruntque
*then took-counsel have our-men that they-should-fill the-ditch and-they-caused*
praeconari, ut, si aliquis in illam foveam portasset III petras,
*to-be-proclaimed that if anyone into that ditch had-carried three stones*
unum haberet denarium. Perduravit vero haec impletio
*one he-should-have penny lasted indeed this filling*
per III dies et noctes. Tandem plena fovea conduxerunt
*for three days and nights at-length filled the-ditch they-led*
castellum iuxta murum. Illi autem, qui intus erant, mirabiliter
*the-castle beside the-wall they moreover who inside were wondrously*
proeliabantur cum nostris igne et lapidibus. Audiens itaque
*fought with our-men with-fire and stones hearing and-so*

comes, quod Franci essent in urbe, suis dixit hominibus:
*the-count that the-Franks were in the-city to-his said men*
Quid tardatis? Ecce omnes Francigenae sunt iam in urbe!
*why do-you-delay behold all the-French-born are now in the-city*
Ammiralius itaque, qui erat in Turri David, reddidit se
*the-emir and-so who was in the-Tower of-David surrendered himself*
comiti, eique aperuit portam, ubi peregrini persolvere
*to-the-count and-to-him opened the-gate where the-pilgrims to-pay*
solebant tributa. Intrantes autem civitatem nostri peregrini
*were-wont tributes entering moreover the-city our pilgrims*
persequebantur et occidebant Saracenos usque ad templum
*pursued and killed the-Saracens all-the-way to the-temple*
Salomonis, in quo congregati dederunt nostris maximum
*of-Solomon in which gathered they-gave to-our-men a-very-great*
bellum per totum diem, ita ut sanguis illorum per totum
*battle through the-whole day so that the-blood of-them through the-whole*
templum flueret. Tandem superatis paganis apprehenderunt
*temple flowed at-length overcome the-pagans seized*
nostri masculos et feminas sat in templo, et occiderunt
*our-men males and females enough in the-temple and killed*
quos voluerunt, et quos voluerunt retinuerunt vivos. Super
*whom they-wished and whom they-wished they-kept alive upon*
templum vero Salomonis erat maxima paganorum congregatio
*the-temple indeed of-Solomon was a-very-great of-pagans gathering*
utriusque sexus, quibus Tancredus et Gaston de Beert
*of-both sex to-whom Tancred and Gaston of Béarn*
dederunt sua vexilla. Mox cucurrerunt per universam urbem,
*gave their banners soon they-ran through all the-city*
capientes aurum et argentum, equos et mulos domosque
*seizing gold and silver horses and mules and-houses*
plenas omnibus bonis. Venerunt autem omnes nostri gaudentes
*full of-all goods came moreover all our-men rejoicing*

et prae nimio gaudio plorantes ad nostri Salvatoris Jesu
*and for excessive joy weeping to of-our Savior Jesus*
Sepulcrum adorandum et reddiderunt ei capitale debitum.
*the-Sepulcher to-be-worshiped and paid to-him the-capital debt*
Mane autem facto ascenderunt nostri caute supra tectum
*morning moreover made climbed our-men warily onto the-roof*
templi et invaserunt Saracenos masculos et feminas,
*of-the-temple and attacked the-Saracens males and females*
decollantes eos nudis ensibus; alii vero dabant se
*beheading them with-bare swords others but gave themselves*
praecipites e templo. Hoc videns Tancredus iratus est nimis.
*headlong from the-temple this seeing Tancred angered was very-much*

## XXXIX · GODFREY CHOSEN AND THE BATTLE OF ASCALON

*The dead are piled outside the walls, and eight days after the city falls on July 15 Godfrey is chosen prince of the city, and on August 1 Arnulf patriarch. Hearing that the emir of Babylon comes, the army marches to Ascalon, and on August 12 it routs his host. The emir laments his defeat by a beggarly people, and the Franks return with countless spoils.*

Tunc nostri tenuerunt consilium, ut unusquisque faceret
*then our-men held a-council that each should-make*
eleemosynas cum orationibus, quatinus sibi Deus eligeret
*alms with prayers so-that for-himself God might-choose*
quem vellet regnare super alios et regere civitatem.
*whom he-wished to-reign over the-others and to-rule the-city*
Iusserunt quoque Saracenos mortuos omnes eiici foras prae
*they-ordered also the-Saracens dead all to-be-thrown outside for*
nimio fetore, quia omnis urbs plena erat illorum cadaveribus,
*excessive stench because all the-city full was of-their corpses*

et vivi Saraceni trahebant mortuos ante portarum exitus et
*and living Saracens dragged the-dead before of-the-gates the-exits and*
ordinabant montes ex eis quasi essent domus. Tales occisiones
*arranged mountains of them as-if they-were houses such slaughters*
de paganorum gente nullus unquam audivit nec vidit, quoniam
*of of-the-pagans the-people no-one ever heard nor saw since*
pyrae erant ordinatae ex eis sicut metae, et nemo scit
*pyres were arranged of them like ricks and no-one knows*
numerum eorum nisi solus Deus. Fecit vero comes Raimundus
*the-number of-them except alone God caused indeed count Raymond*
conduci ammiralium et alios, qui cum eo erant, usque Scalonem
*to-be-led the-emir and others who with him were up-to Ascalon*
sanos et illaesos. Octavo autem die, quo civitas fuit capta,
*sound and unharmed on-the-eighth moreover day on-which the-city was taken*
elegerunt ducem Godefridum principem civitatis, qui debellaret
*they-chose duke Godfrey prince of-the-city who should-war-down*
paganos et custodiret Christianos. Similiter elegerunt
*the-pagans and should-guard the-Christians likewise they-chose*
patriarcham quendam sapientissimum et honorabilem virum,
*as-patriarch a-certain most-wise and honorable man*
nomine Arnulfum, in die Sancti Petri ad Vincula. Haec civitas
*by-name Arnulf on the-day of-Saint Peter in Chains this city*
fuit capta a Christianis Dei XV$^{o}$. die Julii, in VI$^{a}$. feria.
*was taken by the-Christians of-God on-the-fifteenth day of-July on the-sixth weekday*
Interea nuntius venit Tancredo et comiti Eustachio, ut
*meanwhile a-messenger came to-Tancred and to-count Eustace that*
praepararent se et pergerent ad recipiendam Neopolitanam
*they-should-prepare themselves and should-go-on for receiving the-Neapolitan*
urbem. Exierunt illi et duxerunt secum multos milites et
*city went-out they and led with-them many knights and*
pedones, et pervenerunt ad urbem, habitatores vero illius
*foot-soldiers and came to the-city the-inhabitants but of-it*

reddiderunt se ilico. Denuo mandavit illis dux, ut
*surrendered themselves at-once again sent-word to-them the-duke that*
cito venirent ad bellum, quod admiravisus Babyloniae
*quickly they-should-come to the-battle which the-emir of-Babylon*
praeparat urbi Scaloniae. Illi autem festinando intraverunt
*prepares for-the-city of-Ascalon they moreover hastening entered*
montaneam, quaerentes Saracenorum bella, et venerunt
*the-mountain seeking of-the-Saracens battles and came*
Caesaream. Itaque venientes illi iuxta mare ad urbem Ramore;
*to-Caesarea and-so coming they beside the-sea to the-city Ramore*
illic invenerunt multos Arabes, qui praecursores erant belli.
*there they-found many Arabs who forerunners were of-the-battle*
Quos nostri persequentes, apprehenderunt plures ex eis, qui
*whom our-men pursuing seized many of them who*
dixerunt omnia belli nova, ubi essent et quot essent
*told all of-the-battle the-news where they-were and how-many they-were*
aut ubi bellare disponerent contra Christianos. Quod
*or where to-make-war they-were-arranging against the-Christians which*
audiens Tancredus, statim misit nuntium Hierusalem duci
*hearing Tancred at-once sent a-messenger to-Jerusalem to-duke*
Godefrido et patriarchae omnibusque principibus, dicens:
*Godfrey and to-the-patriarch and-to-all the-princes saying*
Sciatis, quod nobis paratum est bellum Scalonae; venite
*know that for-us prepared is battle at-Ascalon come*
ergo festinanter cum omni virtute quam habere poteritis!
*therefore hastily with all the-strength which to-have you-shall-be-able*
Tunc iussit dux submoneri omnes, ut fideliter irent
*then ordered the-duke to-be-summoned all that faithfully they-should-go*
praeparati Scalonam obviam inimicis nostris. Ipse vero cum
*prepared to-Ascalon to-meet enemies our he but with*
patriarcha et Rotberto, Flandrensi comite, exivit de urbe
*the-patriarch and Robert the-Flemish count went-out from the-city*

in feria IIIª., et Marturanensis episcopus cum eis. Comes
*on the-weekday third and the-Martirano bishop with them the-count*
vero Sancti Egidii ac Rotbertus Nortmannus dixerunt se
*but of-Saint Gilles and Robert the-Norman said themselves*
non exituros, nisi certum bellum scirent. Iusserunt
*not about-to-go-out unless a-sure battle they-should-know they-ordered*
ergo militibus suis, ut pergerent videre, si bellum vere
*therefore knights their that they-should-go-on to-see whether the-battle truly*
esset, et reverterentur quantocius, quia ipsi mox essent parati
*was and should-return with-all-speed because they soon would-be ready*
ire. Ierunt illi et viderunt bellum et cito renuntiaverunt
*to-go went they and saw the-battle and quickly reported*
se vidisse oculis suis. Continuo dux, apprehenso
*themselves to-have-seen-it with-eyes their at-once the-duke taken-hold-of*
Marturanensi episcopo, mandavit Hierusalem, quo milites, qui
*the-Martirano bishop sent-word to-Jerusalem that the-knights who*
ibi erant, praeparent se et veniant ad bellum. Quarta
*there were should-prepare themselves and come to the-battle on-the-fourth*
vero feria illi principes exierunt et militaverunt ad bellum.
*indeed weekday those princes went-out and marched to battle*
Episcopus vero Marturanensis rediit, reportans verba missa
*the-bishop but of-Martirano returned carrying-back the-words sent*
patriarchae et duci, exieruntque Saraceni obviam ei et
*to-the-patriarch and to-the-duke and-went-out the-Saracens to-meet him and*
apprehensum secum duxerunt. Petrus vero heremita remansit
*seized-him with-them led-away Peter but the-hermit remained*
Hierusalem ordinando et praecipiendo Graecis et Latinis
*at-Jerusalem ordaining and commanding the-Greeks and Latins*
atque clericis, ut fideliter Deo processionem celebrarent
*and clerics that faithfully to-God a-procession they-should-celebrate*
et orationes eleemosynasque facerent, ut Deus populo suo
*and prayers and-alms should-make that God to-people his*

victoriam daret. Clerici namque et presbyteri, induti sacris
*victory might-give the-clerics for and presbyters clothed in-sacred*
vestibus, ad templum Domini conduxere processionem, missas
*vestments to the-temple of-the-Lord led a-procession masses*
et orationes decantantes, ut suum defenderet populum.
*and prayers singing that his he-should-defend people*
Denique patriarcha et episcopi aliique seniores congregati
*finally the-patriarch and the-bishops and-other lords gathered*
sunt ad flumen, quod est ex hac parte Scalonae. Illic multa
*were at the-river which is on this side of-Ascalon there many*
animalia boum, camelorum, ovium atque omnium bonorum
*animals of-oxen of-camels of-sheep and of-all goods*
depraedati sunt. Venerunt autem Arabes fere CCC,
*plundered have came moreover Arabs about three-hundred*
irrueruntque nostri super illos et apprehenderunt duos
*and-rushed our-men upon them and seized two*
ex eis, persequentes alios usque ad eorum exercitum.
*of them pursuing the-others all-the-way to their army*
Sero autem facto patriarcha fecit praeconari per omnem
*evening moreover made the-patriarch caused to-be-proclaimed through all*
hostem, ut in summo mane cras essent omnes parati
*the-camp that at the-highest morning tomorrow they-should-be all ready*
ad bellum, excommunicans, ne ullus homo intenderet
*for battle excommunicating lest any man should-turn-his-mind*
ad ulla spolia, donec bellum esset factum; sed eo facto
*to any spoils until the-battle should-be done but it done*
reverterentur cum felici gaudio ad capiendum quicquid eis
*they-should-return with happy joy for taking whatever to-them*
praedestinatum esset a Domino.
*foreordained might-be by the-Lord*

Summo vero diluculo, in VI[a]. feria, intraverunt in
*at-the-highest indeed dawn on the-sixth weekday they-entered into*
vallem nimis pulchram secus litus maris, in qua suas
*a-valley very beautiful beside the-shore of-the-sea in which their*
ordinaverunt acies. Dux instruxit suam aciem et comes
*they-ordered battle-lines the-duke drew-up his battle-line and the-count*
Nortmanniae suam, comes Sancti Egidii suam, comes
*of-Normandy his the-count of-Saint Gilles his the-count*
Flandrensis suam, comes Eustachius suam, Tancredus et
*of-Flanders his count Eustace his Tancred and*
Gaston suam; ordinaverunt quoque pedites et sagittarios,
*Gaston their they-ordered also the-foot-soldiers and archers*
qui praecederent milites, et sic ordinaverunt omnia; statimque
*who should-go-before the-knights and so they-ordered all-things and-at-once*
coeperunt militare in nomine Domini Jesu Christi. In
*began to-march in the-name of-the-Lord Jesus Christ on*
sinistra vero parte fuit dux Godefridus cum sua acie,
*the-left indeed side was duke Godfrey with his battle-line*
comesque Sancti Egidii equitavit iuxta mare in dextra parte.
*and-the-count of-Saint Gilles rode beside the-sea on the-right side*
Comes Nortmanniae et comes Flandrensis et Tancredus
*the-count of-Normandy and the-count of-Flanders and Tancred*
omnesque alii equitabant in medio. Tunc nostri coeperunt
*and-all the-others rode in the-middle then our-men began*
paulatim ambulare. Pagani vero stabant parati ad bellum.
*little-by-little to-walk the-pagans but stood ready for battle*
Unusquisque suum habebat vasculum pendens collo, ex
*each his had little-vessel hanging from-the-neck from*
quibus potarent persequentes nos; sed illis non licuit
*which they-might-drink pursuing us but to-them not it-was-allowed*
gratia Dei. Comes autem de Nortmannia cernens ammiravisi
*by-the-grace of-God the-count moreover of Normandy seeing of-the-emir*

stantarum habere quoddam pomum aureum in summitate
*the-standard to-have a-certain apple golden on the-top*
hastae, quae erat cooperta argento, ruit vehementer super
*of-the-spear which was covered with-silver rushed vehemently upon*
illum eumque vulneravit usque ad mortem. Ex alia parte
*him and-him wounded all-the-way to death from the-other side*
comes Flandrensis nimis acriter illos invasit. Tancredus igitur
*the-count of-Flanders very fiercely them attacked Tancred therefore*
impetum fecit per medium tentorium eorum, quod videntes
*an-onset made through the-middle-of camp their which seeing*
pagani continuo inierunt fugam. Paganorum multitudo erat
*the-pagans at-once entered flight of-the-pagans the-multitude was*
innumerabilis, numerumque eorum nemo scit nisi solus Deus;
*countless and-the-number of-them no-one knows except alone God*
bella vero erant immensa, sed virtus divina comitabatur
*the-battles but were immense but the-power divine accompanied*
nobiscum tam magna, tam fortis, quod statim superavimus
*with-us so great so strong that at-once we-overcame*
illos. Stabant autem inimici Dei excaecati et stupefacti,
*them stood moreover the-enemies of-God blinded and stupefied*
ac videntes Christi milites apertis oculis nil videbant
*and seeing of-Christ the-knights with-open eyes nothing they-saw*
et contra Christianos erigere se non audebant, virtute
*and against the-Christians to-raise themselves not they-dared by-the-power*
Dei tremefacti. Prae nimio timore ascendebant in arbores, in
*of-God terrified for excessive fear they-climbed into trees in*
quibus putabant se abscondere; at nostri sagittando et
*which they-thought themselves to-hide but our-men by-shooting-arrows and*
cum lanceis et ensibus occidendo eos ad terram praecipitabant.
*with lances and swords by-killing them to the-earth threw-headlong*
Alii autem iactabant se in terram, non audentes se
*others moreover threw themselves on the-ground not daring themselves*

erigere contra nos. Nostri igitur illos detruncabant, sicut
*to-raise against us our-men therefore them cut-down as*
aliquis detruncat animalia ad macellum. Comes Sancti
*anyone cuts-down animals at the-slaughterhouse the-count of-Saint*
Egidii iuxta mare occidit ex eis sine numero; alii vero
*Gilles beside the-sea killed of them without number others but*
se praecipitabant in mare, alii fugiebant huc illucque.
*themselves threw-headlong into the-sea others fled hither and-thither*
Veniens itaque ammiravissus ante civitatem, dolens et
*coming and-so the-emir before the-city grieving and*
maerens lacrimando dixit: O Deorum spiritus! Quis unquam
*mourning weeping said O of-the-Gods spirits who ever*
vidit vel audivit talia! Tanta potestas, tanta virtus, tanta
*saw or heard such-things so-great a-power so-great a-strength so-great*
militia, quae nunquam ab ulla gente fuit superata, modo
*an-army which never by any people was overcome now*
a tantilla gente Christianorum, quod in pugillo potest
*by so-tiny a-people of-Christians which in a-fist can*
claudi, est devicta! Heu mihi tristis ac dolens! Quid
*be-enclosed is conquered alas for-me sad and grieving what*
amplius dicam? Superatus sum a gente mendica, inermi et
*further shall-I-say overcome I-am by a-people beggarly unarmed and*
pauperrima, quae non habet nisi saccum et peram. Ipsa
*most-poor which not has except a-sack and a-wallet it*
modo persequitur gentem Aegyptiacam, quae illi plerumque
*now pursues the-people Egyptian which to-it often*
suas largita est eleemosynas, dum olim per omnem nostram
*its bestowed has alms when once through all our*
patriam mendicarent. Huc conduxi ad conventionem CC
*fatherland they-begged hither I-led for the-covenant two-hundred*
milia militum et video ipsos laxis frenis fugientes per
*thousand of-knights and I-see them with-loosened bridles fleeing along*

viam Babylonicam, et non audent reverti adversus gentem
*the-road of-Babylon and not they-dare to-return against the-people*
Francigenam. Iuro per Machumet et per omnia Deorum
*French-born I-swear by Muhammad and by all of-the-Gods*
numina, quod ulterius non retinebo milites conventione
*the-powers that further not I-shall-retain knights by-covenant*
aliqua, quia expulsus sum a gente advena. Conduxi omnia
*any because driven-out I-am by a-people stranger I-led all*
armorum genera et omnia instrumenta sive machinamenta,
*of-arms the-kinds and all implements or engines*
ut eos obsiderem in Hierusalem, et ipsi praevenerunt me ad
*that them I-might-besiege in Jerusalem and they forestalled me for*
bellum itinere dierum duorum. Vech! Quid mihi esset, si
*battle by-a-journey of-days two woe what to-me would-be if*
illius gentem conduxissem meam? Heu mihi! Quid amplius
*of-that-one the-people I-had-led mine alas for-me what further*
dicam? Inhonoratus ero semper in terra Babylonica.
*shall-I-say dishonored I-shall-be always in the-land of-Babylon*
Nostri autem acceperunt eius stantarum, quod comparavit
*our-men moreover took his standard which bought*
comes de Nortmannia XX marchas argenti et dedit
*the-count of Normandy for-twenty marks of-silver and gave-it*
patriarchae in Dei honorem et Sancti Sepulcri; ensem vero
*to-the-patriarch in of-God honor and of-the-Holy Sepulcher the-sword but*
emit quidam LX bisanteis. Superati sunt itaque inimici
*bought a-certain-man for-sixty bezants overcome were and-so enemies*
nostri, Deo annuente. Omnes naves terrarum paganorum ibi
*our God nodding all the-ships of-the-lands of-the-pagans there*
aderant; homines vero, qui intus erant, videntes ammiravissum
*were-present the-men but who inside were seeing the-emir*
fugientem cum suo exercitu, statim suspenderunt vela et
*fleeing with his army at-once hoisted the-sails and*

impulerunt se in alta maria. Reversi sunt nostri ad
*drove themselves into the-high seas returned have our-men to*
tentoria eorum, acceperuntque innumera spolia auri, argenti
*the-tents their and-received countless spoils of-gold of-silver*
omniumque bonorum cumula, equos et mulos, asinos et
*and-of-all goods heaps horses and mules asses and*
camelos, innumerabiles oves et boves et instrumenta. Omnes
*camels countless sheep and oxen and implements all*
namque montes et colles et omnia plana stabant
*for the-mountains and hills and all the-plains stood*
cooperta de multitudine illorum animalium, et invenerunt
*covered with the-multitude of-those animals and they-found*
armorum cumula, quae voluerunt deportaverunt, reliqua igne
*of-arms heaps which they-wished they-carried-off the-rest by-fire*
consumpserunt. Reversi sunt nostri cum gaudio Hierusalem,
*they-consumed returned have our-men with joy to-Jerusalem*
deferentes secum omnia bona, scilicet camelos et asinos
*carrying with-them all goods namely camels and asses*
onustos pane, biscocto et farina et frumento et caseo et
*laden with-bread twice-baked and flour and grain and cheese and*
pane et oleo et omnibus bonis, quae illis necesse erant. Hoc
*bread and oil and all goods which to-them necessary were this*
bellum factum est pridie idus Augusti, largiente hoc
*battle done was on-the-day-before the-Ides of-August granting this*
Domino nostro Jesu Christo, cui est honor et gloria nunc et
*Lord our Jesus Christ to-whom is honor and glory now and*
semper et in saecula saeculorum. Dicat omnis spiritus Amen.
*always and into the-ages of-ages let-say every spirit amen*

---

FULCHER OF CHARTRES

# Historia Hierosolymitana

*The History of Jerusalem, Book I*

# Prologus

## PROLOGUE

*The deeds of brave men please the living and help the dead, for whom the faithful pray when they hear them. Urged by companions, Fulcher sets down what he saw on the journey in a rustic but truthful style. The Franks' deeds are not far below those of the Israelites and Maccabees, for he saw or heard of many martyred for Christ, and a small people survived among so many enemies.*

Placet equidem vivis, prodest etiam mortuis, cum gesta
*it-pleases indeed to-the-living it-profits also to-the-dead when the-deeds*
virorum fortium, praesertim Deo militantium, vel scripta
*of-men brave especially for-God soldiering either written*
leguntur vel in mentis armariolo memoriter retenta inter
*are-read or in of-the-mind the-little-cabinet by-memory retained among*
fideles sobrie recitantur. nam qui vivunt in mundo, audita
*the-faithful soberly are-recited for those-who live in the-world heard*
intentione pia praedecessorum fidelium, quomodo mundi
*the-intent pious of-predecessors faithful how of-the-world*
flore spreto Deo adhaeserunt et parentes uxoresque
*the-flower spurned to-God they-clung and parents and-wives*
suas, possessiones quoque quantaslibet relinquentes iuxta
*their possessions also however-great leaving according-to*
praeceptum evangelicum Deum secuti sunt, ad diligendum
*the-precept of-the-Gospel God followed have for loving*
eum ardentius compuncti, ipso inspirante, animantur. mortuis
*him more-ardently pricked he inspiring are-quickened to-the-dead*
siquidem in Domino valde prodest, cum, auditis operibus
*indeed in the-Lord greatly it-profits when heard the-works*
eorum bonis et devotis, fideles animas eorum proinde
*their good and devout the-faithful souls their accordingly*

benedicunt et eleemosynas cum orationibus tam cogniti
*bless and alms with prayers as-well known*
quam ignoti pro eis caritative impendunt. unde comparium
*as unknown for them charitably they-bestow whence of-companions*
meorum quorundam pulsatibus aliquotiens motus, Francorum
*my certain by-the-urgings at-times moved of-the-Franks*
gesta in Domino clarissima qui Dei ordinatione cum armis
*the-deeds in the-Lord most-illustrious who of-God by-ordinance with arms*
Iherusalem peregrinati sunt, stilo rusticano, tamen veraci,
*to-Jerusalem made-pilgrimage have in-style rustic yet truthful*
dignum ducens memoriae commendandum, prout valui et
*worthy deeming to-memory to-be-committed as I-was-able and*
oculis meis in ipso itinere perspexi, diligenter digessi. licet
*with-eyes my on that-very journey I-saw diligently I-arranged although*
autem nec Israeliticae plebis nec Machabaeorum aut aliorum
*moreover neither of-the-Israelite people nor of-the-Maccabees or of-others*
plurium praerogativae, quos Deus tam crebris et magnificis
*many the-prerogatives whom God with-so frequent and magnificent*
miraculis inlustravit, hoc opus praelibatum aequiparare non
*miracles illumined this work aforesaid to-equal not*
audeam, tamen haut longe ab illis gestis inferius aestimatum,
*I-dare yet not far from those deeds lower esteemed*
quoniam Dei miracula in eo noscuntur multipliciter
*since of-God the-miracles in it are-known manifoldly*
perpetrata, scriptis commendare curavi; quin immo in
*performed to-writings to-commit I-have-taken-care nay rather in*
quo disparantur hi postremi ab illis primis vel Israeliticis
*what are-different these last-ones from those first either Israelites*
vel Machabaeis, quos quidem vidimus in regionibus eorum
*or Maccabees whom indeed we-saw in the-regions their*
saepe apud nos aut audivimus longe a nobis positos, pro
*often among us or we-heard far from us placed for*

amore Christi emembrari, crucifigi, excoriari, sagittari,
*the-love of-Christ to-be-dismembered to-be-crucified to-be-flayed to-be-shot-with-arrows*
secari et diverso martyrii genere consummari, nec minis
*to-be-cut and by-diverse of-martyrdom kind to-be-finished neither by-threats*
nec blanditiis aliquibus posse superari; quin potius, si
*nor by-blandishments any to-be-able to-be-overcome nay rather if*
non deesset percussoris gladius, multi nostrum pro Christi
*not had-been-lacking of-the-striker the-sword many of-us for of-Christ*
amore perimi non recusassent. o quot milia martyrum in
*love to-be-slain not would-have-refused O how-many thousands of-martyrs in*
hac expeditione beata morte finierunt! sed quis tam saxei
*this expedition by-a-blessed death ended but who of-so stony*
est cordis, qui haec Dei facta audiat et pietatis visceribus
*is heart who these of-God deeds may-hear and of-pity with-bowels*
commotus in laudes Dei non erumpat? quis potest non
*moved into praises of-God not may-burst-out who can not*
mirari, quomodo nos, exiguus populus inter tot hostium
*marvel how we a-tiny people among so-many of-enemies*
nostrorum regna, non solum resistere, sed etiam vivere
*our kingdoms not only to-resist but also to-live*
poteramus? quis audivit unquam talia? hinc Aegyptus
*could who has-heard ever such-things on-this-side Egypt*
et Aethiopia, hinc Arabia et Chaldaea atque Syria,
*and Ethiopia on-this-side Arabia and Chaldaea and Syria*
hinc Assyria et Media, hinc Parthia et Mesopotamia,
*on-this-side Assyria and Media on-this-side Parthia and Mesopotamia*
hinc Persida et Scythia; mare etiam magnum a
*on-this-side Persia and Scythia the-sea also great from*
Christianismo nos excludebat et inter manus nos laniantium,
*Christendom us shut-out and among the-hands us of-those-tearing*
sicut permittebat Deus, concludebat. ipse autem in brachio
*as permitted God shut-in he moreover with arm*

forti nos pie protegebat. beata enim gens cuius est
*strong us piously protected blessed for the-people whose is*
Dominus Deus eius! modum autem huius operis et inceptum
*the-Lord God its the-manner moreover of-this work and the-beginning*
et quomodo ad tantum iter agendum omnis populus
*and how for so-great a-journey to-be-made all the-people*
occidentalis concussus et mentes et manus in id extenderit
*western shaken both minds and hands to it stretched*
voluntarius, verba historica quae sequuntur declarabunt.
*willing the-words historical which follow shall-declare*

## De concilio apud Clarummontem constituto

### I · THE COUNCIL AT CLERMONT

*In 1095, under Henry in Germany and Philip in France, Pope Urban II sees the faith trampled, the princes at war, the goods of the land plundered, and holy places violated, and hears that the Turks are subjecting Romania. He crosses the Alps and assembles a council of three hundred and ten bishops and abbots at Clermont, where he laments the Church's state and urges them to restore it.*

Anno igitur ab incarnatione Domini MºXCºVº regnante in
*in-the-year therefore from the-incarnation of-Lord the-1095th reigning in*
Alemannia Henrico imperatore dicto, in Francia rege Philippo,
*Germany Henry emperor called in France king Philip*
cum in universis Europae partibus mala multimoda vacillante
*when in all of-Europe parts evils manifold wavering*
fide inolescerent, praeerat urbi Romae papa secundus
*the-faith were-growing presided over-the-city of-Rome pope the-second*
Urbanus, vir egregius vita et moribus, qui ecclesiae sanctae
*Urban a-man excellent in-life and manners who of-the-church holy*
statum semper sublimius provehendum super omnia consulte
*the-state always more-loftily to-be-advanced above all-things deliberately*

ac strenue moderari sategit. videns autem Christianitatis fidem
*and vigorously to-govern strove seeing moreover of-Christendom the-faith*
enormiter ab omnibus, tam clero quam populo, pessundari et
*enormously by all as-well clergy as people to-be-trampled and*
terrarum principibus incessanter certamine bellico nunc istis
*of-the-lands by-the-princes unceasingly in-contest warlike now these*
nunc illis inter se dissidentibus pacem omnino postponi,
*now those among themselves quarreling peace wholly to-be-set-aside*
bona terrae alternatim diripi, multos iniuriose vinctos
*the-goods of-the-land in-turn to-be-plundered many wrongfully bound*
captivari et in carceres teterrimos truculentissime subrui,
*to-be-taken-captive and into prisons most-foul most-savagely to-be-thrust*
supra modum redimi vel intus trifariam angariatos, scilicet
*beyond measure to-be-ransomed or inside in-three-ways tormented namely*
inedia, siti, algore, obitu clandestino exstingui, loca sancta
*by-starvation thirst cold by-death secret to-be-extinguished places holy*
violari, monasteria villasque igni cremari, nulli mortalium
*to-be-violated monasteries and-villages by-fire to-be-burned none of-mortals*
parci, divina et humana ludibriis haberi. audiens etiam
*to-be-spared divine-things and human as-mockeries to-be-held hearing also*
interiores Romaniae partes, a Turcis super Christianos
*the-inner of-Romania parts by the-Turks over the-Christians*
occupatas, impetu feroci perniciose subdi, pietate
*seized with-onslaught fierce ruinously to-be-subjected by-pity*
compatienti dilectionisque Dei nutu permotus, montes
*compassionate and-of-love of-God by-the-nod moved the-mountains*
transmeando in Gallias descendit atque in Alvernia, concilium
*crossing into the-Gauls he-came-down and in Auvergne a-council*
legationibus competenter undique praemonitum, apud
*by-embassies fittingly from-everywhere forewarned at*
Clarummontem, quae civitas sic vocatur, coadunari fecit,
*Clermont which city so is-called to-be-assembled he-caused*

CCCX tam episcoporum quam abbatum adsistentium
*three-hundred-and-ten as-well of-bishops as of-abbots being-present*
cambutis deputatis. his itaque die ad haec praenominato
*with-croziers deputed these and-so on-the-day for this appointed*
ad se convocatis adlocutione dulciflua diligenter conventus
*to himself called-together with-address sweet-flowing diligently of-the-assembly*
causam innotuit. nam sub ecclesiae lugentis voce querula
*the-cause he-made-known for under of-the-church mourning with-voice plaintive*
planctum non minimum expressit et de mundi fluctuantis
*a-lament not the-least he-expressed and about of-the-world fluctuating*
tempestatibus tantimodis, ut superius praefatum est, fide
*the-storms in-so-many-ways as above foresaid it-is the-faith*
subruta, sermonem prolixum cum eis tenuit. deinceps
*undermined a-speech long with them he-held thereafter*
rogitatu supplici cunctos exhortatus est, ut, resumptis fidei
*with-entreaty suppliant all exhorted has that taken-up-again of-faith*
viribus, cum ingenti sollicitatione ad expugnandas diaboli
*the-strength with huge solicitude for overcoming of-the-devil*
machinationes viriliter se animarent et ecclesiae
*the-machinations manfully themselves they-should-quicken and of-the-church*
sanctae statum, crudelissime a nefandis debilitatum, in
*holy the-state most-cruelly by the-wicked weakened into*
honorem pristinum competenter erigere conarentur.
*honor former fittingly to-raise they-should-try*

## Decretum Urbani papae in eodem concilio

### II · URBAN'S DECREE AT THE COUNCIL

*Urban tells the clergy they are stewards and shepherds and the salt of the earth, who must salt the ignorant people and correct themselves first. He condemns simony, demands that the Church be free of secular power and tithes paid, declares whoever seizes a bishop an outlaw, anathematizes those who seize monks, clerics, nuns, pilgrims, or merchants, and orders the truce of God kept in every diocese.*

Dilectissimi fratres, inquit, apostolatus apice, Dei
*most-beloved brothers he-said of-the-apostolate at-the-summit of-God*
permissu orbi terrae praelatus, occasione necessaria
*by-permission over-the-world of-the-earth set-over by-occasion necessary*
supereminente, tamquam monitionis divinae legatus, ad vos
*pressing as of-admonition divine an-envoy to you*
Dei servos has in partes condescendi Vrbanus. et quos
*of-God servants these into parts I-have-come-down Urban and those-whom*
dispensatores ministeriorum Dei esse aestimavi, tales et
*stewards of-the-ministries of-God to-be I-have-judged such and*
fideles, simulationis explosa luvione reperiri optavi. quod si
*faithful of-pretense driven-out the-filth to-be-found I-have-wished that if*
aliquid gibbosum vel tortuosum, modestia rationis iustitiae
*anything humped or crooked the-moderation of-reason of-justice*
semota, contra legem Dei obsistat, praesente subfragamine
*removed against the-law of-God may-stand present the-support*
divino, diligenter exspolire satagam. Dominus enim supra
*divine diligently to-strip-away I-shall-strive the-Lord for over*
familiam suam, ut ei pro tempore pabula modesto
*household his that to-it in time food with-moderate*
sapore condita ministretis, vos dispensatores constituit. beati
*savor seasoned you-may-minister you as-stewards has-appointed blessed*

autem eritis, si fideles tandem dispensationis exactor
*moreover you-shall-be if faithful at-length of-the-stewardship the-demander*
vos invenerit. pastores etiam nuncupamini; videte autem
*you shall-have-found shepherds also you-are-called see moreover*
ne mercennarii more fungamini. veri ergo pastores et
*lest of-a-hireling in-the-manner you-act true therefore shepherds and*
baculos semper in manibus habentes estote; nec dormitantes
*staffs always in hands having be nor dozing*
gregem vobis commissum undique conservate. nam si
*the-flock to-you committed on-all-sides keep for if*
per incuriam vestram aut negligentiam ovem quivis lupus
*through carelessness your or negligence a-sheep any wolf*
abripuerit, mercedem nimirum vobis paratam apud
*shall-have-snatched-away the-reward doubtless for-you prepared with*
Dominum nostrum amittetis. sed et lictorum flagris
*Lord our you-shall-lose but also of-the-lictors with-the-scourges*
primitus asperrime caesi, postmodum vero in custodiam
*first most-harshly beaten afterward indeed into the-custody*
funestae conversationis truculenter subruemini. vos quidem
*of-a-deadly way-of-life savagely you-shall-be-thrust you indeed*
iuxta sermonem evangelicum „sal estis terrae." quod si
*according-to the-word of-the-Gospel the-salt are of-the-earth which if*
defeceritis, ambigitur quomodo salliatur. o quanta sallitio!
*you-shall-have-failed it-is-doubted how it-may-be-salted O how-great a-salting*
vere necesse est vos plebem idiotam et mundi lasciviae
*truly necessary is you the-people ignorant and of-the-world for-the-wantonness*
supra modum inhiantem sapientiae sale corrigendo sallire, ne
*beyond measure gaping of-wisdom with-salt by-correcting to-salt lest*
delictis putrefacta, dum eam adloqui voluerit quandoque
*by-offenses putrefied when it to-address shall-have-wished sometime*
Dominus, insulsa puteat. nam si vermes, hoc est peccata,
*the-Lord unsalted it-may-stink for if worms that is sins*

causa desidiae procurationis vestrae, in ea reppererit,
*by-reason of-the-sloth of-administration your in it he-shall-have-found*
ilico vilipensam in praecipitium spurcitiarum eam subigi
*at-once despised into the-precipice of-filths it to-be-thrust*
praecipiet. et quia tantum perditum ei restaurare
*he-shall-command and because so-much lost to-him to-restore*
nequiveritis, vos in iudicio damnatos a familiaritate
*you-shall-have-been-unable you in judgment condemned from the-familiarity*
dilectionis suae prorsus exterminabit. sed huiusmodi sallitorem
*of-love his utterly he-shall-banish but of-this-kind a-salter*
oportet esse prudentem, provisorem, modestum, edoctum,
*it-behooves to-be prudent a-provider modest learned*
pacificum, scrutatorem, pium, iustum, aequum, mundum. nam
*peaceable a-searcher pious just fair clean for*
quomodo indoctus doctos, inmodestus modestos, inmundus
*how the-unlearned the-learned the-immodest the-modest the-unclean*
mundos efficere valebit? quod si pacem oderit,
*the-clean to-make shall-be-able which if peace he-shall-have-hated*
quomodo pacificabit? aut si quis habuerit manus
*how shall-be-make-peace or if anyone shall-have-had hands*
sordidatas, quomodo sordes alterius coinquinationis tergere
*soiled how the-filth of-another defilement to-wipe*
poterit? lectum est etiam, quia „si caecus caecum
*shall-be-be-able read it-is also that if a-blind-man a-blind-man*
duxerit, ambobus cavea patebit“. ceterum vos ipsos prius
*shall-have-led to-both the-pit shall-lie-open for-the-rest you yourselves first*
corrigite, ut inreprehensibiliter subditos vestros queatis
*correct that irreproachably subjects your you-may-be-able*
emendare. si quidem amici Dei esse vultis, libenter exercete
*to-amend if indeed friends of-God to-be you-wish willingly practice*
quae ei placere sentitis. res ecclesiasticas praecipue
*what-things him to-please you-perceive the-things ecclesiastical especially*

in suo iure constare facite, ut et simoniaca haeresis
*in their-own right to-stand make that also the-simoniac heresy*
nullatenus apud vos radicet; cavete ne vendentes ac ementes
*in-no-way among you take-root beware lest selling and buying*
flagris flagellati dominicis per angiportus in exterminium
*with-scourges scourged of-the-Lord through the-alleys into the-destruction*
confusionis miserabiliter propellantur. ecclesiam suis ordinibus
*of-confusion wretchedly they-be-driven the-church in-its orders*
omnimode liberam ab omni saeculari potestate sustentate,
*in-every-way free from every secular power uphold*
decimas Deo de omnibus terrae cultibus fideliter dari
*tithes to-God from all of-the-earth the-tillings faithfully to-be-given*
facite, ne vendantur aut retineantur. qui igitur episcopum
*make lest they-be-sold or be-withheld who therefore a-bishop*
ceperit, omnino exlex habeatur. qui monachos vel
*shall-have-seized wholly outlaw let-be-held who monks or*
clericos aut sanctimoniales et eorum famulos ceperit aut
*clerics or nuns and their servants shall-have-seized or*
exspoliaverit, vel peregrinos vel mercatores, anathema sit.
*shall-have-despoiled or pilgrims or merchants anathema let-him-be*
raptores et domorum combustores et eorum consentientes,
*robbers and of-houses burners and their abettors*
ab ecclesia extorres, anathemate feriantur. „summopere igitur
*from the-church exiled with-anathema let-be-struck above-all therefore*
considerandum est“, ut dicit Gregorius, „qua multandus
*to-be-considered it-is as says Gregory with-what to-be-fined*
sit poena qui aliena diripit, si inferni damnatione
*may-be penalty he-who another's-things plunders if of-hell with-damnation*
percutitur qui propria non largitur“. sic enim diviti
*is-struck he-who his-own not bestows so for to-the-rich-man*
in Evangelio memorato contigit, qui „non idcirco punitus
*in the-Gospel mentioned it-happened who not for-that punished*

est quod aliena abstulisset, sed quia rebus acceptis
*was that another's-things he-had-taken-away but because the-things received*
seipsum male dereliquit". his itaque iniquitatibus, ut
*himself badly abandoned with-these and-so iniquities as*
dictum est, carissimi, mundum vidistis diu confusum
*said it-is dearest the-world you-have-seen long confounded*
fuisse, adeo ut in aliquibus provinciarum vestrarum locis,
*to-have-been so-much that in some of-provinces your places*
ut nobis a referentibus intimatum est, per inbecillitatem
*as to-us by those-reporting made-known it-has-been through the-weakness*
forsitan iustificationis vestrae, vix tute per viam quis gradi
*perhaps of-justice your scarcely safely along the-road anyone to-step*
audeat, quin vel die a praedonibus vel nocte a latronibus
*may-dare but-that either by-day by robbers or by-night by thieves*
aut vi aut ingenio maligno in domo vel extra subripiatur.
*either by-force or by-cunning malign in the-house or outside he-be-snatched*
quapropter treviam, sic vulgariter dictam, iam dudum a
*wherefore the-truce so commonly called now long-since by*
sanctis patribus determinatam, reformari oportet, quod ut
*the-holy fathers determined to-be-restored it-behooves which that*
firmissime in episcopatu suo unusquisque vestrum teneri
*most-firmly in bishopric his each of-you to-be-held*
faciat, monendo flagito. quod si aliquis sive aviditate sive
*may-cause by-admonishing I-demand that if anyone either by-greed or*
superbia tactus eam sponte infregerit, Dei auctoritate et
*by-pride touched it willingly shall-have-broken of-God by-authority and*
huius sancti concilii decretorum sanctione anathematizetur.
*of-this holy council of-the-decrees by-the-sanction let-him-be-anathematized*

## Item exhortatio ipsius de itinere Hierosolymitano

### III · URBAN'S CALL TO THE JOURNEY

*Urban adds a greater matter: the Turks have overrun the eastern Christians as far as the Arm of Saint George. He bids the clergy urge all ranks, rich and poor, to go to their help, promising remission of sins to all who die on the way. Those who fought private wars and served for pay should now fight the barbarians for eternal reward, setting out when winter ends.*

His et aliis pluribus competenter dispositis, cuncti adsistentes,
*these and others many fittingly arranged all those-present*
tam clerus quam populus, Deo gratias agendo, dictis
*as-well clergy as people to-God thanks giving to-the-words*
domni Urbani papae voluntarie adspiraverunt et fideli
*of-lord Urban the-pope willingly assented and with-faithful*
pollicitatione decreta illius bene tenenda confirmaverunt. sed
*promise the-decrees his well to-be-kept confirmed but*
et aliud ilico, non minus tribulationis iam dictae,
*also another-thing at-once not less than-the-tribulation already spoken*
sed et maius aut pessimum ex altero mundi climate
*but also greater or worst from another of-the-world region*
Christianitati obesse adiecit, inquiens: quoniam, o filii Dei,
*to-Christendom to-be-harmful he-added saying since O sons of-God*
si pacem apud vos tenendam et ecclesiae iura conservanda
*if peace among you to-be-kept and of-the-church the-rights to-be-preserved*
fideliter sustentare virilius solito polliciti Deo estis,
*faithfully to-uphold more-manfully than-usual promised to-God you-have*
exstat operae pretium ut insuper ad quoddam aliud Dei
*it-stands worth the-while that besides to a-certain other of-God*
negotium et vestrum, emendatione deifica nuper vegetati,
*business and yours by-amendment divine lately quickened*

probitatis vestrae valetudinem versetis. necesse est enim,
*of-prowess your the-vigor you-turn necessary it-is for*
quatinus confratribus vestris in Orientali plaga conversantibus,
*so-that to-brothers your in the-Eastern region dwelling*
auxilio vestro iam saepe acclamato indigis, accelerato itinere
*with-help your already often cried-out-for needy with-hastened journey*
succurratis. invaserunt enim eos, sicuti plerisque vestrum
*you-should-come-to-aid have-attacked for them as to-most of-you*
iam dictum est, usque mare Mediterraneum, ad illud
*already said it-has-been up-to the-sea Mediterranean to that*
scilicet quod dicunt Brachium S. Georgii, Turci, gens
*namely which they-call the-Arm of-Saint George the-Turks a-people*
Persica, qui apud Romaniae fines terras Christianorum
*Persian who at of-Romania the-borders the-lands of-the-Christians*
magis magisque occupando, lite bellica iam septuplicata
*more and-more by-occupying in-strife warlike now sevenfold*
victos superaverunt, multos occidendo vel captivando,
*the-conquered have-overcome many by-killing or by-taking-captive*
ecclesias subvertendo, regnum Dei vastando. quos quidem si
*churches by-overturning the-kingdom of-God by-laying-waste whom indeed if*
sic aliquandiu in quiete siveritis, multo latius fideles
*so for-some-time in quiet you-shall-have-allowed much more-widely the-faithful*
Dei supergredientur. qua de re supplici prece hortor, non
*of-God they-shall-overrun which for thing with-suppliant prayer I-exhort not*
ego, sed Dominus, ut cunctis cuiuslibet ordinis tam equitibus
*I but the-Lord that all of-whatever rank as-well horsemen*
quam peditibus, tam divitibus quam pauperibus, edicto
*as foot-soldiers as-well rich as poor by-edict*
frequenti vos, Christi praecones, suadeatis, ut ad id genus
*frequent you of-Christ heralds may-persuade that for that race*
nequam de regionibus nostrorum exterminandum tempestive
*wicked from the-regions of-ours to-be-exterminated in-good-time*

Christicolis opitulari satagant. praesentibus dico, absentibus
*the-Christians to-aid they-strive to-those-present I-say to-those-absent*
mando, Christus autem imperat. cunctis autem illuc euntibus,
*I-command Christ moreover orders to-all moreover thither going*
si aut gradiendo aut transfretando, sive contra paganos
*if either by-marching or by-crossing or against the-pagans*
dimicando, vitam morte praepeditam finierint, remissio
*by-fighting life by-death hindered they-shall-have-ended the-remission*
peccatorum praesens aderit. quod ituris adnuo,
*of-sins present shall-be-at-hand which to-those-about-to-go I-grant*
dono isto investitus a Deo. o quantum dedecus, si gens tam
*by-gift this invested by God O how-great a-disgrace if a-people so*
spreta, degener et daemonum ancilla, gentem omnipotentis
*despised degenerate and of-demons the-handmaid the-people of-almighty*
Dei fide praeditam et Christi nomine fulgidam sic
*God with-faith endowed and of-Christ with-name shining so*
superaverit! o quanta improperia vobis ab ipso Domino
*shall-have-overcome O how-great reproaches to-you by the-very Lord*
imputabuntur, si eos non iuveritis qui professione
*shall-be-imputed if them not you-shall-have-helped who in-profession*
Christiana censentur, sicut et vos. procedant, inquit, contra
*Christian are-reckoned as also you let-them-go-forth he-says against*
infideles ad pugnam iam incipi dignam et trophaeo
*the-infidels to a-fight now to-be-begun worthy and with-a-trophy*
explendam, qui abusive privatum certamen contra fideles
*to-be-completed who wrongly private warfare against the-faithful*
etiam consuescebant distendere quondam. nunc fiant
*even were-accustomed to-extend once now let-them-become*
Christi milites, qui dudum exstiterunt raptores; nunc iure
*of-Christ knights who long-since were robbers now by-right*
contra barbaros pugnent, qui olim adversus fratres et
*against the-barbarians let-them-fight who once against brothers and*

consanguineos dimicabant; nunc aeterna praemia nanciscantur,
*kinsmen fought now eternal rewards let-them-obtain*
qui dudum pro solidis paucis mercennarii fuerunt. pro honore
*who long-since for shillings few hirelings were for honor*
duplici laborent, qui ad detrimentum corporis et animae
*double let-them-labor who to the-detriment of-body and soul*
se fatigabant. quinimmo hic tristes, hic pauperes, illic
*themselves wearied nay-rather here sad here poor there*
autem laeti et locupletes, hic inimici Domini, illic autem amici
*moreover glad and rich here enemies of-the-Lord there moreover friends*
eius erunt. ituris autem mora non differat iter,
*his they-shall-be to-those-about-to-go moreover delay not let-defer the-journey*
sed propriis locatis sumptibusque collectis, cessante bruma
*but their-own leased and-expenses gathered ceasing the-winter*
vernoque sequente, Domino praevio tramitem acriter intrent.
*and-the-spring following the-Lord going-before the-path keenly let-them-enter*

## De episcopo Podiensi et de his quae postea gesta sunt

### IV · ADHEMAR AND THE TAKING OF THE CROSS

*Many vow to go, among them Adhemar, bishop of Le Puy, who later leads the army as the pope's vicar. The council's peace is sworn, and many of every craft vow the journey for the remission of sins, sewing crosses of silk or gold on their cloaks. Fulcher reflects that a good thought leads to a good work, and praises Urban in verse.*

His dictis et audientibus gratanter ad hoc animatis, nihil
*these said and the-hearers gladly to this quickened nothing*
tali actu dignius aestimantes, statim plures audientium
*than-such an-act more-worthy esteeming at-once many of-the-hearers*
se ituros et alios absentes inde diligenter exhortaturos
*themselves about-to-go and others absent thereupon diligently about-to-exhort*

se spoponderunt. de quibus fuit unus episcopus Podiensis,
*themselves pledged of whom was one the-bishop of-Le-Puy*
nomine Ademarus, qui postea vice fungens apostolica
*by-name Adhemar who afterward the-office discharging apostolic*
cunctum Dei exercitum prudenter et consulte rexit
*all of-God the-army prudently and deliberately ruled*
et ad negotia peragenda vivaciter animavit. taliter in
*and to the-business to-be-accomplished vigorously quickened thus in*
concilio quae diximus stabilitis et ab omnibus bene
*the-council the-things-which we-have-said established and by all well*
confirmatis, absolutionis benedictione data, discesserunt; et
*confirmed of-absolution the-blessing given they-departed and*
hoc nescientibus, postmodum ad mansiones suas regressi,
*this to-those-not-knowing afterward to dwellings their having-returned*
prout gestum fuerat, divulgaverunt. quod ut passim per
*as done it-had-been they-spread-abroad which as everywhere through*
provincias edictum est iurisiurandi firmitudine pacem, quam
*the-provinces proclaimed it-was of-an-oath with-firmness the-peace which*
dicunt treviam, invicem tenendam constituerunt. deinceps vero
*they-call the-truce mutually to-be-kept they-established thereafter indeed*
multi cuiuslibet artis officio fungentes, comperta remissione
*many of-whatever craft the-office discharging learned the-remission*
peccatorum, se profecturos defaecatae mentis intentione
*of-sins themselves about-to-set-out of-cleansed mind with-intent*
devoverunt, quorsum ire iussum fuerat. o quam dignum erat
*vowed whither to-go ordered it-had-been O how worthy was-it*
et amoenum nobis omnibus cruces illas cernentibus, vel sericas
*and pleasant to-us all crosses those seeing either silken*
vel auro textas aut quolibet genere pallii decoras, quas in
*or with-gold woven or of-whatever kind of-cloth seemly which on*
chlamydibus suis aut birris aut tunicis iussu praedicti papae
*cloaks their or capes or tunics by-the-order of-the-aforesaid pope*

post votum eundi super humeros suos peregrini consuebant!
*after the-vow of-going upon shoulders their the-pilgrims sewed*
sane pugnatores Dei merito victoriae signo insigniri et
*surely the-fighters of-God deservedly of-victory with-the-sign to-be-marked and*
muniri debebant, qui ob honorem eius ad proeliandum se
*to-be-fortified ought who for the-honor his for fighting themselves*
praeparabant. et quoniam significans sub agnitione fidei
*prepared and since the-signifying under the-acknowledgment of-faith*
circa se sic pinxerunt, denique significatum derivativum
*around themselves so they-painted finally the-signified derivative*
verius adepti sunt. speciem insignierunt, ut rem
*more-truly obtained have the-appearance they-bore that the-thing*
speciei consequerentur. patet equidem, quia meditatio
*of-the-appearance they-might-attain it-is-plain indeed that meditation*
bona bonum opus agendum machinatur, opus vero bonum
*good a-good work to-be-done contrives the-work but good*
salutem animae lucratur. quod si bonum est bene meditari,
*the-salvation of-the-soul gains which if good it-is well to-meditate*
melius autem post cogitatum opus iustum patrari.
*better moreover after the-thought a-work just to-be-accomplished*
optimum ergo est compendium salutare, quod per dignam
*best therefore is the-saving profit which through worthy*
actionem animae victui adquiritur. unusquisque ergo bonum
*action of-the-soul for-sustenance is-acquired each therefore good*

cogitet, quod opere digno meliorando compleat, ut optimum,
*let-think which by-work worthy by-bettering he-may-fulfill that the-best*
quod non deficiet in aeternum, emeritus tandem accipiat.
*which not shall-fail into eternity having-served at-length he-may-receive*

Taliter Urbanus, vir prudens et venerandus,
*thus Urban a-man prudent and venerable*
Est meditatus opus, quo postea floruit orbis.
*has meditated a-work by-which afterward flourished the-world*

nam pacem renovavit ecclesiaeque iura in modos pristinos
*for peace he-renewed and-of-the-church the-rights to ways former*
restituit; sed et paganos de terris Christianorum instinctu
*restored but also the-pagans from the-lands of-the-Christians with-impulse*
vivaci effugare conatus est. et quoniam cuncta quae Dei
*vigorous to-put-to-flight tried has and since all-things which of-God*
sunt exaltare omnimode studebat, omnes fere paternitati
*are to-exalt in-every-way he-was-eager all almost to-fatherhood*
suae oboediendo libenter se dederunt.
*his by-obeying willingly themselves gave*

# De dissensione Urbani papae atque Guidberti

## V · URBAN AND THE ANTIPOPE GUIBERT

*The devil raises Guibert of Ravenna, backed by the emperor, to usurp the papacy against Gregory and then against Urban, who wins full power only in the year the Franks pass through Rome, with Matilda's help. With two popes, very many do not know whom to obey; the head being sick, the members ache, so Urban turns the princes' wars against the pagans. Fulcher turns to his history.*

Sed diabolus, qui ad detrimentum hominum semper insistere
*but the-devil who for the-detriment of-men always to-press-on*
nititur et veluti leo quaerit circumeundo quem devoret,
*strives and like a-lion seeks by-going-around whom he-may-devour*
huic adversarium quendam nomine Guidbertum, superbiae
*against-this-one an-adversary certain by-name Guibert of-pride*
stimulis inritatum, ad confusionem populi concitavit. qui
*by-goads stirred for the-confusion of-the-people roused who*
dudum imperatoris praefati Baioariorum protervitate suffultus,
*long-since of-the-emperor aforesaid of-the-Bavarians by-the-insolence supported*
dum praedecessor Gregorius, qui et Hildebrandus, in sede
*while the-predecessor Gregory who also Hildebrand in the-see*
iure habebatur, apostolatus officium usurpare coepit, ipso
*by-right was-held of-the-apostolate the-office to-usurp began that-very*
Gregorio a liminibus basilicae S. Petri excluso. et
*Gregory from the-thresholds of-the-basilica of-Saint Peter shut-out and*
quia sic perverse egit, populus melior eum cognoscere
*because so perversely he-acted the-people better him to-recognize*
noluit, Urbano autem iure electo et ab episcopis
*was-unwilling Urban moreover by-right elected and by the-bishops*
cardinalibus consecrato, maior et sanctior pars populi post
*cardinal consecrated the-greater and holier part of-the-people after*

Hildebrandi excessum oboediendo aspiravit. Guidbertus vero
*of-Hildebrand the-departure by-obeying assented Guibert but*
sustentamine imperatoris praedicti et plerorumque civium
*by-the-support of-the-emperor aforesaid and of-very-many citizens*
Romanorum inritamento animatus, Urbanum quamdiu potuit
*Roman by-the-incitement quickened Urban as-long-as he-could*
a monasterio beati Petri alienum fecit. sed dum ab
*from the-monastery of-blessed Peter estranged made but while from*
ecclesia sic eliminatus erat, per regiones incedens, populum
*the-church so cast-out he-was through the-regions going the-people*
in aliquantis devium Deo conciliabat. Guidbertus autem
*in some-places straying to-God he-reconciled Guibert moreover*
ob ecclesiae principatum turgidus papam proclivem
*on-account-of of-the-church the-principate swollen as-pope well-disposed*
oberrantibus se ostentabat et apostolatus officium, licet
*to-those-straying himself displayed and of-the-apostolate the-office although*
iniuste, inter consentientes exercebat et Urbani facta tamquam
*unjustly among those-consenting he-exercised and of-Urban the-acts as*
inrita vilipendebat. Urbanus autem eo anno, quo Franci
*void he-disparaged Urban moreover in-that year in-which the-Franks*
primitus Iherusalem euntes per Romam transierunt,
*first to-Jerusalem going through Rome passed*
totam omnino potestatem apostolicam adeptus est, auxilio
*the-whole altogether power apostolic obtained has with-the-help*
cuiusdam nobilissimae matronae, Mathildis nomine, quae in
*of-a-certain most-noble matron Matilda by-name who in*
Romana patria potestate multa tunc vigebat. Guidbertus vero
*the-Roman fatherland in-power great then flourished Guibert but*
tunc in Alemannia erat. itaque duo papae Romae praeerant;
*then in Germany was and-so two popes at-Rome presided*
sed cui oboediretur, a quamplurimis ignorabatur, vel a
*but which should-be-obeyed by very-many was-not-known or from*

quo consilium posceretur, vel quis aegrotis mederetur. alii
*whom counsel should-be-asked or who the-sick should-heal some*
huic, alii alteri favebant. Prout intellectibus hominum
*this-one others the-other favored as to-the-understandings of-men*
patebat, Urbanus iustior erat: putandus est recte melior
*lay-plain Urban more-just was to-be-thought he-is rightly better*
qui cupiditates tamquam hostes subiicit. Ravennae urbis
*who desires as enemies subjects of-Ravenna of-the-city*
archiepiscopus Guidbertus erat, honore et divitiis opulentus
*archbishop Guibert was with-honor and riches wealthy*
valde splendebat. mirandum, quare sibi tam locupleti
*greatly he-shone to-be-wondered why for-himself so rich*
tantum non sufficiebat. qui etiam iustae actionis exemplar
*so-much not sufficed who also of-just action an-example*
omnibus considerari debebat, cur temere philopompus invadere
*by-all to-be-regarded ought why rashly pomp-loving to-seize*
praesumpsit sceptrum imperii Dei? sane non est vi
*did-he-presume the-scepter of-the-empire of-God surely not is-it by-force*
rapiendum, verum cum timore et devotione suscipiendum.
*to-be-seized but with fear and devotion to-be-received*
nec mirum si mundus inquietabatur totus et conturbabatur,
*nor wonder if the-world was-disquieted wholly and was-troubled*
quoniam si Romana ecclesia, in qua principalitas correctionis
*since if the-Roman church in which the-principality of-correction*
universae Christianitatis obtinetur, quolibet turbine confunditur,
*of-universal Christendom is-held by-any whirlwind is-confounded*
confestim accidit membra sibi subdita, a capitaneis fibris
*at-once it-happens the-members to-it subject from the-head nerves*
dolore derivante, compassibiliter debilitari. ea enimvero
*the-pain flowing-down sympathetically to-be-weakened that for*
ecclesia, mater nostra scilicet, lacte cuius educabamur,
*church mother our namely with-the-milk of-which we-were-reared*

documento instrui valebamus, consilio muniebamus, ab
*by-the-teaching to-be-instructed we-were-able by-the-counsel we-were-fortified by*
illo Guidberto superbo vehementer percussa erat. cumque
*that Guibert proud vehemently struck was and-when*
caput sic tritum est, continuo membra laesa sunt.
*the-head so crushed is at-once the-members hurt are*

Si caput aegrotet, cetera membra dolent.
*if the-head be-sick the-other members ache*

capite autem sic laeso, etiam membris marcescentibus dolore
*the-head moreover so hurt also the-members withering the-pain*
concepto, quia in partibus omnibus Europae pax, bonitas,
*conceived because in parts all of-Europe peace goodness*
fides, in ecclesiis et extra, tam a maioribus quam minoribus
*faith in the-churches and outside as-well by the-greater as the-lesser*
viriliter subigebantur, necesse erat ut, malis tantimodis
*manfully were-subdued necessary it-was that evils so-many-kinds*
dimissis, monitione a papa Urbano sic exorsa, contra paganos
*given-up the-admonition by pope Urban thus begun against the-pagans*
saltem certamina inter se dudum consueta distenderent.
*at-least the-contests among themselves long-since accustomed they-should-extend*
Nunc igitur ad historiam stilus est vertendus: ut de
*now therefore to the-history the-pen is to-be-turned that about*
iter agentibus Hierosolymam et quid eis accidit et
*the-journey those-making to-Jerusalem and what to-them happened and*
quantum res et labor ipse paulatim, Deo adiuvante,
*how-much the-thing and the-labor itself little-by-little God helping*
proficiendo claruit, gesta haec ignorantibus enucleatim
*by-advancing shone these deeds to-the-ignorant point-by-point*
innotescat. quod ego Fulcherus Carnotensis cum ceteris
*may-become-known which I Fulcher of-Chartres with the-other*

iens peregrinis, postea, sicut oculis meis perspexi, diligenter
*going pilgrims afterward as with-eyes my I-saw diligently*
et sollicite in memoriam posteris collegi.
*and solicitously into memory for-posterity collected*

## Quo tempore Christiani iter adripuerunt, simul et nomina principum peregrinantium

### VI · THE DEPARTURE, AND THE NAMES OF THE PRINCES

*From March 1096 the pilgrims set out as each is ready, in a year of plenty. Hugh the Great is taken at Durazzo; Bohemond, Godfrey, Raymond with Adhemar, Peter the Hermit, and Walter Sans-Avoir go by their roads; Robert of Normandy, Stephen of Blois, and Robert of Flanders follow. Husbands leave weeping wives, steadfast for the love of God.*

Anno ab incarnatione dominica MºXCºVIº, mense in
*in-the-year from the-incarnation of-the-Lord the-1096th in-the-month in*
Martio, post concilium, de quo dictum est, Alvernicum,
*March after the-council of which spoken it-is of-Auvergne*
quod mense Novembri papa Urbanus tenuit, alii aliis
*which in-the-month of-November pope Urban held some than-others*
paratu promptiores iter sanctum carpere coeperunt;
*in-preparation readier the-journey holy to-take began*
alii quidem mense Aprili vel Maio, aut Iunio sive
*others indeed in-the-month of-April or May or June or*
Iulio, necnon Augusto seu Septembri atque Octobri, prout
*July and-also August or September and October as*
sumptuum opportunitas occurrit, subsecuti sunt. quo anno
*of-expenses the-opportunity occurred followed have in-which year*
pax et ingens abundantia frumenti et vini per cuncta
*peace and huge abundance of-grain and of-wine through all*

terrarum climata exuberavit, disponente Deo, ne panis inopia
*of-the-lands the-regions abounded disposing God lest of-bread for-want*
in via deficerent qui cum crucibus suis iuxta eiusdem
*on the-road they-should-fail who with crosses their according-to of-the-same*
praecepta sequi eum elegerant. et quia competens est nomina
*the-precepts to-follow him had-chosen and because fitting it-is the-names*
principum tunc peregrinantium in memoria teneri, Hugonem
*of-the-princes then making-pilgrimage in memory to-be-held Hugh*
Magnum, Philippi regis Francorum fratrem, nomino, qui
*the-Great of-Philip king of-the-Franks the-brother I-name who*
primus heroum mare transiens, apud Duratium urbem in
*first of-the-heroes the-sea crossing at Durazzo the-city in*
Bulgaria cum suis adplicavit, sed imprudenter cum raro
*Bulgaria with his-men landed but imprudently with a-thin*
agmine vadens, ab ipsis civibus ibi captus est et usque
*column going by those-very citizens there captured was and all-the-way*
ad imperatorem Constantinopolitanum perductus, ubi per
*to the-emperor of-Constantinople brought where for*
aliquantum temporis non omnino liber moratus est. postque
*some-amount of-time not wholly free stayed has and-after*
eum Boamundus Apulus, Roberti Guischardi filius, natione
*him Bohemond the-Apulian of-Robert Guiscard the-son by-nation*
tamen Normannus, per eundem tramitem cum exercitu suo
*yet a-Norman by the-same path with army his*
meavit. porro Godefridus regni Lothariensis dux per
*went further Godfrey of-the-kingdom of-Lorraine the-duke through*
Hungarorum patriam cum multa gente ivit. Raimundus vero
*of-the-Hungarians the-country with much people went Raymond but*
comes Provincialium cum Gothis et Guasconibus, episcopus
*count of-the-Provençals with the-Goths and Gascons the-bishop*
quoque Podiensis Ademarus per Dalmatiam transierunt.
*also of-Le-Puy Adhemar through Dalmatia passed*

Petrus heremita quidam, multis sibi adiunctis peditibus
*Peter a-hermit certain with-many to-himself joined foot-soldiers*
sed paucis militibus, per Hungariam primitus perrexit,
*but few knights through Hungary first went-on*
cuius gentis postea fuit satrapa Walterus, Sine Pecunia
*of-whose people afterward was the-satrap Walter Without Money*
cognomine dictus, miles quidem peroptimus, qui postea intra
*by-surname called a-knight indeed most-excellent who afterward between*
Nicomediam et Nicaeam urbes cum sodalibus suis multis
*Nicomedia and Nicaea the-cities with comrades his many*
a Turcis est occisus. mense quidem Octobri Robertus
*by the-Turks was killed in-the-month indeed of-October Robert*
Normannorum comes, filius Guillelmi, Anglorum regis, iter
*of-the-Normans the-count son of-William of-the-English king the-journey*
adripuit, collecto sibi exercitu magno de Normannis et
*took-up gathered for-himself an-army great of Normans and*
Anglis atque Britannis; cum quo etiam ivit Stephanus, comes
*English and Bretons with whom also went Stephen count*
nobilis Blesensis, levir illius, et Robertus, Flandrensium
*noble of-Blois brother-in-law his and Robert of-the-Flemings*
comes, adiectis multis aliis nobilibus. itaque tanto collegio ab
*count joined many other nobles and-so so-great a-company from*
occidentalibus partibus procedente, paulatim per viam diatim
*the-western parts proceeding little-by-little along the-road daily*
de innumera gente concrevit exercitus exercituum undique
*from countless people grew the-army of-armies from-everywhere*
convenientium, ut de linguis quamplurimis et regionibus
*coming-together so-that of tongues very-many and regions*
multis videretis multitudinem infinitam. qui tamen in
*many you-would-have-seen a-multitude infinite who yet into*
unum exercitum non sunt congregati, donec ad Nicaeam
*one army not were gathered until to Nicaea*

urbem pervenimus. quid ergo dicam? insulae marium et omnia
*the-city we-came what then shall-I-say the-islands of-the-seas and all*
regna terrarum adeo concussa sunt, ut sit credendum
*the-kingdoms of-the-lands so shaken were that it-is to-be-believed*
adimpletam prophetiam Davidis, qui dixit in Psalmo: omnes
*fulfilled the-prophecy of-David who said in the-Psalm all*
gentes quascunque fecisti venient et adorabunt coram
*nations whatever you-have-made shall-come and shall-worship before*
te, Domine, et illud, quod postea illuc usque pervenientes
*you O-Lord and that which afterward thither all-the-way arriving*
merito dixerunt: adorabimus in loco ubi steterunt pedes
*deservedly they-said we-shall-worship in the-place where stood the-feet*
eius. de hoc itinere plurima etiam in prophetiis legimus,
*his about this journey very-many-things also in the-prophecies we-read*
quae revolvendi taedium est. o quantus erat dolor! quanta
*which of-unrolling a-weariness is O how-great was the-grief how-great*
suspiria! quot ploratus! quot lamenta inter amicos! cum
*the-sighs how-many weepings how-many laments among friends when*
maritus uxorem suam delinqueret sibi valde dilectam,
*the-husband the-wife his left to-himself greatly beloved*
pueros quoque suos, possessiones quantaslibet, patrem et
*children also his possessions however-great father and*
matrem, fratres aut parentes. sed quamvis tot lacrimae
*mother brothers or kinsmen but although so-many tears*
pro amicis ituris ante eosdem remanentes sic funderentur,
*for friends about-to-go before those-same remaining thus were-shed*
nequaquam proinde mulcebantur, quin propter amorem
*by-no-means on-that-account were-they-softened but-that for the-love*
Dei cuncta quae possidebant relinquerent: indubitanter
*of-God all-things which they-possessed they-would-leave undoubtingly*
credentes illud centuplum percipere, quod promisit Dominus
*believing that hundredfold to-receive which promised the-Lord*

diligentibus se. tunc coniunx coniugi terminum ponebat
*to-those-loving him then spouse to-spouse a-term set*
revertendi, quod si vita comes fuerit, adnuente Deo, ad
*of-returning that if life companion shall-have-been nodding God to*
eam repatriabit. commendabat eam Domino, osculum ei
*her he-shall-return-home he-commended her to-the-Lord a-kiss to-her*
porrigens et flendo se rediturum pollicens. illa autem
*offering and by-weeping himself about-to-return promising she moreover*
timens nunquam illum se videre amplius, non valebat se
*fearing never him herself to-see further not was-able herself*
sustentare, quin ad terram exanimis rueret; lugens pro
*to-hold-up but-that to the-ground lifeless she-would-fall mourning for*
amico suo, quem perdit vivum quasi iam mortuum. ille
*friend her whom she-loses alive as-if already dead he*
vero tamquam nil habens pietatis, et tamen habens nec
*but as-if nothing having of-tenderness and yet having neither*
fletui uxoris suae nec amicorum quorumcumque maerori
*to-the-weeping of-wife his nor of-friends any to-the-sorrow*
condolens, et tamen clam condolens, duro sic animo
*sympathizing and yet secretly sympathizing with-hard thus mind*
constans abibat. tristitia remanentibus, gaudium autem erat
*steadfast went-away sadness for-those-remaining joy moreover was*
abeuntibus. quid ergo possumus inde dicere? a Domino
*for-those-going-away what then can-we thence to-say by the-Lord*
factum est istud et est mirabile in oculis nostris.
*done is this and it-is wondrous in eyes our*

# De itinere Normanni comitis et de his quae Romae tunc gerebantur

VII · THROUGH ITALY AND ROME

*Fulcher's company crosses Gaul and meets Urban near Lucca. At Rome Guibert's men seize the offerings at Saint Peter's altar and throw stones from the beams, while Urban's men hold a tower. Many turn home. At Bari they pray at Saint Nicholas, but winter keeps Robert of Normandy in Calabria; Robert of Flanders crosses, and many of the poor sell their bows and go home.*

Igitur nos Franci Occidentales per Italiam excursa Gallia
*therefore we Franks western through Italy traversed Gaul*
transeuntes, cum usque Lucam, urbem nominatissimam,
*passing when up-to Lucca the-city most-renowned*
pervenissemus, invenimus prope illam Urbanum apostolicum,
*we-had-come we-found near it Urban the-apostolic-one*
cum quo locuti sunt Robertus Normannus et Stephanus
*with whom spoke have Robert the-Norman and Stephen*
Blesensis comites, nos quoque ceteri qui voluimus; et ab eo
*of-Blois the-counts we also the-others who wished and from him*
benedictione suscepta, Romam gaudenter ivimus. et cum in
*the-blessing received to-Rome gladly went and when into*
basilica beati Petri introissemus, invenimus ante altare homines
*the-basilica of-blessed Peter we-had-entered we-found before the-altar men*
Guidberti, papae stolidi, qui oblationes altari superpositas,
*of-Guibert the-pope stupid who the-offerings on-the-altar placed*
gladios suos in manibus tenentes, inique adripiebant; alii vero
*swords their in hands holding wickedly snatched others but*
super trabes ipsius monasterii cursitabant et inde deorsum
*on the-beams of-that-very monastery ran-about and thence downward*
ubi prostrati orabamus lapides iaciebant. nam cum viderent
*where prostrate we-prayed stones threw for when they-saw*

aliquem Urbano fidelem, ilico eum trucidare volebant. in arce
*anyone to-Urban faithful at-once him to-slaughter they-wished in the-tower*
autem una basilicae inerant homines domini Urbani, qui eam
*moreover one of-the-basilica were-within the-men of-lord Urban who it*
sollicite custodiebant in eiusdem fidelitatem, et adversantibus
*carefully guarded in his fealty and those-opposing*
sibi, prout poterant, obsistebant. proinde satis doluimus, cum
*them as they-could withstood accordingly enough we-grieved when*
tantam atrocitatem ibi fieri vidimus. sed nihil aliud fieri
*such atrocity there to-be-done we-saw but nothing else to-be-done*
nisi a Domino vindictam exoptavimus. nec mora deinde
*except by the-Lord vengeance we-longed-for nor delay then*
facta, multi qui nobiscum illuc usque pervenerant, ad domos
*made many who with-us thither all-the-way had-come to homes*
suas ignavia marcidi redierunt. nos autem per mediam
*their by-cowardice withered returned we moreover through the-middle-of*
Campaniam euntes, venimus Barum, quae civitas optima
*Campania going came to-Bari which city most-excellent*
in maris margine sita est. ibi in ecclesia beati Nicolai
*on of-the-sea the-edge situated is there in the-church of-blessed Nicholas*
fusis ad Deum precibus oravimus; deinde portum adeuntes
*poured-out to God prayers we-prayed then the-port approaching*
transfretare tunc putavimus. sed obsistentibus nautis et
*to-cross then we-thought but opposing-us the-sailors and*
praevaricante fortuna, tempore tunc etiam hiemali inminente,
*playing-false fortune the-time then also of-winter impending*
quod nobis nocuum obiecerunt, oportuit Robertum comitem
*which to-us harmful they-objected it-behooved Robert the-count*
Normanniae in Calabriam secedere et toto tempore
*of-Normandy into Calabria to-withdraw and the-whole time*
brumali illic hiemare. tunc tamen Robertus, comes Flandriae,
*wintry there to-winter then yet Robert the-count of-Flanders*

cum cohorte sua transfretavit. tunc vero plurimi de plebe
*with company his crossed then indeed very-many of the-people*
desolati, inopiam etiam futuram metuentes, arcubus suis ibi
*desolate want also future fearing bows their there*
venditis et baculis peregrinationis resumptis, ad domos suas
*sold and staffs of-pilgrimage taken-up-again to homes their*
ignavi regressi sunt. qua de re tam Deo quam hominibus
*cowards returned have which for thing as-well to-God as to-men*
viles effecti sunt et versum est eis in opprobrium.
*vile made were and turned it-was to-them into reproach*

## De submersione peregrinorum et de miraculo divinitus ostenso

### VIII · THE SHIPWRECK AND THE MARCH TO CONSTANTINOPLE

*On Easter Day 1097 they sail from Brindisi, and one ship splits near the shore, drowning four hundred, on some of whose bodies crosses are found marked in the flesh. Others turn home in fear. They land near Durazzo, cross Bulgaria and the Demon's river, where some drown, ford the Vardar, and reach Constantinople, which lets them in only a few at a time.*

Anno igitur Domini MºXCºVIIº, reducente verno tempore
*in-the-year therefore of-the-Lord the-1097th bringing-back the-spring time*
mensem Martium, comes statim Normannus et comes
*the-month of-March the-count at-once the-Norman and count*
Stephanus Blesensis cum suis omnibus, qui similiter tempus
*Stephen of-Blois with their all who likewise the-time*
exspectaverant opportunum, mare repetierunt. et classe parata,
*had-awaited opportune the-sea sought-again and the-fleet prepared*
nonas Aprilis, quod tunc die sancti Paschae accidit,
*on-the-Nones of-April which then on-the-day of-holy Easter fell*

apud portum Brundisinum rates conscenderunt. o quam
*at the-port of-Brindisi the-ships they-boarded O how*
incognita et investigabilia Dei sunt iudicia! vidimus enim
*unknown and unsearchable of-God are the-judgments we-saw for*
unam navim inter ceteras, quae quasi non impediente aliqua
*one ship among the-others which as-if not hindering any*
occasione per medium eventu subito prope litus subcrepuit.
*occasion through the-middle by-chance sudden near the-shore cracked*
unde CCCC utriusque sexus demersi perierunt, de
*whence four-hundred of-both sex sunk perished about*
quibus laus Deo statim iucunda insonuit: nam cum corpora
*whom praise to-God at-once joyful resounded for when the-bodies*
iam mortua qui circumstabant pro posse collegissent,
*now dead those-who stood-around for the-possible had-gathered*
repertae sunt in carnibus quorundam super spatulas
*found were on the-flesh of-some upon the-shoulder-blades*
scilicet cruces insignitae. nam quod in pannis suis vivi
*namely crosses marked for what on cloths their living*
gestaverant, competebat, Domino volente, in ipsis servitio
*they-had-borne it-befitted the-Lord willing in those-very in-service*
suo sic praeoccupatis idem signum victoriosum sub pignore
*his thus overtaken the-same sign victorious under the-pledge*
fidei permanere; simul etiam tali miraculo patefieri
*of-faith to-remain together also by-such a-miracle to-be-made-plain*
considerantibus merito dignum erat, ipsos defunctos sub
*to-those-considering deservedly worthy it-was those-very dead under*
misericordia Dei iam quietem vitae perennis adeptos
*the-mercy of-God already the-rest of-life everlasting obtained*
fuisse, ut verissimum pateret id compleri quod scriptum
*to-have that most-true might-be-plain that to-be-fulfilled which written*
est: iustus qua morte praeoccupatus fuerit, in
*is the-just-man by-whatever death overtaken he-shall-have-been in*

refrigerio erit. de reliquis autem iam cum morte luctantibus
*refreshment shall-be of the-rest moreover now with death struggling*
vix pauci vitam sibi retinuerunt. equi vero et muli
*scarcely a-few life for-themselves kept the-horses but and mules*
sub undis exstincti sunt, pecunia quoque multa perdita
*under the-waves extinguished were money also much lost*
est. quod infortunium cum videremus, pavore grandi confusi
*was which misfortune when we-saw with-fear great confounded*
sumus, in tantum ut plerique corde debiles, nondum naves
*we-were in so-much that very-many in-heart weak not-yet the-ships*
ingressi, ad domos suas repedarent, peregrinatione dimissa,
*having-entered to homes their went-back the-pilgrimage given-up*
dicentes nunquam amplius in aquam sic deceptricem se
*saying never further in water so deceitful themselves*
infigere. nos autem in omnipotente Deo spem nostram
*to-plunge we moreover in almighty God hope our*
penitus ponentes, artemonibus sursum levatis tubaque
*wholly placing the-foresails up raised and-the-trumpet*
sonante multa, in pelagus nos impegimus, vento flante
*sounding much into the-open-sea we drove a-wind blowing*
aliquantulum. cumque per III dies fluctibus in altis, iam
*somewhat and-when for three days on-the-waves in the-deep now*
vento deficiente, detineremur, IVº die prope urbem
*the-wind failing we-were-held on-the-fourth day near the-city*
Duratium X miliariis, ut aestimo, interstantibus terram adepti
*Durazzo ten miles as I-reckon standing-between land reached*
sumus. duo tamen portus classem nostram susceperunt. tunc
*we-have two yet ports fleet our received then*
quidem iter siccum laetabundi resumpsimus et ante
*indeed the-journey dry rejoicing we-took-up-again and before*
urbem praefatam transivimus. itaque Bulgarorum regiones
*the-city aforesaid we-passed and-so of-the-Bulgarians the-regions*

per montium praerupta et loca satis deserta perreximus.
*through of-the-mountains the-cliffs and places quite deserted we-went-on*
Daemonis ad flumen rapidum tunc venimus omnes, quod ab
*of-the-Demon to the-river rapid then we-came all which by*
incolis loci sic vocitatur, et merito. vidimus enim in
*the-inhabitants of-the-place so is-called and deservedly we-saw for in*
illo quamplures de plebe, dum vadare pedetemptim sperabant,
*it very-many of the-people while to-ford step-by-step they-hoped*
torrentis impetu forti, quos nullus cernentium iuvare poterat,
*of-the-torrent by-the-force strong whom none of-those-seeing to-help could*
mersu perire repentino. qua de re lacrimas multas ibi
*by-a-plunge to-perish sudden which for thing tears many there*
pie dimisimus, et nisi equites cum equis dextrariis opem
*piously we-let-fall and unless the-horsemen with horses war-horses help*
peditibus ferrent, multi simili modo vitam illic perderent.
*to-the-foot-soldiers had-brought many in-like way life there would-have-lost*
tunc iuxta ripam castra nostra metata sunt, ubi nocte una
*then beside the-bank camp our measured-out was where for-a-night one*
pausavimus. montes vasti nobis undique praeerant, in quibus
*we-rested mountains vast to-us on-all-sides stood-before in which*
nemo incola parebat. mane autem aurora clarescente,
*no inhabitant appeared in-the-morning moreover the-dawn brightening*
classicis sonantibus, iter nostrum adripuimus conscendendo
*the-trumpets sounding journey our we-took-up by-climbing*
montem, quem Bagulatum nuncupant. postea montanis
*the-mountain which Bagulatus they-call afterward the-mountains*
postpositis urbibusque Lucretia, Botella, Bofinat, Stella,
*put-behind and-the-cities Lucretia Botella Bofinat Stella*
pervenimus ad flumen, quod vocatur Bardarium. et quod non
*we-came to the-river which is-called Vardar and which not*
nisi navigio transiri solitum erat, opitulante Deo, laetanter
*except by-boat to-be-crossed accustomed was helping God gladly*

vadando transmeavimus. quo transito, sequenti die ante
*by-fording we-crossed which crossed on-the-following day before*
urbem Thessalonicam, bonis omnibus abundantem, tentoria
*the-city Thessalonica in-goods all abounding tents*
tetendimus nostra. mora autem per IV dies ibi facta, deinde
*we-stretched our the-delay moreover for four days there made then*
Macedoniam transeuntes, per vallem Philippensium et per
*Macedonia passing-through through the-valley of-the-Philippians and through*
Crisopolim atque Christopolim, Praetoriam, Messinopolim,
*Chrysopolis and Christopolis Praetoria Mosynopolis*
Macram, Traianopolim, Neapolim et Panadox, Rodosto
*Macra Traianopolis Neapolis and Panadox Rodosto*
et Eracleam, Salumbriam et Naturam Constantinopolim
*and Heraclea Selymbria and Natura to-Constantinople*
pervenimus. ante quam urbem tentoriis nostris extensis,
*we-came before which city the-tents our stretched*
per XIV dies lassitudinem nostram adleviavimus. et quia
*for fourteen days weariness our we-relieved and because*
civitatem illam ingredi non quivimus, quoniam imperatori
*the-city that to-enter not we-could since to-the-emperor*
non placuit (timebat enim ne forte aliquod damnum ei
*not it-pleased he-feared for lest perhaps some harm to-him*
machinaremur), stipendium nostrum cotidianum extra muros
*we-might-contrive provisions our daily outside the-walls*
nos emere oportuit, quod praecepto imperatoris nobis cives
*us to-buy it-behooved which by-the-precept of-the-emperor to-us the-citizens*
adferebant. nec permittebatur nobis introire in civitatem nisi
*brought nor was-it-allowed to-us to-enter into the-city except*
V tantum insimul aut VI horatim; aliis sic egredientibus,
*five only together or six hourly others so going-out*
aliis vero ingredientibus orandi causa in ecclesiis.
*others but going-in of-praying for-the-sake in the-churches*

# De urbe Constantinopolitana et itinere peregrinorum usque ad Nicaeam

## IX · CONSTANTINOPLE AND THE ROAD TO NICAEA

*Fulcher marvels at Constantinople's monasteries, palaces, relics, and riches. The princes swear fealty to the emperor as Bohemond and Godfrey had done, though Raymond refuses, and the emperor gives them coin, silk, and horses. They cross the Arm to Nicaea, already besieged since mid-May, and weep over the bones of untrained pilgrims the Turks had slain.*

O quanta civitas nobilis et decora! quot monasteria, quot
*O how-great a-city noble and seemly how-many monasteries how-many*
palatia sunt in ea, opere miro fabrefacta! quot etiam in
*palaces are in it with-work wondrous wrought how-many also in*
plateis vel vicis opera ad spectandum mirabilia! taedium est
*the-squares or streets works for seeing wondrous a-weariness it-is*
magnum recitare quanta sit ibi bonorum omnium opulentia,
*great to-recount how-great is there of-goods all the-opulence*
auri scilicet, argenti, palliorum multiformium, sanctorumque
*of-gold namely of-silver of-cloaks many-shaped and-of-holy*
reliquiarum. omni etiam tempore navigio frequenti cuncta
*relics at-every also time by-shipping frequent all*
hominum necessaria illuc adferunt negotiatores. habentur
*of-men the-necessaries thither bring merchants are-held*
ibi, ut arbitror, fere XX milia spadones in habitatione
*there as I-think almost twenty thousand eunuchs in dwelling*
adsidua. cum autem nos satis fatigatos recreassemus,
*constant when moreover ourselves sufficiently wearied had-refreshed*
tunc optimates nostri accepto consilio pepigerunt foedus
*then the-chief-men our received counsel struck a-treaty*
cum imperatore sub iureiurando, angariante ipso, quod
*with the-emperor under oath compelling he-himself which*

iam fecerant etiam qui ante nos praeiverant, domnus
*already had-done also those-who before us had-gone-before lord*
Boamundus et dux Godefridus. comes autem Raimundus
*Bohemond and duke Godfrey count moreover Raymond*
id facere tunc recusavit. comes vero Flandriae, sicut alii,
*it to-do then refused the-count but of-Flanders as the-others*
iusiurandum illud fecit. erat enim omnibus hoc necesse,
*oath that made was for to-all this necessary*
ut sic cum imperatore amicitiam consolidarent, sine cuius
*that so with the-emperor friendship they-should-consolidate without whose*
consilio et auxilio nostrum iter nequivimus expedire, neque
*counsel and help our journey we-could-not to-accomplish nor*
illi, qui nos erant subsecuturi eodem tramite. quibus
*those who us were about-to-follow by-the-same path to-whom*
ideo praebuit ipse imperator de nummismatibus suis
*therefore offered he-himself the-emperor of coins his*
et de pannis sericis quantum placuit; et de equis et de
*and of cloths silken as-much-as pleased and of horses and of*
pecunia, qua nimis indigebant ad tantum iter explendum.
*money which very-much they-needed for so-great a-journey to-be-completed*
quo peracto, mare, quod dicunt Brachium S. Georgii,
*which completed the-sea which they-call the-Arm of-Saint George*
transfretavimus. ad Nicaeam urbem tunc properavimus, quam
*we-crossed to Nicaea the-city then we-hastened which*
domnus Boamundus et dux Godefridus et comes Raimundus
*lord Bohemond and duke Godfrey and count Raymond*
atque comes Flandriae iam a medio Maii obsidione
*and the-count of-Flanders already from the-middle of-May with-siege*
cingebant; quam urbem Turci Orientales tunc possidebant,
*were-girding which city the-Turks Eastern then possessed*
acres nimis et arcubus sagittarii. hi quidem de Perside
*fierce very and with-bows archers these indeed from Persia*

iam a L annis, Euphrate fluvio transito, terram Romaniae
*already for fifty years the-Euphrates river crossed the-land of-Romania*
totam usque Nicomediam urbem sibi subiugarant. o
*whole up-to Nicomedia the-city to-themselves had-subjugated O*
quot capita caesa et ossa occisorum ultra Nicomediam
*how-many heads cut-off and bones of-the-slain beyond Nicomedia*
prope mare illud in campis iacentium tunc invenimus! quos
*near the-sea that in the-fields lying then we-found whom*
ipso anno ignaros et usui sagittario modernos Turci
*in-that-very year ignorant and in-use of-the-bow novices the-Turks*
peremerant: unde moti pietate lacrimas multas ibi perfudimus.
*had-slain whence moved by-pity tears many there we-poured-out*

## De his, quae in obsidione Nicaena gesta fuerunt, et redditione eiusdem urbis

### X · THE SIEGE AND SURRENDER OF NICAEA

*The besiegers welcome the newcomers in June; the Turks had already been repulsed and withdrawn. The united army is reckoned at six hundred thousand fighters, a hundred thousand in mail, though many have gone home or died. Engines batter the walls, the Turks hook up the Christian dead, and boats dragged from Civetot close the lake. After five weeks the Turks yield the city to the emperor, who rewards the princes.*

Cumque audissent qui Nicaeam obsidebant, ut dictum est,
*and-when had-heard those-who Nicaea besieged as said it-is*
venire principes nostros, comitem scilicet Normannorum
*to-be-coming princes our the-count namely of-the-Normans*
Stephanumque Blesensem, gaudenter eis et nobis obviam
*and-Stephen of-Blois gladly to-them and to-us to-meet*
venerunt et usque ad locum, in quo tentoria nostra
*they-came and all-the-way to the-place in which tents our*

extendimus, ante urbem in partem australem deduxerunt. iam
*we-stretched before the-city on the-side southern they-led now*
semel Turci adgregati se praeparaverant, volentes vel
*once the-Turks gathered themselves had-prepared wishing either*
obsidionem ab urbe si possent excutere vel de militibus
*the-siege from the-city if they-could to-shake-off or with knights*
suis urbem melius munire. sed a nostris ferociter repulsi,
*their the-city better to-fortify but by our-men fiercely driven-back*
occisi sunt fere ex eis CC. cum autem viderent Francos
*killed were about of them two-hundred when moreover they-saw the-Franks*
tam animosos et probitate validissimos, secesserunt refugi
*so spirited and in-prowess most-strong they-withdrew fugitives*
in Romaniam interiorem, quoadusque tempus opportunum
*into Romania the-inner until the-time opportune*
eos adgrediendi sentirent. nos quippe in hebdomada Iunii
*them of-attacking they-should-perceive we indeed in the-week of-June*
prima postremi ad obsidionem venimus. tunc de exercitibus
*first last to the-siege came then of armies*
plurimis unus illic exercitus effectus est, quem qui de
*very-many one there army made was which those-who of*
numero callebant, sexies centum milia ad bellum valentium
*number were-skilled six-times a-hundred thousand for war able*
aestimabant, quorum C milia loricis et galeis
*reckoned of-whom a-hundred thousand with-hauberks and helmets*
muniti erant, exceptis inermibus, videlicet clericis, monachis,
*fortified were except the-unarmed namely clerics monks*
mulieribus et parvulis. quid autem insuper? si omnes, qui
*women and little-ones what moreover besides if all who*
de domibus suis egressi sunt, devotum iter incipientes
*from homes their went-out have the-devout journey beginning*
illic simul adessent, proculdubio sexagies centum milia
*there together had-been-present without-doubt sixty-times a-hundred thousand*

bellatorum adessent. sed alii de Roma, alii de
*of-warriors would-have-been-present but some from Rome others from*
Apulia vel de Hungaria sive Dalmatia, labore recusato,
*Apulia or from Hungary or Dalmatia the-labor refused*
domos suas redierant vel in locis multis, milibus multotiens
*to-homes their had-returned or in places many thousands many-times*
occisis, sed et nobiscum euntes infirmati finierant defuncti.
*killed but also with-us going sickened had-ended dead*
multa videretis coemeteria in callibus, in campis, in lucis
*many you-would-see cemeteries along the-paths in the-fields in the-groves*
de peregrinis nostris sic sepultis. sciendum, quia quamdiu
*of pilgrims our thus buried it-is-to-be-known that as-long-as*
Nicaeam urbem circumsedimus, navigio marino, concessu
*Nicaea the-city we-besieged by-shipping sea by-the-leave*
imperatoris adlatus est nobis victus ad emendum. tunc heroes
*of-the-emperor brought was to-us food for buying then heroes*
nostri fecerunt machinas fieri, arietes, scrofas, turres
*our caused engines to-be-made rams sows towers*
ligneas, petrarias. distendebantur arcubus sagittae, tormentis
*wooden stone-throwers were-drawn with-bows arrows by-catapults*
iaculabantur lapides, hostes nostri nobis nosque illis
*were-hurled stones the-enemies our to-us and-we to-them*
vicem certaminis pro posse reddebamus. saepe armati
*the-exchange of-combat for the-possible returned often armed*
cum machinis nostris urbem adsiliebamus, sed muro forti
*with engines our the-city we-assaulted but the-wall strong*
nobis obstante, cassabatur adsultus. saepe de Turcis, saepe
*to-us opposing was-made-void the-assault often of the-Turks often*
de Francis vel sagittis vel lapidibus percussi interibant. vere
*of the-Franks either by-arrows or by-stones struck perished truly*
doleretis et pietate suspiraretis, cum aliquem de nostris
*you-would-grieve and with-pity would-sigh when anyone of ours*

prope murum quoquomodo trucidassent et submissis uncis
*near the-wall in-whatever-way they-had-slaughtered and let-down hooks*
ferreis, quos funibus deorsum demittebant, corpus perempti
*iron which by-ropes downward they-let-down the-body of-the-slain*
sursum ad se rapiebant, quod nullus nostrum audebat
*upward to themselves they-snatched which none of-us dared*
nec poterat ab eis extorquere. corpore sic exspoliato, cadaver
*nor could from them to-wrest the-body thus despoiled the-corpse*
foris iaculabantur. tunc naviculas aliquantas de Civetot usque
*outside they-hurled then little-boats some from Civetot up-to*
Nicaeam cum bobus et funibus per terram adtraximus, quas
*Nicaea with oxen and ropes over land we-dragged which*
in lacum iuxta urbem imposuimus ad custodiendum urbis
*into the-lake beside the-city we-put for guarding of-the-city*
introitum, ne alimentis civitas muniretur. sed cum per
*the-entrance lest with-food the-city be-fortified but when for*
V septimanas obsidione urbem fatigassemus et multotiens
*five weeks by-siege the-city we-had-wearied and many-times*
Turcos adsultibus pavidos fecissemus, facto interim prolocutu
*the-Turks by-assaults fearful had-made made meanwhile a-parley*
per internuntios apud imperatorem, callide reddiderunt ei
*through go-betweens with the-emperor cunningly they-surrendered to-him*
urbem, cum iam vi et ingenio valde esset coercita.
*the-city when now by-force and by-skill greatly it-had-been constrained*
tunc Turci intromiserunt in eam Turcopolos ab imperatore
*then the-Turks let-in into it Turcopoles by the-emperor*
illuc missos, qui urbem cum pecunia interna imperatori, sicut
*thither sent who the-city with the-money within to-the-emperor as*
eis praeceperat, servaverunt. quapropter pecunia illa tota
*to-them he-had-commanded kept wherefore money that all*
retenta, iussit imperator de auro suo et argento atque palliis
*retained ordered the-emperor of gold his and silver and cloaks*

proceribus nostris dari; peditibus quoque distribui
*to-the-nobles our to-be-given to-the-foot-soldiers also to-be-distributed*
fecit de nummis suis aeneis, quos vocant tartarones.
*he-caused of coins his bronze which they-call tartarons*
die siquidem illo, quo Nicaea sic est comprehensa
*on-the-day indeed that on-which Nicaea thus was taken*
sive reddita, Iunius mensis solstitio repercussus est.
*or surrendered June the-month at-the-solstice struck-back was*

## De bello exitiali Christianorum cum Turcis

### XI · THE DEADLY BATTLE AT DORYLAEUM

*Two days from Nicaea, warned of an ambush, the army forms and pitches camp by a reed-bed. Kilij-Arslan's three hundred and sixty thousand archers fall on them while Godfrey, Raymond, and Hugh are away on another road. The Franks, unused to such war, are driven back and huddle like sheep, confessing their sins to the bishop and priests, while the princes resist.*

Cum igitur barones nostri ab imperatore concessum
*when therefore barons our from the-emperor leave*
abeundi accepissent, IIIº Kal. Julii a Nicaea
*of-going-away had-received on-the-third-day-before the-Kalends of-July from Nicaea*
discessimus interiores Romaniae partes adituri. sed cum
*we-departed the-inner of-Romania parts about-to-approach but when*
per II dies iter egissemus nostrum, nuntiatum nobis est
*for two days journey we-had-made our announced to-us it-was*
quod Turci, praetensis nobis insidiis, in planis, per quae
*that the-Turks stretched-out for-us ambushes in the-plains through which*
transituros nos putabant, proeliaturi exspectabant. hoc autem
*about-to-pass us they-thought about-to-fight were-waiting this moreover*
cum audissemus, nihil audacitatis ob id amisimus. sed
*when we-had-heard nothing of-boldness on-account-of it we-lost but*

cum vespere illo speculatores nostri plures ex illis a longe
*when in-evening that scouts our many of them from far-off*
aspexissent, statim nos inde munierunt: propterea nostra
*had-seen at-once us thereupon they-forewarned therefore tents*
tentoria nocte illa conservari undique vigilibus fecimus.
*our in-night that to-be-kept on-all-sides by-watchmen we-caused*
mane autem, quod accidit Kal. Julii, sumptis armis,
*in-the-morning moreover which fell on-the-Kalends of-July taken-up arms*
monente cornu, adversus eos per alas constituti, tribunis
*warning the-horn against them in wings drawn-up the-tribunes*
et centurionibus cohortes et centurias decenter ducentibus,
*and centurions the-cohorts and centuries fittingly leading*
vexillis levatis, ordinate ire coepimus. hora itaque diei
*banners raised in-order to-go we-began at-the-hour and-so of-the-day*
secunda, ecce praecursores eorum speculatoribus nostris
*second behold the-forerunners their to-scouts our*
adpropiaverunt. quod cum audiremus, tentoria nostra iuxta
*drew-near which when we-heard tents our beside*
quoddam harundinetum metari fecimus, ut expeditius,
*a-certain reed-bed to-be-measured-out we-caused that more-readily*
clitellis depositis, promptiores ad bellandum essemus. quo
*packs laid-down readier for fighting we-might-be which*
facto, en Turci, quorum et admiratus et princeps erat
*done behold the-Turks of-whom both the-emir and prince was*
Soliman, qui Nicaeam urbem et Romaniam in potestate sua
*Kilij-Arslan who Nicaea the-city and Romania in power his*
tenebat, congregatis sibi Turcis, scilicet paganis Persicis,
*held gathered to-himself Turks namely pagan Persians*
qui XXX dierum itinere et eo amplius in auxilium
*who of-thirty days by-a-journey and that more to help*
eius mandati venerant; aderantque cum eo quamplures
*his summoned had-come and-there-were-present with him very-many*

admirati vel principes, videlicet Admircaradigum, Miriathos
*emirs or princes namely Amir-Karaja Miriathos*
multique alii: qui omnes insimul erant deputati numero
*and-many others who all together were reckoned in-number*
CCCLX milia pugnatorum, scilicet sagittariorum.
*three-hundred-and-sixty thousand of-fighters namely of-archers*
mos enim eorum est talibus uti armis. equites erant omnes.
*custom for their is such to-use arms horsemen were all*
nos autem utrinque pedites et equites. nobis vero tunc
*we moreover on-both-sides foot-soldiers and horsemen from-us indeed then*
deerant dux Godefridus et comes Raimundus atque Hugo
*were-lacking duke Godfrey and count Raymond and Hugh*
Magnus, qui per duos dies, nescio qua de causa, se
*the-Great who for two days I-know-not what for reason themselves*
a nobis subtraxerant cum gente magna nostrorum tramite
*from us had-withdrawn with people great of-ours by-a-path*
bifurco. unde nobis inrestaurabile damnum accidit tam de
*forked whence to-us irreparable loss happened as-well in*
nostris interfectis quam de Turcis non occisis vel retentis.
*ours killed as in Turks not slain or taken*
et quia tarde legatos nostros inde habuerunt, ideo nobis
*and because late messengers our thence they-had therefore to-us*
tarde succurrerunt. Turci autem ululatibus concrepantes et
*late they-came-to-aid the-Turks moreover with-howls rattling and*
pluviam sagittarum vehementer emittentes; nos ilico stupefacti
*a-rain of-arrows vehemently sending-forth we at-once stupefied*
mortique proximi, etiam multi laesi, mox dorsa fugae dedimus.
*and-to-death nearest also many hurt soon backs to-flight gave*
nec hoc mirandum, quia nobis omnibus tale bellum erat
*nor this to-be-wondered-at because to-us all such war was*
incognitum. iamiamque ex altera parte harundineti agmina
*unknown now-and-now from the-other side of-the-reed-bed columns*

densa ex eis usque papiliones nostros vehementer inruerant,
*dense of them up-to tents our vehemently had-rushed*
qui res nostras introgressi adripiebant et de gente nostra
*who things our having-entered snatched and of people our*
occidebant: cum, Deo disponente, Hugonis Magni et comitis
*killed when God disposing of-Hugh the-Great and of-count*
Raimundi et ducis Godefridi praecursores tale ad infortunium
*Raymond and of-duke Godfrey the-forerunners such to the-misfortune*
a postrema parte accurrerunt. et cum usque ad tabernacula
*from the-rear side ran-up and when all-the-way to tents*
nostra iam fugati essemus, statim qui ingressi fuerant
*our now put-to-flight we-had-been at-once those-who entered had*
a papilionibus nostris se removerunt, putantes propter
*from tents our themselves removed thinking on-account-of*
eos Turcos nos tam cito regredi. sed quod audaciam
*those Turks us so quickly to-go-back but what as-boldness*
vel probitatem suspicati sunt, pavorem grandem sperare
*or prowess suspected have fear great to-expect*
possent. quid ergo dicam? nos quidem omnes in unum
*they-could what then shall-I-say we indeed all into one*
conglobati tanquam oves clausae ovili, trepidi et pavefacti
*massed like sheep shut-in in-the-fold trembling and terrified*
ab hostibus undique circumvallabamur, ut nullatenus
*by the-enemies on-all-sides were-hemmed-in so-that in-no-way*
aliquorsum procedere valeremus. quod nobis visum est
*anywhere to-advance we-could which to-us seemed it-was*
propter peccata nostra sic contigisse. nam quosdam luxuria
*on-account-of sins our so to-have-happened for some lust*
polluebat, quosdam vero avaritia vel quaelibet aliqua iniquitas
*was-polluting some but avarice or whatever other iniquity*
corrumpebat. clamor erat ingens aethera feriens, virorum atque
*was-corrupting the-shout was huge the-heavens striking of-men and*

mulierum ac infantum necnon et paganorum, qui super nos
*of-women and of-infants and-also and of-the-pagans who upon us*
inruebant. iamque nobis nulla spes vitae. tunc reos nos
*were-rushing and-now for-us no hope of-life then guilty ourselves*
et peccatores esse fatebamur, misericordiam a Deo devote
*and sinners to-be we-confessed mercy from God devoutly*
postulantes. aderat ibi episcopus Podiensis, patronus noster,
*begging was-present there the-bishop of-Le-Puy patron our*
et IV alii; aderantque sacerdotes quamplurimi, albis
*and four others and-there-were-present priests very-many in-white*
induti vestimentis, qui Dominum humillime deposcebant,
*clothed garments who the-Lord most-humbly besought*
ut virtutem hostium nostrorum prosterneret et dona
*that the-strength of-the-enemies our he-would-lay-low and the-gifts*
misericordiae suae nobis infunderet. plorando cantabant,
*of-mercy his on-us would-pour weeping they-sang*
cantando plorabant. tunc multi ad eos currebant, qui
*singing they-wept then many to them ran who*
confestim mori timentes confitebantur eis peccata sua. tunc
*at-once to-die fearing confessed to-them sins their then*
proceres nostri, Robertus Normanniae comes et Stephanus
*nobles our Robert of-Normandy count and Stephen*
comes Blesensis et Robertus comes Flandriae, Boamundus
*count of-Blois and Robert count of-Flanders Bohemond*
quoque pro posse illis resistebant et eos saepe invadere
*also for the-possible them resisted and them often to-attack*
nitebantur. ipsi quidem a Turcis fortiter impetebantur.
*strove they indeed by the-Turks strongly were-assailed*

## De fuga Turcorum et victoria Christianorum

### XII · THE TURKS FLEE

*Perhaps appeased by their prayers, God gives them strength. Seeing their comrades come up, the Franks take heart and drive the Turks over hills and valleys to their camp, taking camels and horses. The Turks flee for two more days with no one pursuing, which Fulcher calls a miracle; then the army marches on, and a day of grievous thirst kills some men and women.*

Sed forsitan supplicatione nostra Dominus placatus (quia nec
*but perhaps by-supplication our the-Lord appeased because neither*
nobilitatis pompae nec armis lucidis triumphare favet, sed
*of-nobility to-the-pomp nor to-arms bright to-triumph he-grants but*
menti purae et virtutibus divinis munitae in necessitate pie
*to-a-mind pure and with-virtues divine fortified in need piously*
subvenit), paulatim vigorem nobis tunc praestitit et Turcos
*he-comes-to-aid little-by-little vigor to-us then he-supplied and the-Turks*
magis magisque debilitavit. nam visis consociis nostris, qui
*more and-more weakened for seen comrades our who*
postremi ad adiuvandum nos properabant, laudando Deum,
*last for helping us were-hastening by-praising God*
audaciam resumpsimus et per turbas et cohortes eis resistere
*boldness we-took-up-again and in throngs and cohorts them to-resist*
nisi sumus. heu! quot de nostris die illo post nos lente
*striven we-have alas how-many of ours on-day that after us slowly*
venientes in via occiderunt! a prima siquidem hora diei
*coming on the-road perished from the-first indeed hour of-the-day*
usque ad sextam nos, ut dixi, angustiae coercuerunt: sed
*all-the-way to the-sixth us as I-said straits constrained but*
tunc paulatim nobis animatis et de sociis nostris concretis,
*then little-by-little we heartened and by comrades our grown-together*

adfuit mirabiliter divina gratia; et quasi momento subitaneo
*was-present wondrously divine grace and as-if in-a-moment sudden*
Turci omnes visibus nostris dorsa fugitivi dederunt. nos
*the-Turks all to-sights our backs fugitive gave we*
autem post eos vehementer vociferantes per montes et valles
*moreover after them vehemently shouting through mountains and valleys*
persecuti eos sumus: quos fugare non cessavimus, donec
*pursued them we-have whom to-put-to-flight not we-ceased until*
anteriores nostri cursores ad tentoria eorum pervenerunt. ubi
*the-foremost our runners to the-tents their came where*
alii de rebus eorum et de tentoriis ipsis eorundem camelos
*some with the-things their and with the-tents themselves of-the-same camels*
et equos plures oneraverunt, quos pro timore illic reliquerant;
*and horses many loaded which for fear there they-had-left*
alii vero Turcos fugientes usque ad noctem persecuti sunt.
*others but the-Turks fleeing all-the-way to night pursued have*
sed quia famelici erant equi nostri et fatigati, paucos
*but because famished were the-horses our and wearied few*
ex eis retinuimus. grande autem miraculum Dei fuit, quod
*of them we-held great moreover a-miracle of-God it-was that*
die crastino et tertio non cessaverunt fugere, quamvis
*on-the-day following and the-third not they-ceased to-flee although*
eos nullus, nisi Deus, amplius fugaret. de tanta autem
*them no-one except God further put-to-flight at so-great moreover*
victoria nos laetissimi facti, Deo gratias omnes exsolvimus,
*a-victory we most-glad made to-God thanks all paid*
quia noluit iter nostrum omnino adnihilari, sed
*because he-was-unwilling journey our wholly to-be-brought-to-nothing but*
ad honorem sui Christianismi honorabilius solito prosperari:
*to the-honor of-his Christendom more-honorably than-usual to-prosper*
unde ab Oriente in Occidentem fama personabit perennis.
*whence from the-East into the-West the-fame shall-resound everlasting*

tunc quidem iter nostrum modeste calcavimus: die uno
*then indeed the-journey our modestly we-trod on-day one*
sitim gravissimam tolerantes, qua viri aliquanti et mulieres
*thirst most-grievous enduring by-which men some and women*
valde vexati exstincti sunt! Turci vero ante nos fugientes
*greatly vexed extinguished were the-Turks but before us fleeing*
catervatim mansiones per Romaniam sibi quaesierunt.
*in-troops dwellings through Romania for-themselves sought*

## De indigentia Christianorum

### XIII · WANT, AND THE MANY TONGUES

*Through Pisidian Antioch and Iconium the army often lacks bread in a Romania the Turks have laid waste, yet God feeds them as he fed the five thousand. Men load wethers, goats, pigs, and dogs, and knights ride oxen. So many tongues march together that Fulcher could not answer a Breton or a German, yet they live as brothers, returning what they find.*

Tunc venimus Antiochiam, quam parvam praenominant, in
*then we-came to-Antioch which little they-call in*
provincia Pisidiae, deinde Iconium, in quibus regionibus
*the-province of-Pisidia then to-Iconium in which regions*
saepissime pane cibariisque satis indiguimus. nam Romaniam,
*very-often of-bread and-provisions quite we-were-in-want for Romania*
quae terra est optima et valde fertilis bonorum omnium,
*which a-land is most-excellent and very fertile in-goods all*
invenimus nimis a Turcis vastatam et depopulatam.
*we-found very by the-Turks laid-waste and depopulated*
multotiens tamen videretis tantam gentis multitudinem de
*many-times yet you-would-see so-great of-people a-multitude from*
raris culturis, quas interdum per loca inveniebamus, bene
*the-scattered tillages which at-times through places we-found well*

refocillari supplemento illius Dei, qui de V panibus et IIbus
*to-be-refreshed by-the-supply of-that God who with five loaves and two*
piscibus V milia hominum pavit. inde satis laetabamur et
*fishes five thousand men fed thence enough we-rejoiced and*
congaudentes dona misericordiae Dei haec esse profitebamur.
*rejoicing-together gifts of-the-mercy of-God these to-be we-professed*
tunc vere vel rideretis vel forsitan pietate lacrimaremini,
*then truly either you-would-laugh or perhaps with-pity would-weep*
cum multi nostrum iumentis egentes, quia multa de
*when many of-us for-beasts-of-burden lacking because many of*
suis iam perdiderant, verveces, capras, sues, canes de
*their-own already they-had-lost wethers goats pigs dogs with*
rebus suis, scilicet pannis, panibus seu qualibet peregrinorum
*things their namely cloths loaves or any of-the-pilgrims*
sarcina usui necessaria onerabant. quarum bestiolarum tergora
*baggage for-use necessary loaded of-which little-beasts the-backs*
videbamus mole fascis esse corrupta. equites etiam
*we-saw by-the-mass of-the-bundle to-be broken the-horsemen also*
boves cum armis suis interdum scandebant. sed quis unquam
*oxen with arms their at-times mounted but who ever*
audivit tot tribus linguae in uno exercitu, cum ibi adessent
*heard so-many tribes of-tongue in one army when there were-present*
Franci, Flandri, Frisi, Galli, Allobroges, Lotharingi, Alemanni,
*Franks Flemings Frisians Gauls Allobroges Lotharingians Alamans*
Baioarii, Normanni, Angli, Scoti, Aquitani, Itali, Daci, Apuli,
*Bavarians Normans English Scots Aquitanians Italians Danes Apulians*
Iberi, Britones, Graeci, Armeni? quod si vellet me aliquis
*Iberians Bretons Greeks Armenians that if should-wish me any*
Britannus vel Teutonicus interrogare, neutro respondere
*Briton or Teuton to-question to-neither to-answer*
sapere possem. sed qui linguis diversi eramus, tamquam
*to-know-how could-I but we-who in-tongues diverse were like*

fratres sub dilectione Dei et proximi unanimes esse
*brothers under the-love of-God and of-neighbor of-one-mind to-be*
videbamur. nam si de rebus suis aliquis aliquid perdidisset,
*we-seemed for if of things his anyone anything had-lost*
per plurimos dies id diligenter qui invenisset conservabat,
*for very-many days it diligently he-who had-found kept*
donec inquirendo perditorem inveniret et inventum ei
*until by-inquiring the-loser he-found and found to-him*
redderet. hoc enim competit his, qui recte peregrinantur.
*returned-it this for befits those who rightly make-pilgrimage*

## De actibus et probitate comitis Balduini, fratris Godefridi, et de redditione urbis Edessenae quae Rohais dicitur

XIV · BALDWIN WINS EDESSA

---

*At Heraclea a sword-shaped sign appears in the sky. Fulcher leaves the army with Baldwin, who had seized Tarsus from Tancred and now takes castles toward the Euphrates, Turbessel among them. The prince of Edessa offers to adopt him as son and heir; crossing the river with eighty knights, Baldwin is welcomed and adopted, and when the citizens kill their prince, they make him lord.*

Cum autem ad Eracleam urbem ventum est, vidimus in caelo
*when moreover to Heraclea the-city come it-was we-saw in the-sky*
signum quoddam, quod alburno splendore fulgens apparuit in
*a-sign certain which with-white splendor shining appeared in*
modum ensis figuratum, cuspide versus Orientem protento.
*the-manner of-a-sword shaped the-point toward the-East stretched-out*
sed quod futurum promittebat nesciebamus, sed praesentia
*but what future it-promised we-knew-not but present-things*
et futura Domino committebamus. ad oppidum quoddam
*and future to-the-Lord we-committed to a-town certain*

optimum tunc venimus, quod Mariscum nominatur, ubi
*most-excellent then we-came which Marash is-named where*
per III dies, quiete habita, morati sumus. sed cum exhinc
*for three days rest had delayed we-have but when thence*
viam unius diei proculcassemus et iam non longe ab
*the-road of-one day we-had-trodden and now not far from*
Antiochia Syriae nisi tribus dietis essemus, ab exercitu
*Antioch of-Syria except by-three day's-journeys we-were from the-army*
ego Fulcherus discessi et cum domno Balduino comite,
*I Fulcher departed and with lord Baldwin the-count*
Godefridi ducis fratre, in sinistrae partem provinciae
*of-Godfrey the-duke the-brother into of-the-left the-part of-the-province*
diverti. erat quippe miles quam optimus, qui antea
*turned-aside he-was indeed a-knight as excellent-as-possible who before*
relicto exercitu cum illis, quos secum duxit, urbem, quam
*left the-army with those whom with-himself he-led the-city which*
dicunt Tarsum Ciliciae, ausu magno ceperat, quam tamen
*they-call Tarsus of-Cilicia with-daring great had-taken which yet*
Tancredo abstulit, cum iam homines suos intromisisset,
*from-Tancred he-took-away when already men his he-had-let-in*
Turcis ei consentientibus. relictisque in ea custodibus, ad
*the-Turks to-him consenting and-left in it guards to*
exercitum rediit. itaque confidens in Domino et in valore
*the-army he-returned and-so trusting in the-Lord and in worth*
suo, collegit secum milites paucos profectusque est versus
*his he-gathered with-himself knights few and-set-out has toward*
Euphraten fluvium et comprehendit ibi plurima castra tam
*the-Euphrates river and seized there very-many castles as-much*
vi quam ingenio. inter quae cepit unum, quod vocatur
*by-force as by-skill among which he-took one which is-called*
Turbezel, peroptimum. quod pacifice reddiderunt ei qui
*Turbessel most-excellent which peaceably surrendered to-him those-who*

in eo habitabant Armeni, et alia plura huic sunt subdita.
*in it dwelt Armenians and others many to-this-one are subject*
Cum autem fama de eo longe lateque iam circumvolasset,
*when moreover the-fame about him far and-wide now had-flown-around*
misit ad eum legationem princeps civitatis Edessae, quae
*sent to him an-embassy the-prince of-the-city of-Edessa which*
civitas est nominatissima et de bonis terrae uberrima.
*city is most-renowned and in goods of-the-land most-fruitful*
est illa in Mesopotamia Syriae trans flumen praedictum
*is it in Mesopotamia of-Syria beyond the-river aforesaid*
Euphratem XX fere miliariis et ab Antiochia distans quasi
*Euphrates twenty almost miles and from Antioch distant about*
C vel paulo plus. mandatus est itaque Balduinus, ut
*a-hundred or a-little more summoned was and-so Baldwin that*
illuc iret et efficerentur invicem amici, quamdiu ambo
*thither he-should-go and they-should-be-made mutually friends as-long-as both*
ipsi viverent, tamquam pater et filius. quod si dux
*themselves should-live like father and son so-that if the-duke*
ipse Edessenus forte obiret, statim Balduinus, ac si filius
*himself of-Edessa perhaps should-die at-once Baldwin as if the-son*
esset illius, urbem et terram suam totam in hereditatem
*he-were of-him the-city and land his all in inheritance*
perpetuo possideret. non enim habebat filium aut filiam. et
*forever should-possess not for he-had a-son or a-daughter and*
quoniam a Turcis se defendere nequibat, volebat Graecus
*since from the-Turks himself to-defend he-could-not wished Greek*
ille et se et terram suam ab ipso Balduino defendi,
*that both himself and land his by that-very Baldwin to-be-defended*
quem et milites suos bellatores fortissimos esse audierat.
*whom and knights his warriors most-strong to-be he-had-heard*
hoc audito, postquam legati sub iureiurando fecerunt eum
*this heard after the-envoys under oath made him*

inde credulum, cum minimo exercitulo suo, scilicet LXXX
*thereupon believing with the-smallest little-army his namely eighty*
militibus, pergens transiit Euphratem. quo transito, nocte
*knights going-on he-crossed the-Euphrates which crossed by-night*
tota perpropere prope Saracenorum castra, hinc et inde
*the-whole very-hastily near of-the-Saracens the-castles on-this-side and on-that*
linquentes ea, valde pavidi perreximus. quod cum audissent
*leaving them greatly fearful we-went-on which when had-heard*
qui in Samosate oppido forti habitabant, insidias nobis
*those-who in Samosata the-town strong dwelt ambushes for-us*
in via, per quam nos ituros arbitrabantur, praetenderunt.
*on the-road by which us about-to-go they-thought stretched-out*
sed cum nocte alia quidam Armenus in castello suo
*but when on-a-night another a-certain Armenian in castle his*
diligenter nos hospitatus esset, intimatum nobis est, quod ab
*diligently us lodged had made-known to-us it-was that from*
hostibus illis insidiantibus praecavere nos oportebat. quapropter
*enemies those lying-in-wait to-beware us it-behooved wherefore*
duobus diebus illic delituimus. sed cum tantam moram illi
*for-two days there we-lay-hidden but when such delay they*
fastidirent, die IIIº subitaneo insultu de loco insidiatorio
*were-weary-of on-day the-third with-a-sudden assault from the-place of-ambush*
prosilierunt et ante castellum, in quo eramus, signis levatis,
*they-leapt-forth and before the-castle in which we-were standards raised*
accurrerunt, et praedam, quam in pascuis ibi reppererunt,
*they-ran-up and the-plunder which in the-pastures there they-found*
in conspectu nostro abripuerunt. nos autem contra eos
*in the-sight our snatched-away we moreover against them*
egressi, quia pauci eramus, bellare cum eis non quivimus:
*having-gone-out because few we-were to-war with them not we-could*
qui cum sagittas in nos iacerent, nullum ex nostris tamen
*who when arrows at us they-hurled none of our-men yet*

sauciaverunt. ipsi autem unum de suis occisum lancea in
*they-wounded they moreover one of their-own killed by-a-lance in*
campo reliquerunt, cuius equum, qui eum subvertit, retinuit.
*the-field left whose horse he-who him overthrew kept*
tunc abierunt, nos autem ibi remansimus. sequenti vero
*then they-went-away we moreover there remained on-the-following indeed*
die iter nostrum resumpsimus. miraremini, cum ante castra
*day journey our we-took-up-again you-would-marvel when before the-castles*
Armenorum transiremus et nobis obviam cum crucibus et
*of-the-Armenians we-passed and to-us to-meet with crosses and*
vexillis pro amore Dei humillime procedentes et pedes
*banners for the-love of-God most-humbly proceeding both feet*
nostros et pannos deosculabantur, eo quod audierant
*our and clothes they-kissed for-the-reason that they-had-heard*
nos a Turcis eos defensuros, sub quorum iugo tamdiu
*us from the-Turks them about-to-defend under whose yoke so-long*
depressi fuerant. pervenimus tandem Edessam, ubi princeps
*pressed-down they-had-been we-came at-length to-Edessa where the-prince*
urbis praedictus et uxor eius, una cum civibus suis,
*of-the-city aforesaid and wife his together with citizens his*
gaudenter nos susceperunt: et quod Balduino polliciti fuerant,
*gladly us received and what to-Baldwin promised they-had*
indilate ei compleverunt. cumque per dies XV illic
*without-delay to-him fulfilled and-when for days fifteen there*
moram fecissemus, machinati sunt cives urbis principem
*delay we-had-made plotted have the-citizens of-the-city prince*
suum sceleste occidere et Balduinum ad dominandum terrae
*their wickedly to-kill and Baldwin for ruling of-the-land*
in palatio sublimare. odio enim eum habebant. dictum
*in the-palace to-raise-up with-hatred for him they-had said*
est et factum est. unde Balduinus et sui contristati
*it-was and done it-was whence Baldwin and his-men saddened*

sunt valde, cum pro eo indulgentiam impetrare nequissent.
*were greatly since for him pardon to-obtain they-could-not*
cum autem principatum illius nequiter perempti dono
*when moreover the-principality of-him wickedly slain by-the-gift*
civium Balduinus suscepisset, protinus adversus Turcos,
*of-the-citizens Baldwin had-received at-once against the-Turks*
qui in patria erant, litem bellicam movit, quos multotiens
*who in the-country were strife warlike he-stirred whom many-times*
vel victos vel occisos superavit. contigit tamen de nostris
*either conquered or killed he-overcame it-happened yet of ours*
plures a Turcis interemptos fuisse. ego vero Fulcherus
*many by the-Turks slain to-have-been I but Fulcher*
Carnotensis, capellanus ipsius Balduini eram. volo autem
*of-Chartres chaplain of-that-very Baldwin was I-wish moreover*
nunc de exercitu Dei sermonem quem desivi resumere.
*now about the-army of-God the-discourse which I-left-off to-resume*

## De adventu Francorum ad Antiochiam et de his, quae in obsidione Antiochena sorte varia gesta sunt

XV · THE SIEGE OF ANTIOCH

*In October the Franks reach Antioch, a great city founded by Seleucus, with the church where Peter sat. They swear to besiege it until it falls. Yaghi-Siyan sends his son to the Sultan, the Turks kill Christians within and fling their heads over the walls, and famine drives many to desert. The women are sent from the camp, and an earthquake and a red sky alarm the army.*

Mense quidem Octobri pervenerunt Franci Antiochiam
*in-the-month indeed of-October came the-Franks to-Antioch*
Syriae, quam urbem condidit Seleucus, Antiochi filius, caput
*of-Syria which city founded Seleucus of-Antiochus the-son the-head*

Syriae illam constituens, quae prius Reblata dicta est, flumine
*of-Syria it establishing which earlier Reblata called was the-river*
autem transito quod Fernum sive Orontem nominant. ante
*moreover crossed which Farfar or Orontes they-name before*
urbem iussa sunt tabernacula extendi intra primum ab
*the-city ordered were the-tents to-be-stretched within the-first from*
urbe lapidem, ubi posthaec certamen pessimum utrobique
*the-city milestone where afterward a-contest most-evil on-both-sides*
persaepe factum est. nam cum de civitate illa Turci
*very-often done was for when from city that the-Turks*
prosilirent, multos de nostris occidebant. vice tamen reddita,
*leapt-forth many of ours they-killed the-turn yet returned*
se quoque superatos lugebant. est nempe Antiochia
*themselves also overcome they-mourned is indeed Antioch*
civitas magna ambitu, muro forti, situ valida, quae etiam
*a-city great in-circuit with-wall strong in-site powerful which also*
ab hostibus externis nunquam poterit comprehendi, si
*by enemies external never shall-be-able to-be-taken if*
tantum inhabitantes pane muniti eam defendere voluerint.
*only the-inhabitants with-bread provided it to-defend shall-have-wished*
estque in ea basilica una satis veneranda, in honore Petri
*and-there-is in it a-basilica one quite venerable in honor of-Peter*
apostoli dedicata, ubi in episcopum sublimatus sedit in
*the-apostle dedicated where as bishop raised-up he-sat on*
cathedra, postquam a Domino Jesu principatum ecclesiae,
*the-throne after from the-Lord Jesus the-principate of-the-church*
clavibus acceptis regni caelestis, suscepit. est et
*the-keys received of-the-kingdom heavenly he-received there-is also*
altera in honore beatae Mariae fabricata, forma rotunda,
*another in honor of-blessed Mary built in-form round*
et aliae plures decenter compositae. quae quamvis sub
*and others many fittingly put-together which although under*

potestate Turcorum diu exstiterant, Deus tamen cuncta
*the-power of-the-Turks long had-stood God yet all-things*
praesciens nobis eas integras reservavit, ut quandoque a
*foreknowing for-us them whole kept that sometime by*
nobis in eis honorificaretur. XIII fere miliariis, ut aestimo,
*us in them he-might-be-honored thirteen almost miles as I-reckon*
distat mare ab Antiochia. et quia Fernus fluvius inibi
*is-distant the-sea from Antioch and because the-Farfar river there*
mare incidit, per eiusdem alveum fluvii usque prope
*into-the-sea falls along of-the-same the-bed river all-the-way near*
Antiochiam naves de longinquis partibus bonis refertae
*Antioch ships from distant parts with-goods crammed*
omnibus deducuntur. itaque tam per mare quam per
*all are-brought and-so as-well by sea as by*
terram munita bonis, abundat civitas divitiis multimodis.
*land fortified with-goods abounds the-city with-riches manifold*
principes tunc nostri, cum tam difficilem ad capiendum eam
*the-princes then our when so difficult for taking it*
prospexissent, iureiurando adinvicem confirmaverunt obsidione
*they-had-seen by-oath mutually confirmed with-siege*
cohibere, donec, Deo suffragante, aut vi aut ingenio eam
*to-hem-it-in until God aiding either by-force or by-skill it*
comprehendant. tunc invenerunt in flumine praedicto naves
*they-should-take then they-found in the-river aforesaid ships*
aliquantas, quas capientes coaptaverunt sibi ex eis
*some which taking they-fitted for-themselves from them*
pontem unum, per quem transierunt ad negotia sua facienda,
*a-bridge one by which they-crossed to business their to-be-done*
cum antea pedetemptim vadare per illud non valerent. sed
*when before step-by-step to-ford across it not they-were-able but*
cum Turci a tanta multitudine Christiana se obsideri
*when the-Turks by so-great a-multitude Christian themselves to-be-besieged*

circumspexissent, timentes nullomodo ab eis excuti
*had-seen fearing in-no-way by them to-be-shaken-off*
posse, inito invicem consilio, misit Aoxianus, Antiochiae
*to-be-able entered mutually counsel sent Yaghi-Siyan of-Antioch*
princeps et admiratus, filium suum, nomine Sanxadonem, ad
*the-prince and emir son his by-name Shams-ad-Daula to*
Soltanum, scilicet imperatorem Persidis, ut eis citissime
*the-Sultan namely the-emperor of-Persia that to-them most-swiftly*
succurreret, quia in nullo alio spem auxiliandi eis
*he-should-come-to-aid because in no other hope of-helping for-them*
habebant, praeter Mahumet advocatum eorum. ille autem
*they-had besides Muhammad advocate their he moreover*
illuc sic destinatus legationem hanc perpropere gessit.
*thither thus appointed embassy this very-hastily carried-out*
qui vero remanserunt, urbem interim custodierunt, auxilium
*who but remained the-city meanwhile guarded help*
praestolantes mandatum, contra Francos multimoda frequenter
*awaiting sent-for against the-Franks manifold often*
damna machinando. Franci nihilominus calliditati eorum pro
*harms by-contriving the-Franks nonetheless to-the-cunning their for*
posse resistebant. contigit enim die quadam DCCos
*the-possible resisted it-happened for on-day a-certain seven-hundred*
Turcos ab eis interemptos esse; et qui Francis
*Turks by them slain to-have-been and those-who for-the-Franks*
insidias paraverant, ab insidiantibus similiter superati sunt:
*ambushes had-prepared by the-ambushers likewise overcome were*
virtus enim Dei praesens ibi adfuit. nam nostri omnes
*the-power for of-God present there was-at-hand for our-men all*
sani regressi sunt, excepto tantum uno ab eis sauciato.
*sound returned have except only one by them wounded*
heu! quam multos de Christianis, Graecis, Syris, Armenis,
*alas how many of the-Christians Greeks Syrians Armenians*

qui in urbe conversabantur, Turci rabie permoti occidebant,
*who in the-city dwelt the-Turks by-rage stirred killed*
et cum petrariis et fundibulis suis capita occisorum,
*and with stone-throwers and slings their the-heads of-the-slain*
Francis cernentibus, extra muros eiiciebant; qua de re
*the-Franks seeing outside the-walls threw which for thing*
gens nostra valde tristabatur. odio quidem Christianos
*people our greatly was-saddened with-hatred indeed the-Christians*
illos habentes timebant, ne forte Francos quoquomodo de
*those holding they-feared lest perhaps the-Franks in-any-way of*
damno suo praemunirent. cum autem aliquandiu Franci
*harm their they-should-forewarn when moreover for-some-time the-Franks*
urbem circumsedissent et provinciam adfinem pro victualibus
*the-city had-besieged and the-province neighboring for provisions*
sibi necessariis rapinantes undique devastassent et panem
*to-themselves necessary plundering on-all-sides had-laid-waste and bread*
ad emendum nusquam invenire possent, contigit eos famem
*for buying nowhere to-find they-could it-happened them hunger*
maximam sustinere. unde valde desolati sunt omnes et multi
*the-greatest to-endure whence greatly desolate were all and many*
latenter cogitaverunt ab obsidione fugiendo se subtrahere,
*secretly thought from the-siege by-fleeing themselves to-withdraw*
sive per terram sive per mare. non enim habebant quicquam
*either by land or by sea not for they-had anything*
stipendii, unde vivere possent: quos etiam oportebat victum
*of-pay whence to-live they-could whom also it-behooved food*
suum longe quaerere cum ingenti timore, elongando se
*their far to-seek with huge fear by-removing themselves*
ab obsidione aut XL aut L miliariis; ubi, in montanis
*from the-siege either forty or fifty miles where in the-mountains*
videlicet, a Turcis insidiantibus persaepe occidebantur. haec
*namely by the-Turks lying-in-wait very-often they-were-killed these*

autem incommoda putabamus sic Francis propter peccata
*moreover misfortunes we-thought thus to-the-Franks on-account-of sins*
sua contingere, et quod urbem tam longo tempore non
*their to-happen and that the-city so long for-a-time not*
poterant capere: quos quidem tam luxuria quam avaritia sive
*they-could to-take whom indeed as-much lust as avarice or*
superbia vel rapina vitiabat tunc facto deinde consilio, eiecerunt
*pride or plunder corrupted then made thereupon a-council they-cast-out*
feminas de exercitu, tam maritatas quam inmaritatas,
*the-women from the-army as-well married as unmarried*
ne forte luxuriae sordibus inquinati Domino displicerent.
*lest perhaps of-lust by-the-filth defiled to-the-Lord they-should-displease*
illae vero in castris adfinibus tunc hospitia sibi
*they but in the-castles neighboring then lodgings for-themselves*
adsumpserunt. desolati tam fame quam cotidiana occisione
*took desolate as-much by-hunger as by-daily slaughter*
tam divites quam pauperes erant. et nisi eos Deus tanquam
*as-well rich as poor were and unless them God like*
bonus pastor oves suas gregatim constringeret, proculdubio
*a-good shepherd sheep his in-flocks had-held-together without-doubt*
prorsus inde omnes aufugerent, licet obsidionem obtinendam
*utterly thence all would-have-fled although the-siege to-be-maintained*
iurassent. multi tamen propter panis penuriam per plures
*they-had-sworn many yet on-account-of of-bread the-want for many*
dies quaerebant in castellis propinquioribus quae victui
*days sought in the-castles nearer those-things-which for-food*
suo necessaria erant; nec postea revertentes ad exercitum,
*their necessary were nor afterward returning to the-army*
obsidionem penitus deserebant. tunc temporis vidimus in caelo
*the-siege wholly deserted at-that time we-saw in the-sky*
unum ruborem mirabilem, insuper sensimus terrae motum
*a redness wondrous moreover we-felt of-the-earth a-shaking*

magnum, qui nos pavidos reddidit omnes. multi etiam tunc
*great which us fearful made all many also then*
viderunt quoddam signum in modum crucis figuratum,
*saw a-certain sign in the-manner of-a-cross shaped*
colore alburnum, versus Orientem recto incedens tramite.
*in-color white toward the-East by-a-straight going path*

## De egestate miserabili Christianorum et fuga comitis Blesensis

### XVI · FAMINE, AND THE FLIGHT OF STEPHEN

*In 1098 the starving pilgrims eat bean shoots, thistles, horses, dogs, mice, and hides, purified like gold in the fire as Job was. God lets Christians die for their salvation and Turks for their perdition. Many desert, and Stephen of Blois sails home the day before the city falls, to his shame. From October to June the two sides fight often by the Farfar.*

Anno autem Domini MºXCºVIIIº, postquam regio illa
*in-the-year moreover of-the-Lord the-1098th after region that*
Antiochena circumquaque a multitudine gentis nostrae
*Antiochene all-around by the-multitude of-people our*
prorsus devastata fuisset, magis magisque tam maiores quam
*utterly laid-waste had-been more and-more as-well the-greater as*
minores fame nimia vexati sunt. tunc famelici comedebant
*the-lesser by-hunger excessive vexed were then the-famished ate*
surculos fabarum in agris adhuc crescentium, herbasque
*shoots of-beans in the-fields still growing and-herbs*
multimodas et sale inconditas; carduos etiam, qui propter
*manifold and with-salt unseasoned thistles also which on-account-of*
lignorum deficientiam non bene cocti linguas manducantium
*of-wood the-lack not well cooked the-tongues of-those-eating*

depungebant; equos, asinos camelosque, canes etiam et mures.
*pricked horses asses and-camels dogs also and mice*
pauperiores etiam bestiarum coria et annonae grana in
*the-poorer also of-beasts the-hides and of-grain the-seeds in*
stercoribus reperta comedebant. frigora, calores, pluvias densas
*dung found ate colds heats rains dense*
propter Deum perpessi sunt. tentoria eorum illic inveterata
*for God endured have tents their there grown-old*
sunt et dirupta et imbrium continuatione putrefacta. qua
*were and torn and of-rains by-the-continuance rotted which*
de re multi eorum nonnisi caelo tegebantur. itaque
*for thing many of-them not-except by-heaven were-covered and-so*
illi quasi aurum ter probatum igni septiesque purgatum,
*they as-if gold thrice tried by-fire and-seven-times purified*
iamdudum a Domino praeelecti, ut opinor, et in tanta
*long-since by the-Lord chosen-beforehand as I-think and in so-great*
calamitate examinati, a peccatis suis mundati sunt. diu
*calamity examined from sins their cleansed were long*
enim agonizantes, si etiam gladius percussoris non deesset,
*for agonizing if also the-sword of-the-striker not had-been-lacking*
martyrii cursum multi voluntarie complessent. forsitan
*of-martyrdom the-course many willingly would-have-completed perhaps*
a sancto Iob gratiam tanti exempli sumpserunt, qui in
*from holy Job the-grace of-so-great an-example they-took who in*
tormentis corporis sui animam purgans, Deum semper in
*the-torments of-body his the-soul purging God always in*
mente tenuit. cum paganis bellant, propter Deum laborant.
*mind held when with-the-pagans they-war for God they-labor*
licet Deus, qui cuncta creat, creata moderat, moderata
*although God who all-things creates the-created governs the-governed*
sustentat, virtute gubernat, possit quaecunque vult vel
*sustains by-power rules may-be-able whatever-things he-wishes either*

destruere vel reparare, sentio, quod verbere Christianorum
*to-destroy or to-restore I-perceive that by-the-scourge of-the-Christians*
adnuit paganos ita subrui, qui tot temporibus cuncta
*he-assents the-pagans so to-be-overthrown who for-so-many times all-things*
quae Dei sunt, permittente ipso et promerente populo,
*which of-God are permitting he-himself and deserving-it the-people*
viliter pessundederunt. Christianos quidem ab ipsis Turcis
*vilely trampled the-Christians indeed by those-very Turks*
permittit occidi ad salvationis augmentum, Turcos autem ad
*he-permits to-be-killed for of-salvation the-increase the-Turks moreover for*
animarum suarum detrimentum, quorum quosdam iam saluti
*of-souls their the-detriment of-whom certain already to-salvation*
praedestinatos placuit Deo tunc a sacerdotibus baptizari. quos
*predestined it-pleased God then by the-priests to-be-baptized whom*
enim praedestinavit, hos et vocavit, necnon et magnificavit.
*for he-predestined these also he-called and-also and he-magnified*
quid igitur? fuerunt de nostris nonnulli, ut superius audistis,
*what then there-were of ours some as above you-have-heard*
qui ab obsidione tam anxia se removerunt, alii propter
*who from the-siege so anxious themselves removed some on-account-of*
egestatem, alii propter ignaviam, alii propter mortis
*want others on-account-of cowardice others on-account-of of-death*
timorem, primum pauperes, deinde locupletes.
*fear first the-poor then the-rich*
Tunc Stephanus, comes Blesensis, ab obsidione discessit et
*then Stephen count of-Blois from the-siege departed and*
per mare in Franciam repatriavit. unde doluimus omnes,
*by sea into France returned-home whence we-grieved all*
quia vir erat nobilissimus et armis validus. quo discedente,
*because a-man he-was most-noble and in-arms strong who departing*
sequenti die urbs Antiochia Francis est tradita. si
*on-the-following day the-city Antioch to-the-Franks was handed-over if*

perseverasset, multum inde cum ceteris gauderet. quod
*he-had-persevered much thereat with the-others he-would-rejoice which*
factum fuit ei ad opprobrium. nam non prodest alicui
*done was to-him for reproach for not profits anyone*
bonum initium, nisi fuerit bene consummatum. in
*a-good beginning unless it-shall-have-been well completed in*
rebus quidem Domini ne in aliquantis deviem, quia in eis
*matters indeed of-the-Lord lest in some-things I-stray because in them*
mentiri valde cavendum est, multa breviabo.
*to-lie greatly to-be-avoided it-is many-things I-shall-abridge*
Ab ipso mense Octobri, ut dictum est, hieme transcursa
*from that-very month of-October as said it-is the-winter passed-through*
subsequente, deinde verno tempore usque dum subintraret
*following then the-spring time up-to while should-come-on*
Iunius mensis, urbis obsidio perduravit. multotiens invasiones
*June the-month of-the-city the-siege lasted many-times attacks*
et proelia invicem Turci et Franci egerunt: vincebant et
*and battles by-turns the-Turks and the-Franks waged they-conquered and*
vincebantur; nostri tamen saepius quam illi triumphabant.
*were-conquered our-men yet more-often than they triumphed*
semel contigit plerosque de Turcis in flumen Fernum fugiendo
*once it-happened very-many of the-Turks into the-river Farfar by-fleeing*
cadere et in eo mersos infeliciter interire. cis flumen
*to-fall and in it sunk unhappily to-perish on-this-side the-river*
et citra flumen utraque gens saepe invicem bellabant.
*and on-this-side the-river each people often by-turns warred*
castella quidem ante urbem optimates nostri composuerunt,
*castles indeed before the-city chief-men our built*
quibus postea Turcos frequenti exitu prosilientes vehementer
*with-which afterward the-Turks with-frequent sally leaping-forth vehemently*
cohibuerunt. unde bestiis eorum pascua saepe abstulerunt.
*they-checked whence from-beasts their pastures often they-took-away*

nec ab externis provinciae Armenis quicquam adlatum est,
*nor from the-external of-the-province Armenians anything brought was*
saepe tamen ipsi ad laedendum nostros procedebant.
*often yet they-themselves for harming our-men advanced*

## De traditione urbis Antiochenae

XVII · THE BETRAYAL OF ANTIOCH

---

*Christ appears three times to a Turk and commands him to give the city to the Christians. He arranges it with Bohemond, gives his son as hostage, and by night lets twenty men up a rope ladder; forty knights kill the tower guards, a gate is opened, and the Franks pour in crying God wills it. Yaghi-Siyan flees and is beheaded by an Armenian.*

Cum autem placuit Deo laborem populi sui consummari,
*when moreover it-pleased God the-labor of-people his to-be-completed*
forsitan precibus eorum placatus, qui cotidie preces inde
*perhaps by-the-prayers their appeased who daily prayers thereupon*
supplices ei fundebant, concessit pietate sua per eorundem
*suppliant to-him poured he-granted by-pity his through of-the-same*
Turcorum fraudem, traditione clandestina urbem Christianis
*Turks the-fraud by-betrayal secret the-city to-the-Christians*
reddi. audite ergo fraudem et non fraudem. apparuit
*to-be-returned hear therefore a-fraud and not a-fraud appeared*
enim Dominus noster cuidam Turco, gratia sua praeelecto,
*for the-Lord our to-a-certain Turk by-grace his chosen-beforehand*
et dixit ei: expergiscere qui dormis! impero tibi ut
*and said to-him awake you-who sleep I-command you that*
reddas civitatem Christianis. miratus autem ille visionem illam
*you-return the-city to-the-Christians marveling moreover he vision that*
silentio texit. iterum autem apparuit ei Dominus: redde
*with-silence covered again moreover appeared to-him the-Lord return*

urbem Christianis! inquit, sum etenim Christus, qui hoc tibi
*the-city to-the-Christians he-says I-am for Christ who this to-you*
impero. meditatus ergo ille quid faceret, abiit ad dominum
*command having-pondered therefore he what he-should-do went to lord*
suum, Antiochiae principem, et visionem illam innotuit ei.
*his of-Antioch the-prince and vision that made-known to-him*
cui respondit ille: numquid non phantasmati, brute, vis
*to-whom answered he surely not to-a-phantasm brute you-wish*
oboedire? reversus autem ille, postmodum siluit. cui
*to-obey having-returned moreover he afterward was-silent to-whom*
Dominus rursum apparuit, inquiens: cur non explesti quod
*the-Lord again appeared saying why not have-you-fulfilled what*
tibi iussi? non est tibi haesitandum, nam qui hoc impero
*to-you I-ordered not is for-you to-be-hesitated for he-who this command*
Dominus omnium sum. ille autem non dubitans amplius,
*the-Lord of-all am he moreover not doubting further*
prudenter cum viris nostris negotium istud tractavit, ut sub
*prudently with men our business this handled that under*
machinationis suae studio urbem acciperent. quo prolocuto et
*of-contrivance his the-zeal the-city they-might-receive which spoken-out and*
filio suo obside dato domno Boamundo, ad quem sermo iste
*son his as-hostage given to-lord Bohemond to whom speech this*
primitus exiit, quem et ipse primus movit: nocte quadam
*first went-out which also he first moved on-night a-certain*
per scalas de chordis compactas XX de clientibus nostris per
*by ladders of cords fastened twenty of retainers our over*
muri summum intromisit. et non mora facta, statim porta
*of-the-wall the-top he-let-in and no delay made at-once the-gate*
est aperta. Franci quidem praeparati civitatem sunt ingressi.
*was opened the-Franks indeed prepared the-city have entered*
per chordas quoque iam introierant XL milites nostri, qui
*by the-cords also already had-entered forty knights our who*

LX Turcos, custodes turrium, inventos ilico peremerunt.
*sixty Turks guards of-the-towers found at-once slew*
tunc alta voce omnes simul Franci exclamaverunt: Deus
*then with-lofty voice all together the-Franks shouted God*
hoc vult, Deus hoc vult! hoc enim erat signum exclamationis
*this wills God this wills this for was the-signal of-shouting*
nostrae, cum aliquid boni negotii nostri acturi eramus. quo
*our when anything of-good business we about-to-do were which*
audito, vehementer Turci omnes exterriti sunt. aurora tunc
*heard vehemently the-Turks all terrified were the-dawn then*
albescente, urbem Franci prorsus impetere coeperunt. cumque
*whitening the-city the-Franks utterly to-assail began and-when*
Turci primitus vexillum Boamundi vidissent rubicundum iam
*the-Turks first the-banner of-Bohemond had-seen red now*
in sublime displicari et tumultum magnum undique iam
*on high to-be-unfurled and the-tumult great on-all-sides now*
concitatum et cornua Francorum in muri apice insonare
*stirred-up and the-horns of-the-Franks on of-the-wall the-top to-sound*
et per vicos nudis ensibus late discurrere et gentem
*and through the-streets with-bare swords widely to-run-about and the-people*
ferociter occidere: obstupefacti coeperunt hac et illac fugere,
*fiercely to-kill stupefied they-began hither and thither to-flee*
unde plures qui potuerunt fugiendo in castrum, quod in rupe
*whence many who could by-fleeing into the-citadel which on a-rock*
celsa est situm, se intromiserunt. plebs vero nostra
*lofty is situated themselves let-in the-common-people but our*
cuncta, quae in vicis aut domibus invenerunt, immoderate
*all-things which in the-streets or houses they-found immoderately*
adripuerunt. at milites probitatis militiam tenuerunt, Turcos
*snatched but the-knights of-prowess the-soldiership kept the-Turks*

persequendo et occidendo. tunc admiratus Antiochiae, Aoxianus
*by-pursuing and by-killing then the-emir of-Antioch Yaghi-Siyan*
scilicet, a rusticano quodam Armeno fugiens decollatus est.
*namely by a-rustic certain Armenian fleeing beheaded was*

Qui caput abscisum Francis mox adtulit ipse.
*who the-head cut-off to-the-Franks soon brought himself*

## De lancea inventa

### XVIII · THE LANCE FOUND AND TRIED

*A man finds a lance in Saint Peter's church and says Saint Andrew revealed it as the lance that pierced Christ. The bishop thinks it false, the count believes it, and it is honored for about a hundred days until many doubt it. Before Arqa its finder walks through a burning pyre to prove it, is badly burned, and dies on the twelfth day.*

Accidit autem, postquam civitas capta est, a quodam
*it-happened moreover after the-city taken was by a-certain*
homine lanceam unam inveniri, quam in ecclesia beati Petri
*man a-lance one to-be-found which in the-church of-blessed Peter*
apostoli fossa humo repertam, adseverabat esse illam, de
*the-apostle in-the-dug earth found he-asserted to-be that with*
qua Longinus in latere dextro Christum secundum Scripturas
*which Longinus in the-side right Christ according-to the-Scriptures*
pupugit. aiebat enim hoc a sancto Andrea apostolo revelatum
*pierced he-said for this by holy Andrew the-apostle revealed*
fuisse. et cum sic inventa fuisset et episcopo Podiensi
*to-have-been and when thus found it-had-been and to-the-bishop of-Le-Puy*
atque Raimundo comiti hoc ipse intimasset, id episcopus
*and to-Raymond the-count this he had-made-known it the-bishop*

falsum esse putavit, comes vero verum speravit. sed cum
*false to-be thought the-count but true hoped but when*
omnis populus hoc audito exsultans Deum proinde glorificasset
*all the-people this heard exulting God thereupon had-glorified*
et per C fere dies ab omnibus in veneratione magna
*and for a-hundred almost days by all in veneration great*
haberetur et a comite Raimundo, qui eam custodiebat,
*it-was-held and by count Raymond who it guarded*
gloriose tractaretur, contigit multos de clero ac populo
*gloriously was-handled it-happened many of the-clergy and people*
haesitare, quod non esset illa dominica lancea, sed ab homine
*to-hesitate that not was it the-Lord's lance but by man*
illo stolido altera erat fallaciter inventa. quapropter concilio
*that stupid another had-been falsely found wherefore a-council*
inito et ieiunio triduano a cunctis statuto et facto cum
*entered and a-fast three-day by all appointed and done with*
supplicatione precum ad Deum, cum lignorum struem in
*supplication of-prayers to God when of-wood a-pile in*
medio campo ante oppidum Archas succendissent VIII°
*the-middle-of the-field before the-town Arqa they-had-kindled in-the-eighth*
mense post Antiochiam captam, benedictione iudiciali super
*month after Antioch taken a-blessing judicial over*
ipsum ignem ab episcopis facta, inventor lanceae per
*that-very fire by the-bishops made the-finder of-the-lance through*
medium rogi flammantis, sicut ipse pro adfirmanda veritate
*the-middle of-the-pyre flaming as he for confirming the-truth*
sua fieri poposcerat, ultro celeriter transmeavit. quo
*his to-be-done had-demanded of-his-own-accord swiftly crossed which*
transito, illum hominem de flammis exeuntem tamquam reum
*crossed that man from the-flames going-out as guilty*
in cute crematum conspexerunt et in interioris corporis
*in the-skin burned they-beheld and in of-the-inner body*

parte laesum morte intellexerunt. quod etiam rei exitus
*the-part harmed by-death they-understood which also of-the-thing the-outcome*
declaravit, cum die XII° ipso angore cauteriatus
*declared when on-the-day twelfth by-that-very anguish burned*
obiit. et quia ob honorem et amorem Dei omnes lanceam
*he-died and because for the-honor and love of-God all lance*
illam venerati fuerant, hoc iudicio sic peracto, contristati
*that venerated had this judgment thus completed saddened*
valde remanserunt increduli, qui prius exstiterant huius rei
*greatly remained unbelieving who before had-been of-this thing*
creduli. comes tamen Raimundus diu eam postea servavit.
*believing the-count yet Raymond long it afterward kept*

## De obsidione Christianorum in urbe Antiochena a Turcis

### XIX · THE FRANKS BESIEGED IN ANTIOCH

*The day after Antioch falls, Kerbogha besieges the city: the Sultan sent him, and he spent three fruitless weeks before Baldwin's Edessa on the way. The Franks are desolate again, their punishment doubled for their sins with outlawed women. Sixty thousand Turks enter by the citadel and press them, then withdraw in fear, leaving the Franks shut in and anxious beyond belief.*

Et cum Antiochia, ut dictum est, capta fuisset, die
*and when Antioch as said it-is taken had-been on-the-day*
sequenti multitudo innumera Turcorum circa eandem urbem
*following a-multitude countless of-Turks around the-same city*
obsidionem adposuerunt. nam Soltanus, rex scilicet Persarum,
*a-siege laid for the-Sultan the-king namely of-the-Persians*
habita legatione quod Franci Antiochiam obsidebant, statim
*had an-embassy that the-Franks Antioch were-besieging at-once*
gente multa congregata contra Francos exercitum suum misit.
*people much gathered against the-Franks army his sent*

cuius gentis Corbagath dux fuit et satrapa. hic quidem
*of-which people Kerbogha the-leader was and satrap he indeed*
ante urbem Edessam, quam tunc domnus Balduinus possidebat,
*before the-city Edessa which then lord Baldwin possessed*
per III hebdomadas stationem fecerat; sed nihil ibi proficiens,
*for three weeks a-station had-made but nothing there achieving*
Antiochiam properavit ad succurrendum Aoxiano principi.
*to-Antioch hastened for coming-to-the-aid-of Yaghi-Siyan the-prince*
quibus visis, non minus solito iterum Franci sunt desolati,
*whom seen not less than-usual again the-Franks were desolate*
quia propter peccata sua poena est eis duplicata. nam
*because on-account-of sins their the-penalty was to-them doubled for*
cum civitatem ingressi fuissent, confestim cum feminis exlegibus
*when the-city entered they-had at-once with women outlaw*
commiscuerunt se ex eis plures. tunc insuper ingressi sunt
*mixed themselves of them many then besides entered have*
urbem LX fere milia Turcorum per castrum sublime a
*the-city sixty about thousand of-Turks through the-citadel lofty from*
parte rupis excelsae, qui nostros vehementissime crebris
*the-side of-the-rock high who our-men most-vehemently with-frequent*
invasionibus coartaverunt. sed non fuit mora; pavore perfusi
*attacks pressed but not was delay with-fear drenched*
magno foras ad obsidionem, relicta urbe, exierunt. Franci
*great outside to the-siege left the-city they-went-out the-Franks*
autem inclusi, ultra quam credi potest remanserunt anxii.
*moreover shut-in beyond than to-be-believed can remained anxious*

## De visionibus infra urbem apparentibus

XX · VISIONS IN THE CITY

---

*The Lord appears to a fleeing cleric, bids him return, and promises his help in battle, won by his mother's prayers, if the people repent. A dead brother appears to a man climbing down the wall and tells him their slain comrades will fight beside them. Starving, the army resolves on a three-day fast with prayers and alms.*

Interea tamen non immemor Dominus eorum pluribus,
*meanwhile yet not unmindful the-Lord of-them to-many*
quod saepe dictis adfirmabant, apparuit, qui confortando
*which often in-words they-affirmed appeared who by-comforting*
eos promittebat populum ad praesens victoria gaudendum.
*them promised the-people for the-present in-victory to-rejoice*
tunc cuidam clerico pro timore mortis aufugienti apparuit
*then to-a-certain cleric for fear of-death fleeing appeared*
Dominus, inquiens: quo, frater, protendis? fugio, respondit,
*the-Lord saying whither brother do-you-go I-flee he-answered*
ne infortunatus peream.
*lest unfortunate I-perish*

Sic fugiunt plurimi, pereant ne morte maligna.
*so flee very-many they-may-perish lest by-death evil*

cui Dominus ait: ne fugias, sed vade retro et dic
*to-whom the-Lord said do-not flee but go back and say*
ceteris quod in proelio cum illis adero. nam matris
*to-the-others that in the-battle with them I-shall-be-present for of-mother*
meae precibus placatus propitiabor eis: sed quia
*my by-the-prayers appeased I-shall-be-propitious to-them but because*
peccaverunt, fere perierunt. sit autem spes eorum in me
*they-have-sinned almost they-have-perished let-be moreover the-hope their in me*

firma et faciam eos in Turcos triumphare. paeniteant et
*firm and I-shall-make them over the-Turks to-triumph let-them-repent and*
salvi fient. Dominus sum, qui loquor tecum. mox ille
*saved they-shall-become the-Lord I-am who speak with-you soon he*
reversus, quod audivit narravit. interea, dum plures noctu
*having-returned what he-heard told meanwhile while many by-night*
per chordas de muro descendere vellent et fugere, quoniam
*by ropes from the-wall to-descend wished and to-flee since*
hoc multi fecerunt qui formidabant vel inedia vel gladio
*this many did who feared either by-starvation or by-the-sword*
perire, astitit cuidam descendenti frater eiusdem iam
*to-perish stood-by to-a-certain-one descending the-brother of-the-same already*
mortuus, aiens illi: quo, frater, fugis? resta, ne timeas;
*dead saying to-him whither brother do-you-flee stay do-not fear*
Dominus enim in proelio vestro vobiscum erit et consocii
*the-Lord for in battle your with-you shall-be and the-comrades*
vestri, qui in hoc itinere iam morte vos antecesserunt, contra
*your who on this journey already in-death you have-gone-before against*
Turcos vobiscum proeliabuntur. miratus ille verba defuncti
*the-Turks with-you shall-fight marveling he at-the-words of-the-dead-man*
ire desiit et quod audivit ceteris recitavit. sed cum placeret
*to-go ceased and what he-heard to-the-others recited but when it-pleased*
Domino labori famulorum suorum finem dare, qui etiam
*the-Lord to-the-labor of-servants his an-end to-give who also*
angorem tantimodum amplius tolerare non poterant, nec iam
*anguish so-manifold further to-endure not could nor now*
quicquam haberent quod manducarent, qua de re tam ipsi
*anything had that they-might-eat which for thing as-much they*
quam eorum equi debilitati nimis erant, constituerunt invicem
*as their horses weakened very were they-resolved mutually*

ieiunium triduanum fieri cum precibus et eleemosynis, ut
*a-fast three-day to-be-made with prayers and alms that*
illis paenitentibus et Deo supplicantibus eis propitiaretur.
*to-them repenting and to-God supplicating to-them he-might-be-propitious*

## De bello a Francis Turcis mandato

### XXI · THE FRANKS OFFER BATTLE

*Through Peter the Hermit the Franks offer the Turks battle unless they leave the land, or a combat of chosen knights, so that the winner may take the city. The Turks, three hundred thousand strong and knowing the Franks' knights reduced to foot, refuse, and the Franks prepare to fight, trusting in God.*

Interim statuto consilio, mandaverunt Turcis per Petrum
*meanwhile appointed a-council they-sent-word to-the-Turks through Peter*
heremitam quendam, quod nisi terram quae Christianis ab
*a-hermit certain that unless the-land which to-the-Christians from*
olim pertinebat, quietam eis dimitterent, die sequenti
*of-old belonged quiet to-them they-gave-up on-the-day following*
procul dubio bellum contra eos inirent. quod si aliter
*far-from doubt battle against them they-would-enter that if otherwise*
fieri vellent, aut per V aut per X aut per XX seu per
*to-be-done they-wished either by five or by ten or by twenty or by*
C milites ab utraque parte electos fieret bellum, ne
*a-hundred knights from each side chosen battle should-be-made lest*
cunctis simul bellantibus, tanta gentium multitudo moreretur,
*all together warring so-great of-peoples a-multitude should-die*
et quorum pars alteram superaret, urbem et regnum sine
*and of-whom the-part the-other should-overcome the-city and kingdom without*
controversia libere acciperet. hoc mandatum est, sed a Turcis
*controversy freely should-receive this sent-word was but by the-Turks*

concessum non est, et quia in multitudine gentis suae et in
*granted not was and because in the-multitude of-people their and in*
virtute confidebant, vincere et destruere se posse nostros
*strength they-trusted to-conquer and to-destroy themselves to-be-able ours*
putabant. aestimabantur quidem numero simul esse CCC
*they-thought they-were-reckoned indeed in-number together to-be three-hundred*
milia, tam equites quam pedites. nostros vero milites
*thousand as-well horsemen as foot-soldiers our but knights*
sciebant effici pedites, debiles, inopes. regresso autem Petro
*they-knew to-be-made foot-soldiers weak needy returned moreover Peter*
legato, redditur responsum. quo audito, paraverunt se
*the-envoy is-returned the-answer which heard prepared themselves*
Franci ad proeliandum, nihil haesitantes, sed in Deo spem
*the-Franks for fighting nothing hesitating but in God hope*
suam penitus ponentes. principes Turcorum multi erant, quos
*their wholly placing the-princes of-the-Turks many were whom*
admiratos praenominabant. hi sunt: Corbagath, Maleducat,
*emirs they-called these are Kerbogha Maleducat*
Amisoliman et multi alii, quos nominare perlongum est.
*Amisoliman and many others whom to-name very-long it-is*

# De belli apparatu

## XXII · THE ARMY GOES OUT

*Adhemar has every man feed his horse the night before. On June 28 the army goes out in its battle-lines, priests in white weeping and singing psalms. The Turk Amirdalis, who knew the Franks' banners from Antioch, warns Kerbogha at his chess that battle is coming under the great Pope's standard. Kerbogha's belated offer of terms fails, and Amirdalis weighs flight but urges his men to fight.*

Francorum vero principes isti erant: Hugo Magnus, Robertus
*of-the-Franks but the-princes these were Hugh the-Great Robert*
Normannorum comes, Robertus comes Flandriae, dux
*of-the-Normans count Robert count of-Flanders duke*
Godefridus, Raimundus comes, Boamundus et multi alii
*Godfrey Raymond count Bohemond and many others*
minores tamen horum. benedicat Deus animam Ademari
*lesser yet than-these may-bless God the-soul of-Adhemar*
Podiensis episcopi, qui, vir apostolicus, benigne semper
*of-Le-Puy bishop who a-man apostolic kindly always*
populum confortabat et in Domino roborabat. o pia res!
*the-people comforted and in the-Lord strengthened O pious thing*
vespere praecedente iusserat ipse cunctae militiae Dei
*on-the-evening preceding had-ordered he to-the-whole soldiery of-God*
exercitus sub edicto praeconario, ut unusquisque pro posse
*of-the-host by edict of-the-herald that each for ability*
suo quasi caritative de annona praebendam equo suo
*his as-if charitably of grain a-ration to-horse his*
impenderet, ne in crastino subter equitantes, hora
*should-give lest on the-morrow beneath-them riding at-the-hour*
bellica, debiles fame deficerent. iussum est et factum
*of-battle weak from-hunger they-should-fail ordered it-was and done*

est. igitur ad bellum omnibus sic praeparatis exierunt de
*it-was therefore for battle all thus prepared they-went-out from*
civitate summo mane, quod IV. Kal. Julii
*the-city at-highest morning which on-the-fourth-day-before the-Kalends of-July*
evenit, vexillis praecedentibus scararum et acierum,
*fell the-banners going-before of-the-squadrons and of-the-battle-lines*
separatim per catervas et phalanges convenienter divisarum.
*separately into troops and phalanxes fittingly divided*
inter quos erant sacerdotes albis amicti vestimentis, qui pro
*among whom were priests in-white wrapped garments who for*
cuncto populo flentes Domino psallebant et preces multiplices
*all the-people weeping to-the-Lord sang-psalms and prayers manifold*
mentibus devotis fundebant. tunc quidam Turcus, nomine
*with-minds devout poured-out then a-certain Turk by-name*
Amirdalis, miles probissimus, cum vidisset gentem nostram
*Amirdalis a-knight most-valiant when he-had-seen people our*
contra eos signis levatis sic egredientem, miratus est valde.
*against them standards raised thus going-out marveled has greatly*
et cum signa procerum nostrorum considerasset, quae
*and when the-standards of-nobles our he-had-considered which*
singillatim cognoscebat ordinate procedere, mox fore proelium
*one-by-one he-recognized in-order to-advance soon to-be a-battle*
ratus est. in Antiochia enim conversatus fuerat, in qua
*thought has in Antioch for lived he-had in which*
esse Francorum sic didicerat, qui confestim ad Corbagath
*the-being of-the-Franks so he-had-learned who at-once to Kerbogha*
properans, quod viderat intimavit ei dicens: quid scaccis
*hastening what he-had-seen made-known to-him saying why at-chess*
ludis? en Franci veniunt! cui respondit ille: Veniuntne
*do-you-play behold the-Franks come to-whom answered he do-they-come*
ad bellum? respondit Amirdalis: adhuc ignoro, sed parumper
*to battle answered Amirdalis still I-know-not but a-little*

exspecta. Cumque item prospiceret vexilla principum
*wait and-when again he-looked-out the-banners of-the-princes*
nostrorum altrinsecus ordinate praeferri et acies
*our on-both-sides in-order to-be-borne-before and the-battle-lines*
divisas decenter subsequi, mox regressus Corbagath dixit:
*divided fittingly to-follow soon having-returned to-Kerbogha he-said*
ecce Franci! quid putas? respondit. bellum reor, inquit; sed
*behold the-Franks what do-you-think he-answered battle I-think he-says but*
adhuc paulisper operire. signa quae cerno quorum sunt
*still a-little-while wait the-standards which I-see whose they-are*
non ignoro. iterum attentius intuens cognovit signum
*not I-know-not again more-attentively gazing he-recognized the-standard*
episcopi Podiensis cum tertia turma procedens.
*of-the-bishop of-Le-Puy with the-third troop advancing*

Longius haud restans, Corbagath intulit ipse:
*longer by-no-means waiting to-Kerbogha he-brought-word himself*
En Franci veniunt, vel nunc fuge, vel bene pugna;
*behold the-Franks come either now flee or well fight*
Nam signum video magni procedere Papae.
*for the-standard I-see of-the-great to-advance Pope*

et quos aestimabas omnino supplantari, hodie timeas
*and those-whom you-reckoned wholly to-be-overthrown today you-should-fear*
ab eis superari. Corbagath dixit: mittam ad Francos,
*by them to-be-overcome Kerbogha said I-shall-send to the-Franks*
ut quod hesterna die mihi mandaverunt, hodie concedam.
*that what on-yesterday's day to-me they-sent-word today I-may-grant*

Amirdalis dixit: tarde locutus es. attamen id mandavit,
*Amirdalis said late spoken you-have nevertheless it he-sent-word*
sed quod quaesivit, non inpetravit. Amirdalis autem mox
*but what he-sought not he-obtained Amirdalis moreover soon*

Ab eo secedens, equum calcaribus ursit.
*from him withdrawing his-horse with-spurs pressed*
Cogitat an fugiat, socios tamen admonet ipse
*he-ponders whether he-should-flee his-comrades yet admonishes he-himself*
Fortiter ut pugnent omnes iaciantque sagittas.
*strongly that they-should-fight all and-should-hurl arrows*

## De bello et victoria Christianorum et fuga Turcorum

### XXIII · VICTORY AND THE TURKS' FLIGHT

---

*Hugh, the two Roberts, Godfrey, the bishop with Raymond's men, and Bohemond attack in turn. A fear from heaven falls on the Turks and they flee, leaving their tents full of gold, cloaks, and beasts; Kerbogha flees swifter than a stag, for he fought against God. Verses date the city's fall. Adhemar dies on August 1, and Hugh the Great goes home.*

Ecce autem Hugo Magnus et Robertus comes Normannus,
*behold moreover Hugh the-Great and Robert count the-Norman*
comes quoque Flandriae Robertus in prima acie constituti
*count also of-Flanders Robert in the-first battle-line placed*
sunt invasores. in secunda vero dux Godefridus cum
*were as-attackers in the-second indeed duke Godfrey with*
Alemannis et Lotharingis subsecutus est. post hos episcopus
*the-Alamans and Lotharingians followed has after these the-bishop*
Podiensis et gens Raimundi comitis, Guascones et
*of-Le-Puy and the-people of-Raymond the-count Gascons and*

Provinciales incesserunt. ipse vero in urbe remanserat
*Provençals advanced he but in the-city had-remained*
custoditurus eam. postremam quippe catervam Boamundus
*about-to-guard it the-last indeed troop Bohemond*
sollerter minavit. Turci autem, cum considerarent se
*skillfully drove the-Turks moreover when they-considered themselves*
ab omni Francorum exercitu impetu ferocissimo pervadi,
*by all of-the-Franks the-army with-onslaught most-fierce to-be-attacked*
sparsim, ut mos eorum est, prosilire et sagittas coeperunt
*scattered as custom their is to-leap-forth and arrows began*
iacere. sed immisso timore caelitus in eos ac si totus
*to-hurl but sent-in fear from-heaven upon them and as-if the-whole*
mundus super eos rueret, fugam omnes immoderatam
*world upon them were-rushing flight all unrestrained*
egerunt et a Francis pro posse suo fugientes fugati sunt.
*made and by the-Franks for ability their fleeing put-to-flight were*
sed quia paucos et debiles fame habebant equos, non
*but because few and weak from-hunger they-had horses not*
quantum oporteret de paganis retinuerunt, sed tentoria eorum
*as-much-as it-behooved of the-pagans they-held but the-tents their*
cuncta in campis remanserunt. de rebus quoque eorum
*all in the-fields remained of things also their*
multiformibus in eisdem tentoriis reppererunt aurum scilicet,
*manifold in those-same tents they-found gold namely*
argentum, pallia, indumenta, utensilia et cetera multa, quae
*silver cloaks clothes utensils and other many-things which*
valde timidi per campos sparsim fugientes vel reliquerant
*very fearful over the-fields scattered fleeing either they-had-left*
vel iaciebant, videlicet equos, mulos, camelos, asinos, galeros
*or threw-away namely horses mules camels asses helmets*
optimos, arcus et sagittas cum pharetris. fugit Corbagath
*most-excellent bows and arrows with quivers fled Kerbogha*

cervo velocius, qui tam feris dictis et minis Francos iam
*than-a-stag swifter who so fierce with-words and threats the-Franks already*
persaepe occiderat. sed cur fugit qui habebat tantam gentem
*very-often had-killed but why fled he-who had so-great a-people*
et equis bene munitam? quoniam contra Deum bellare
*and with-horses well furnished since against God to-make-war*
nitebatur, cuius pompam Dominus a longe prospiciens
*he-strove whose pomp the-Lord from far-off beholding*
omnino cassavit et virtutem. et quia equos habebant
*wholly made-void and the-strength and because horses they-had*
bonos et veloces, ideo effugerunt; lentiores vero Francis
*good and swift therefore they-escaped the-slower but to-the-Franks*
remanserunt. multi siquidem ex eis et de peditibus
*remained many indeed of them and of the-foot-soldiers*
Saracenis perempti sunt. de nostris autem pauci laesi sunt.
*Saracens slain were of ours moreover few hurt were*
mulieribus in tentoriis eorum inventis, nihil aliud mali
*the-women in the-tents their found nothing else of-evil*
eis Franci fecerunt, excepto quod lanceas suas in ventres
*to-them the-Franks did except that lances their into the-bellies*
earum infixerunt. tunc omnes voce exsultationis Deum
*of-them they-fixed then all with-a-voice of-exultation God*
benedixerunt et glorificaverunt, qui in necessitate tanta et
*blessed and glorified who in need so-great and*
angustia positos, dextera pietatis suae, sperantes in se
*distress placed with-the-right-hand of-pity his those-hoping in him*
ab hostibus tam trucibus liberavit. sed et ipsos devictos,
*from enemies so savage freed but also those-very-ones conquered*

Christianis fere iam devictis, potenter dispersit. de quorum
*the-Christians almost now conquered powerfully scattered of whose*
substantia locupletes facti ad urbem regressi sunt iucundi.
*substance rich made to the-city returned have joyful*

Cum fuit urbs capta venerabilis Antiochena,
*when was the-city taken venerable Antiochene*
Undecies centum, si subtrahis inde bis unum,
*eleven-times a-hundred if you-subtract thence twice one*
Tunc tot erant anni Domini de Virgine nati,
*then so-many were the-years of-the-Lord from the-Virgin born*
Bis novies orto Gemino sub sidere Phoebo.
*twice nine-times risen Twin under the-star Phoebus*

Tunc temporis obiit Ademarus episcopus Kalend. Augusti,
*at-that time died Adhemar the-bishop on-the-Kalends of-August*
cuius anima quiete fruatur aeterna. Amen! et tunc Hugo
*whose soul rest may-enjoy eternal amen and then Hugh*
Magnus Constantinopolim favore procerum abiit, deinde
*the-Great to-Constantinople by-the-favor of-the-nobles went-away then*
Franciam.
*to-France*

## His gestis omnibus inclita principum turma totius exercitus epistulam hanc Romano pontifici direxit

### XXIV · THE PRINCES' LETTER TO URBAN

*Bohemond, Raymond, Godfrey, the two Roberts, and Eustace tell the pope how they took Nicaea, won at Dorylaeum, took Antioch, were besieged in turn, found the Lord's lance, and routed the Turks. Adhemar is dead, so they beg Urban to come to Antioch, where the name Christian began, sit in Peter's chair, root out the heresies, and finish the journey with them.*

Domino venerabili papae Urbano Boamundus et Raimundus
*to-the-lord venerable pope Urban Bohemond and Raymond*
comes Sancti Aegidii, Godefridus dux Lothariensis et
*count of-Saint Gilles Godfrey duke of-Lorraine and*
Robertus comes Normanniae, Robertus Flandrensium comes
*Robert count of-Normandy Robert of-the-Flemings count*
et Eustachius Boloniae comes, salutem et fidelia servitia et
*and Eustace of-Boulogne count greeting and faithful services and*
ut filii suo patri spirituali veram in Christo subiectionem.
*as sons to-their father spiritual true in Christ subjection*
Volumus omnes et desideramus notum vobis fieri, quam
*we-wish all and desire known to-you to-be-made how*
magna Dei misericordia quamque evidentissimo ipsius
*great of-God by-the-mercy and-how by-most-evident his*
adminiculo a nobis capta est Antiochia, et Turci, qui multa
*support by us taken was Antioch and the-Turks who many*
Domino nostro Jesu Christo intulerant opprobria, capti
*on-the-Lord our Jesus Christ had-brought reproaches captured*
et interfecti sunt; et nos Hierosolymitani Jesu Christi
*and killed were and we the-Jerusalem-pilgrims of-Jesus Christ*
iniuriam summi Dei vindicavimus, et nos, qui Turcos prius
*the-injury of-highest God have-avenged and we who the-Turks before*

obsederamus, qualiter postea a Turcis de Chorasan et
*had-besieged how afterward by the-Turks from Khorasan and*
Hierusalem et Damasco multisque aliis terris venientibus
*Jerusalem and Damascus and-many other lands coming*
obsessi fuimus et quomodo misericordia Jesu Christi
*besieged we-were and how by-the-mercy of-Jesus Christ*
liberati sumus. cum igitur capta Nicaea, illam maximam
*freed we-have-been when therefore taken Nicaea that very-great*
multitudinem Turcorum, sicut audistis, in Kalendas Julii
*multitude of-Turks as you-have-heard on the-Kalends of-July*
nobis obviam in valle Dorotillae devicissemus et illum
*us to-meet in the-valley of-Dorylaeum we-had-conquered and that*
magnum Solimannum fugavissemus suisque omnibus et
*great Kilij-Arslan had-put-to-flight and-of-his all-things both*
terra et rebus exspoliassemus, adquisita et pacificata tota
*of-land and of-goods had-despoiled acquired and pacified the-whole*
Romania, ad obsidendam Antiochiam venimus. cuius in
*Romania for besieging Antioch we-came whose in*
obsidione multa mala perpessi sumus, tum de bellis
*siege many evils endured we-have both from the-wars*
finitimorum Turcorum et paganorum in nos tam frequenter
*of-neighboring Turks and pagans upon us so often*
et copiose inruentium, ut verius diceremur obsessi
*and abundantly rushing that more-truly we-might-be-said besieged*
ab illis, quos in Antiochia obsederamus. tandem superatis
*by those whom in Antioch we-had-besieged at-length overcome*
omnibus bellis, ex eorum prospero eventu fides Christiana
*all the-wars from their prosperous outcome the-faith Christian*
exaltata est hoc modo: ego Boamundus, conventione facta
*exalted was in-this way I Bohemond a-covenant made*
cum quodam Turco, qui ipsam mihi tradidit civitatem, scalas
*with a-certain Turk who that-very to-me handed-over the-city ladders*

parum ante diem muro applicui, et sic civitatem antea
*a-little before day to-the-wall I-set and so the-city before*
Christo resistentem IIIº Nonas Iunii accepimus,
*to-Christ resisting on-the-third-day-before the-Nones of-June we-received*
et Cassianum, ipsius civitatis tyrannum, cum multis
*and Yaghi-Siyan of-that-very city the-tyrant with many*
suorum militibus interfecimus, eorumque uxores et filios
*of-his knights we-killed and-their wives and sons*
ac familias cum auro et argento et omnibus eorum
*and households with gold and silver and all their*
possessionibus retinuimus. asylum autem Antiochenum a
*possessions we-kept the-stronghold moreover Antiochene by*
Turcis praemunitum habere non potuimus. sed cum in
*the-Turks fortified to-have not we-could but when on*
crastinum asylum ipsum adgredi voluissemus, infinitam
*the-morrow the-stronghold itself to-attack we-had-wished an-infinite*
Turcorum multitudinem, quam multis diebus ad debellandum
*of-Turks multitude which for-many days for warring*
nobiscum venturam extra civitatem exspectaveramus, per
*with-us about-to-come outside the-city we-had-awaited over*
campos omnes discurrentem vidimus. qui IIIª die nos
*the-fields all running-about we-saw who on-the-third day us*
obsederunt et praedictum asylum plus quam C eorum
*besieged and the-aforesaid stronghold more than a-hundred of-them*
milia intraverunt ac per portam eiusdem asyli ad
*thousand entered and through the-gate of-the-same stronghold into*
civitatem sub asylo constitutam, nobis illisque communem,
*the-city below the-stronghold set to-us and-them common*
inrumpere voluerunt. nos autem in alio monte exsistentes
*to-break-in wished we moreover on another mount being*
ipsi asylo opposito, viam inter utrumque exercitum
*to-that-very stronghold opposite the-road between both armies*

ad civitatem descendentem, ne ipsi nobis multo plures
*to the-city descending lest they upon-us much more*
inrumperent, custodientes et intus et extra nocte et die
*break-in guarding both within and without by-night and by-day*
bellantes, portas asyli ad civitatem descendentes intrare
*fighting the-gates of-the-stronghold to the-city descending to-enter*
et ad castra compulimus remeare. cum ergo vidissent, quod
*and to the-camp we-compelled to-return when therefore they-saw that*
ex illa parte nihil nocere potuissent, ita nos ex omni parte
*from that side nothing to-harm they-could so us from every side*
circumiverunt, quod nulli ex nostris exire vel ad nos venire
*they-surrounded that none of our-men to-go-out or to us to-come*
potuerunt. qua de re ita desolati et adflicti omnes fuimus,
*could which for thing so desolate and afflicted all we-were*
quod fame et multis aliis angustiis morientes, equos
*that from-hunger and many other straits dying horses*
et asinos nostros famelicos interficientes, multi nostrum
*and asses our famished killing many of-us*
comederunt. sed interim, clementissima Dei omnipotentis
*ate but meanwhile the-most-clement of-God almighty*
misericordia nobis subveniente et pro nobis vigilante, lanceam
*mercy to-us coming-to-aid and for us watching the-lance*
dominicam, qua Salvatoris nostri latus Longini manibus
*of-the-Lord with-which of-the-Savior our the-side of-Longinus by-the-hands*
perforatum fuit, S. Andrea apostolo cuidam famulo Dei
*pierced was Saint Andrew the-apostle to-a-certain servant of-God*
ter revelante, locum etiam ubi lancea iacebat demonstrante,
*thrice revealing the-place also where the-lance lay showing*
in ecclesia beati Petri apostolorum principis invenimus. cuius
*in the-church of-blessed Peter of-the-apostles the-prince we-found whose*
inventione aliisque multis divinis revelationibus ita confortati
*by-the-finding and-other many divine revelations so comforted*

et corroborati fuimus, ut qui antea adflicti et timidi
*and strengthened we-were that we-who before afflicted and timid*
fueramus, tunc ad proeliandum audacissimi promptissimique
*had-been then for fighting most-bold and-most-ready*
alii alios hortabamur. tribus igitur hebdomadis et IV
*some others we-exhorted for-three therefore weeks and four*
diebus obsessi, in vigilia apostolorum Petri et Pauli, in
*days besieged on the-vigil of-the-apostles Peter and Paul in*
Deo confidentes, de omnibus iniquitatibus nostris confessi,
*God trusting of all iniquities our having-confessed*
portas civitatis cum omni nostro bellico apparatu
*out-of-the-gates of-the-city with all our warlike equipment*
exivimus, et tam pauci eramus, quod ipsi nos non contra
*we-went-out and so few we-were that they us not against*
eos pugnare sed fugere adfirmabant. nobis autem omnibus
*them to-fight but to-flee affirmed we moreover all*
paratis et tam peditum quam militum certis ordinibus
*prepared and as-well of-foot-soldiers as of-knights in-fixed ranks*
dispositis, ubi maior eorum virtus et fortitudo erat,
*arranged where the-greater their strength and might was*
audacter requisivimus cum lancea dominica et a prima
*boldly we-sought-them with the-lance of-the-Lord and from the-first*
belli statione fugere eos coegimus. ipsi autem, ut mos
*of-the-battle station to-flee them we-forced they moreover as custom*
eorum est, undique se dispergere coeperunt, occupando
*their is on-all-sides themselves to-scatter began seizing*
colles et vias ubicumque poterant nos girare voluerunt. sic
*hills and roads wherever they-could us to-surround they-wished so*
enim nos omnes interficere putaverunt. sed nobis multis bellis
*for us all to-kill they-thought but to-us by-many wars*
contra eorum calliditates et ingenia edoctis, gratia Dei
*against their wiles and devices taught by-the-grace of-God*

et misericordia ita subvenit, ut qui paucissimi ad eorum
*and mercy so it-came-to-aid that we-who very-few in their*
comparationem eramus, omnes illos in unum coegimus et
*comparison were all them into one we-drove and*
coactos, dextera Dei nobiscum dimicante, fugere et castra
*driven the-right-hand of-God with-us fighting to-flee and the-camp*
cum omnibus, quae in castris erant, relinquere compulimus.
*with all-things which in the-camp were to-leave we-compelled*
quibus devictis totaque die fugatis et multis eorum
*who conquered and-the-whole day put-to-flight and many of-them*
milibus interfectis, ad civitatem laeti et hilares remeavimus.
*thousands killed to the-city glad and cheerful we-returned*
asylum autem supradictum admiratus quidam, qui in eo
*the-stronghold moreover aforesaid an-emir certain who in it*
erat cum mille hominibus, Boamundo reddidit, et per
*was with a-thousand men to-Bohemond surrendered and through*
ipsius manum Christianae se fidei unanimiter subiugavit.
*his hand to-the-Christian himself faith with-one-mind subjected*
itaque Dominus noster Jesus Christus totam Antiochiam
*and-so the-Lord our Jesus Christ the-whole Antioch*
Romanae religioni ac fidei mancipavit. verum, quia solet
*to-the-Roman religion and faith made-over but because is-wont*
semper aliquod maestum intervenire laetis rebus, ille Podiensis
*always something sorrowful to-come-between glad things that of-Le-Puy*
episcopus, quem tuum vicarium nobis commiseras, peracto
*bishop whom as-your vicar to-us you-had-committed completed*
bello, in quo honeste fuit, et pacificata civitate, Kalendis
*the-battle in which honorably he-was and pacified the-city on-the-Kalends*
Augusti mortuus est. nunc igitur filii tui commisso patre
*of-August died has now therefore sons your of-the-committed father*
orbati, tibi spirituali patri nostro mandamus, ut qui hanc
*bereaved to-you spiritual father our we-send-word that you-who this*

viam incepisti et sermonibus tuis nos omnes et terras
*road began and by-words your us all and lands*
nostras et quicquid in terris erat relinquere fecisti et cruces
*our and whatever on earth was to-leave made and crosses*
baiulando Christum sequi praecepisti et Christianum nomen
*by-carrying Christ to-follow commanded and the-Christian name*
exaltare commonuisti, complendo quae hortatus es ad
*to-exalt admonished fulfilling what exhorted you-have to*
nos venias et quoscumque poteris, ut tecum veniant,
*us you-come and whoever you-shall-be-able that with-you they-come*
submoneas. hinc enim Christianum nomen sumpsit exordium.
*you-summon hence for the-Christian name took its-beginning*
nam postquam beatus Petrus in cathedra, quam cotidie
*for after blessed Peter on the-throne which daily*
cernimus, inthronizatus fuit, illi, qui prius vocabantur Galilaei,
*we-see enthroned was those who before were-called Galileans*
primum hinc et principaliter vocati sunt Christiani. quid
*first hence and chiefly called were Christians what*
igitur in orbe rectius esse videtur quam ut tu, qui
*therefore in the-world more-right to-be seems than that you who*
pater et caput Christianae religionis exsistis, ad urbem
*the-father and head of-the-Christian religion are to the-city*
principalem et capitalem Christiani nominis venias et
*principal and capital of-the-Christian name should-come and*
bellum, quod tuum est, ex tua parte conficias? nos enim
*the-war which yours is on your part should-accomplish we for*
Turcos et paganos expugnavimus, haereticos autem, Graecos
*the-Turks and pagans have-overcome the-heretics moreover Greeks*
et Armenos, Syros, Jacobitasque expugnare nequivimus.
*and Armenians Syrians and-Jacobites to-overcome we-could-not*
mandamus igitur et remandamus tibi, carissimo patri nostro,
*we-send-word therefore and send-word-again to-you dearest father our*

ut tu pater et caput ad tuae paternitatis locum venias,
*that you father and head to of-your fatherhood the-place should-come*
et qui beati Petri es vicarius, in cathedra eius sedeas
*and who of-blessed Peter are vicar on throne his should-sit*
et nos filios tuos in omnibus recte agendis oboedientes.
*and us sons your in all-things rightly to-be-done obedient*
habeas et omnes haereses, cuiuscumque generis sint,
*you-should-have and all heresies of-whatever kind they-be*
tua auctoritate et nostra virtute eradices et destruas.
*by-your authority and our strength you-should-uproot and destroy*
et sic nobiscum viam Jesu Christi a nobis inceptam et
*and so with-us the-road of-Jesus Christ by us begun and*
a te praedicatam perficias et portas etiam utriusque
*by you preached you-should-complete and the-gates also of-each*
Hierusalem nobis aperias et Sepulcrum Domini liberum
*Jerusalem to-us you-should-open and the-Sepulcher of-the-Lord free*
atque Christianum nomen super omne nomen exaltatum
*and the-Christian name above every name exalted*
facias. si enim ad nos veneris et viam per
*you-should-make if for to us you-shall-have-come and the-road by*
te inceptam nobiscum perfeceris, totus mundus tibi
*you begun with-us you-shall-have-completed the-whole world to-you*
oboediens erit. quod ipse te facere faciat qui Deus
*obedient shall-be which he-himself you to-do may-make who God*
vivit et regnat in saecula saeculorum. Amen.
*lives and reigns into the-ages of-ages amen*

## De invasione aliarum urbium. De castri Archas inacta obsidione et de itinere et aduentu Francorum ad Hierosolymam

XXV · MARRA, ARQA, AND THE ROAD TO JERUSALEM

*Bohemond and Raymond take Albara and Marra, where starving men eat the flesh of the Saracen dead, and Bohemond seizes Antioch. The army besieges Arqa in vain for nearly five weeks, and the princes leave it to march while the harvest feeds them. They pass Tripoli, Sidon, Tyre, and Caesarea; Tancred and Baldwin ride to Bethlehem; and on June 7 the army besieges Jerusalem.*

Cumque apud Antiochiam per IV menses viri nostri et equi
*and-when at Antioch for four months men our and horses*
eorum, requie et edulio refecti, vires pristinas resumpsissent,
*their by-rest and food refreshed strength former had-taken-up-again*
qui multis diebus multo labore fatigati fuerant, pars una
*who for-many days by-much labor wearied had-been part one*
exercitus, sumpto consilio, Syriam adierunt interiorem,
*of-the-army taken counsel Syria approached the-inner*
desiderantes tramitem Hierosolymitanum dilatare, in quo
*desiring the-path to-Jerusalem to-widen in which*
Boamundus et comes Raimundus maiores exstiterunt. alii
*Bohemond and count Raymond the-greater stood-forth the-other*
enim principes in partibus Antiochenis adhuc morabantur.
*for princes in the-parts of-Antioch still were-staying*
sed hi duo cum gente sua duas urbes, Baram videlicet et
*but these two with people their two cities Albara namely and*
Maram, magnae probitatis invasione comprehenderunt. priore
*Marra of-great of-prowess by-an-attack took the-former*
quarum citissime capta et caede civium prorsus
*of-which most-swiftly taken and by-the-slaughter of-the-citizens utterly*

depopulata raptisque omnibus quae in ea reppererunt, festini
*depopulated and-snatched all-things which in it they-found hastening*
alteram adierunt. ubi obsidione per XX dies acta, famem
*the-other they-approached where a-siege for twenty days carried-on hunger*
nimiam gens nostra pertulit. dicere perhorreo, quod plerique
*excessive the-people our endured to-say I-shudder that very-many*
nostrum famis rabie nimis vexati abscidebant de natibus
*of-us of-hunger by-the-rage too vexed cut from the-buttocks*
Saracenorum iam ibi mortuorum frusta, quae coquebant
*of-the-Saracens now there dead pieces which they-cooked*
et mandebant et parum ad ignem assata ore truci
*and chewed and little at the-fire roasted with-mouth savage*
devorabant. itaque plus obsessores quam obsessi angebantur.
*devoured and-so more the-besiegers than the-besieged were-tormented*
interea machinis, quas potuerunt, factis et muro admotis,
*meanwhile engines which they-could made and to-the-wall moved*
magnae audacitatis adsultu, suffragante Deo, per muri
*of-great boldness by-an-assault aiding God over of-the-wall*
fastigium Franci se intromiserunt; qui die illo et
*the-top the-Franks themselves let-in who on-day that and*
sequenti cunctos Saracenos a maiore usque ad minimum
*the-following all the-Saracens from the-greatest all-the-way to the-least*
occiderunt totamque substantiam eorum diripuerunt. qua
*killed and-the-whole substance their plundered which*
urbe sic detrita, Boamundus Antiochiam remeavit, de qua
*city thus worn-down Bohemond to-Antioch returned from which*
tunc homines Raimundi comitis, quos ibi proportionis suae
*then the-men of-Raymond the-count whom there of-share his*
custodes posuerat, eliminavit. quam urbem postea cum tota
*guards he-had-placed he-cast-out which city afterward with the-whole*
provincia possedit. aiebat enim, per prolocutionem suam
*province he-possessed he-said for that-by parley his*

et machinamentum eam adquisitam fuisse. comes vero
*and contrivance it acquired to-have-been the-count but*
Raimundus, iuncto sibi Tancredo, coeptum iter tenuit.
*Raymond joined to-himself Tancred the-begun journey held*
Robertus etiam comes Normannus die secundo discessionis
*Robert also the-count Norman on-the-day second of-the-departure*
a Mara urbe, quam ceperant, eidem exercitui adgregatus est.
*from Marra the-city which they-had-taken to-the-same army joined was*
Anno autem MºXCºIXº ab incarnatione Domini profecti
*in-the-year moreover the-1099th from the-incarnation of-the-Lord set-out*
sunt ad castrum Archas dictum, ad radicem montis Libani
*have to the-castle Arqa called at the-root of-mount Lebanon*
situm, quod condidit Aracaeus, ut legitur, Chanaan filius,
*situated which founded Aracaeus as it-is-read of-Canaan the-son*
nepos Noe. sed quia difficillimum est ad capiendum, per
*the-grandson of-Noah but because most-difficult it-is for taking for*
V fere septimanas ante illud in obsidione laborantes astiterunt
*five almost weeks before it in siege laboring they-stood*
nihil proficientes. dux equidem Godefridus et Robertus,
*nothing achieving the-duke indeed Godfrey and Robert*
comes Flandrensis, non multo post exercitum illum subsecuti
*count of-Flanders not much later army that followed*
sunt. qui Gibellum castrum obsidione vexabant, quando habita
*have who Jabala the-castle with-siege were-harassing when held*
legatione istis succurrendi habuerunt: unde confestim Gibellum
*a-message these of-coming-to-aid they-had whence at-once Jabala*
dimiserunt et ad exercitum causa bellandi mandati festini
*they-gave-up and to the-army for-the-sake of-warring summoned hastening*
perrexerunt; cum quibus postea circa oppidum sederunt, nam
*went-on with whom afterward around the-town they-sat for*
bellum, pro quo illuc iverant, non habuerunt. in illa tunc
*the-battle for which thither they-had-gone not they-had in that then*

obsidione Anselmus de Riboti Monte, miles strenuus, ictu
*siege Anselm of Ribemont Mount a-knight vigorous by-the-blow*
lapidis interiit. tunc autem facto invicem consilio, decreverunt
*of-a-stone perished then moreover made mutually counsel they-decreed*
pariter quod si aliquamdiu ibi morati fuerint et castrum
*together that if for-some-time there delayed they-shall-have-been and castle*
illud capere non potuerint, detrimentum inrestaurabile
*that to-take not they-shall-have-been-able loss irreparable*
cunctis inde continget. dixerunt esse operae pretium, ut,
*to-all thence shall-befall they-said it-to-be worth the-while that*
dimissa obsidione, vadant per viam illam, quam commercii
*given-up the-siege they-should-go by road that which of-commerce*
sciunt esse expertem, dum adhuc tempus messionis eos
*they-know to-be devoid while still the-time of-harvest them*
Hierosolymam ituros exspectat; et dum sic iverint,
*to-Jerusalem about-to-go awaits and while thus they-shall-have-gone*
de messibus undique iam adultis vivere poterunt et tali
*on harvests on-all-sides now grown to-live they-shall-be-able and with-such*
stipendio a Deo praeparato, ad locum desideratissimum, ipso
*provision by God prepared to the-place most-desired he-himself*
ducente, pervenient. sic laudatum est et sic factum est.
*leading they-shall-come thus approved it-was and thus done it-was*
Tentoriis igitur collectis, abeuntes transierunt urbem Tripolim.
*the-tents therefore gathered going-away they-passed the-city Tripoli*
qua transita, iuxta Gibellulum castellum meaverunt. Aprilis
*which passed beside Jubail the-castle they-went April*
erat mensis et iam de messibus vivebant. ultra deinde
*was the-month and now on harvests they-lived beyond then*
progressi, prope urbem Berytum transigentes, invenerunt
*having-advanced near the-city Beirut passing they-found*
urbem aliam, quam legimus Sidonem vocabulo dictam, in
*a-city another which we-read Sidon by-name called in*

terra Fenice, quam condidit Sidon filius Chanaan, a
*the-land of-Phoenicia which founded Sidon son of-Canaan from*
quo Sidonii. exin Sareptam Sidoniae. dehinc invenerunt
*whom the-Sidonians thence Sarepta of-Sidon thereafter they-found*
Tyrum civitatem peroptimam, unde fuit Apollonius, de quo
*Tyre a-city most-excellent whence was Apollonius about whom*
legimus. de his duabus urbibus Evangelista sonat: in partes
*we-read of these two cities the-Evangelist sounds into the-parts*
Tyri et Sidonis. nunc autem regionis incolae priorem
*of-Tyre and Sidon now moreover of-the-region the-inhabitants the-former*
Sagittam, alteram vero Sur nominant. nam hebraice Soor
*Sagitta the-other but Sur call for in-Hebrew Soor*
dicitur. deinde castellum Ziph nominatum, in VI° miliario
*it-is-called then a-castle Ziph named at the-sixth milestone*
a Ptolomaida. post has transierunt ante Ptolomaidam, prius
*from Ptolemais after these they-passed before Ptolemais formerly*
Accon dictam, quam quidam nostrorum errantes Acharon esse
*Accon called which certain of-ours erring Ekron to-be*
putabant. sed Acharon urbs est Philistaea prope Ascalonem,
*thought but Ekron a-city is Philistine near Ascalon*
inter Jamniam et Azotum. Accon vero, id est Ptolomaida,
*between Jamnia and Azotus Accon but that is Ptolemais*
ab austro habet Carmeli montem. iuxta quam transeuntes, ad
*on the-south has Carmel the-mount beside which passing on*
dexteram reliquerunt oppidum Caypham dictum, post haec
*the-right they-left the-town Haifa called after these-things*
iuxta Doram, exin iuxta Caesaream Palestinae incessimus,
*beside Dor thence beside Caesarea of-Palestine we-advanced*
quae quidem antiquitus dicta est altero nomine Turris
*which indeed anciently called was by-another name the-Tower*
Stratonis, in qua Herodes, Agrippa dictus, nepos illius
*of-Straton in which Herod Agrippa called the-grandson of-that*

Herodis, in cuius tempore natus est Christus, consumptus
*Herod in whose time born was Christ consumed*
a vermibus, exspiravit infeliciter. tum quidem ad dexteram
*by worms breathed-his-last unhappily then indeed on the-right*
partem reliquerunt maritimam et Arsuth oppidum, et per
*side they-left the-coast and Arsuf the-town and through*
urbem nomine Ramatha sive Arimathia perrexerunt, de qua
*the-city by-name Ramatha or Arimathea they-went-on from which*
Saraceni incolae aufugerant pridie quam illuc pervenissent
*the-Saracen inhabitants had-fled the-day-before that thither had-come*
Franci. illic annonam multam invenerunt, de qua iumenta
*the-Franks there grain much they-found with which beasts-of-burden*
sua oneraverunt et usque Hierosolymam portaverunt.
*their they-loaded and up-to Jerusalem carried-it*
Mora quippe ibi per IV dies facta, cum basilicae S.
*the-delay indeed there for four days made when over-the-basilica of-Saint*
Georgii episcopum praefecissent et in arcibus urbis homines
*George a-bishop they-had-set and in the-towers of-the-city men*
ad custodiendum locassent, Hierosolymam iter suum
*for guarding they-had-placed toward-Jerusalem journey their*
protenderunt. ipso die usque castellum, quod Emaus
*they-stretched on-that-very day up-to the-castle which Emmaus*
dicitur, ambulaverunt, quod iuxta se habet Modin, civitatem
*is-called they-walked which beside itself has Modin the-city*
Machabaeorum. nocte vero sequenti C milites de
*of-the-Maccabees on-the-night indeed following a-hundred knights of*
probioribus conscenderunt equos, qui aurora clarescente prope
*the-more-valiant mounted horses who the-dawn brightening near*
Iherusalem transeuntes usque Bethleem properaverunt: de
*Jerusalem passing up-to Bethlehem hastened of*
quibus erat Tancredus unus, alter vero Balduinus. quod
*whom was Tancred one another but Baldwin which*

cum Christiani, qui inibi conversabantur, comperirent, Graeci
*when the-Christians who there dwelt learned Greeks*
videlicet et Syri, Francos illuc advenisse, gavisi sunt
*namely and Syrians the-Franks thither to-have-arrived rejoiced have*
gaudio magno valde. ignorabant tamen primitus quae gens
*with-joy great very they-knew-not yet at-first what people*
essent, putantes eos vel Turcos vel Arabes esse. sed cum
*they-were thinking them either Turks or Arabs to-be but when*
aperte propius eos intuerentur et eos non dubitarent esse
*openly nearer them they-gazed-on and them not they-doubted to-be*
Francos, statim gaudenter crucibus adsumptis et textis,
*Franks at-once gladly crosses taken-up and gospel-books*
obviam flendo et pie cantando processerunt eis: flendo,
*to-meet-them weeping and piously singing they-came-forth to-them weeping*
quoniam metuebant ne tantillum gentis a multitudine tanta
*because they-feared lest so-little of-a-people by a-multitude so-great*
paganorum, quos in patria esse sciebant, facillime quandoque
*of-pagans whom in the-country to-be they-knew very-easily sometime*
occiderentur; cantando, quoniam congratulabantur eis quos
*should-be-killed singing because they-congratulated them whom*
diu desideraverant esse venturos, quos Christianismum, a
*long they-had-desired to-be about-to-come whom Christendom by*
nefandis tamdiu pessumdatum, in honorem debitum et
*the-wicked so-long trampled to the-honor due and*
pristinum relevare sentiebant. facta autem ilico in basilica
*former to-raise-up they-perceived made moreover at-once in the-basilica*
beatae Mariae supplicatione ad Deum devota, cum locum
*of-blessed Mary a-supplication to God devout when the-place*
in quo Christus natus fuit visitassent, dato Syris osculo
*in which Christ born was they-had-visited given to-the-Syrians the-kiss*
pacifico, ad urbem sanctam Iherusalem celeriter regressi sunt.
*peaceful to the-city holy Jerusalem swiftly returned have*

ecce subsequens exercitus, relicta in sinistra parte Gabaon,
*behold the-following army left on the-left side Gibeon*
quae ab Iherosolymis L distat stadiis, ubi Josue soli
*which from Jerusalem fifty is-distant stades where Joshua to-the-sun*
imperavit et lunae, civitati tunc adpropinquavit. et cum
*commanded and to-the-moon to-the-city then drew-near and when*
praecursores signiferi vexilla elevata civibus monstrassent,
*the-forerunners standard-bearers the-banners raised to-the-citizens had-shown*
protinus contra eos interni hostes exierunt. sed qui festini
*at-once against them the-inner enemies went-out but who hastily*
sic exierant, festinatius in urbem mox repulsi sunt.
*thus had-gone-out more-hastily into the-city soon driven-back were*

Lucis septenae iam Iunius igne calebat,
*of-light seventh now June with-fire was-warm*
Iherusalem Franci cum vallant obsidione.
*Jerusalem the-Franks when invest with-siege*

## De situ Iherusalem

### XXVI · THE SITE OF JERUSALEM

*Jerusalem stands on a mountain without streams, with only Siloam's spring, but with many cisterns. It has David's tower, the Temple of the Lord with the rock where some say the ark lies, the round church of the Sepulcher open to the sky, and Solomon's Temple, now falling down. Hadrian adorned it and named it Aelia.*

Est equidem civitas Iherusalem in montano loco posita,
*is indeed the-city Jerusalem in a-mountainous place set*
rivis, silvis fontibusque carens, excepto tantum fonte
*of-streams of-woods and-of-springs lacking except only the-spring*

Siloe, distante ab urbe quantum iactus est arcus, ubi
*of-Siloam distant from the-city as-far-as the-cast is of-a-bow where*
sufficienter aqua interdum habetur, interdum vero raro
*sufficiently water at-times is-had at-times indeed by-scant*
haustu attenuatus invenitur: qui fonticulus in vallis est
*drawing thinned is-found which little-spring in of-the-valley is*
fundo sub monte Sion in decursione torrentis Cedron, qui
*the-bottom under mount Zion in the-course of-the-torrent Kidron which*
tempore hiemali per vallem mediam Iosaphat defluere
*in-time wintry through the-valley middle of-Jehoshaphat to-flow-down*
solet. cisternae autem multae et aquis satis abundae in
*is-wont cisterns moreover many and in-waters quite abundant in*
urbe habentur, quae imbribus hibernis reservantur. extra
*the-city are-had which by-the-rains of-winter are-kept outside*
urbem quoque plures inveniuntur, quibus homines et pecora
*the-city also many are-found by-which men and cattle*
refocillantur. constat civitas haec condecenti magnitudine facta
*are-refreshed stands city this of-fitting size made*
per circuitum, ita ut nec parvitate nec magnitudine cuiquam
*in circuit so that neither by-smallness nor by-size to-anyone*
videatur fastidiosa, quae interius a muro usque ad murum
*it-may-seem irksome which within from wall all-the-way to wall*
quantum iacit arcus quater sagittam est lata. habet siquidem
*as-far-as shoots a-bow four-times an-arrow is broad it-has indeed*
ab occasu turrim Davidicam, utroque latere supplentem
*on the-west the-tower of-David on-each side filling-out*
civitatis murum; montem Sion a meridie paulo minus quam
*of-the-city the-wall mount Zion on the-south a-little less than*
iaciat arcus sagittam; ad orientem Oliveti montem mille
*shoots a-bow an-arrow to the-east of-Olivet the-mount a-thousand*
passibus ab urbe distantem. praedicta quidem Davidis turris
*paces from the-city distant the-aforesaid indeed of-David tower*

usque ad medietatem sui ab imo solide massata est
*all-the-way to the-middle of-itself from the-bottom solidly massed is*
et de lapidibus caementata quadris et magnis et plumbo
*and of stones cemented squared and great and with-lead*
fusili sigillatis: quae si bene munita cibario fuerit,
*molten sealed which if well furnished with-food it-shall-have-been*
XV homines vel XX ab omni adsultu hostium defendere
*fifteen men or twenty from every assault of-the-enemies to-defend*
poterunt. et est in eadem urbe Templum dominicum,
*shall-be-able and there-is in the-same city the-Temple of-the-Lord*
opere rotundo conpositum, ubi Salomon alterum prius
*in-work round composed where Solomon another earlier*
instituit mirificum, quod quamvis illi priori schemati
*founded wondrous which although to-that former design*
nullatenus sit comparandum, istud tamen opere mirabili
*by-no-means be to-be-compared this yet in-work wondrous*
et forma speciosissima factum est. Sepulcri dominici
*and in-form most-beautiful made is of-the-Sepulcher of-the-Lord*
ecclesia forma rotunda similiter, quae nunquam fuit tecta,
*the-church in-form round likewise which never was roofed*
sed semper foramine patulo architecti sapientis magisterio
*but always with-an-opening wide of-an-architect wise by-the-mastery*
artificiose machinato, hiatu perpetuo aperta claret in summo.
*artfully contrived by-a-gap perpetual open shines at the-top*
nec valeo nec audeo nec sapio multa, quae inibi
*nor am-I-able nor do-I-dare nor do-I-know-how many-things which there*
habentur, quaedam quidem adhuc praesentia, quaedam vero
*are-had some indeed still present some but*
iam praeterita recitare, ne in aliquo vel haec legentes vel
*already past to-recount lest in anything either this reading or*
haec audientes fallam. cum in templi medio, quando prius
*this hearing I-deceive when in of-the-temple the-middle when first*

intravimus et postea per XV fere annos, rupes quaedam ibi
*we-entered and afterward for fifteen almost years a-rock certain there*
nativa habetur, in qua divinabant esse arcam foederis Domini
*native is-had in which they-divined to-be the-ark of-the-covenant of-the-Lord*
cum urna et tabulis Moysi sigillatim conclusam, eo
*with the-urn and the-tablets of-Moses one-by-one shut-in for-the-reason*
quod Iosias, rex Iuda, poni eam iussit dicens: „nequaquam
*that Josiah king of-Judah to-be-placed it ordered saying by-no-means*
portabitis eam de loco isto“. praevidebat enim captivitatem
*shall-you-carry it from place this he-foresaw for the-captivity*
futuram; sed istud obest, quod in descriptionibus Ieremiae
*future but this stands-against-it that in the-descriptions of-Jeremiah*
legimus in libro Machabaeorum secundo, quod ipse
*we-read in the-book of-the-Maccabees second that he-himself*
Ieremias eam in Arabia occultaverit, dicens nequaquam illam
*Jeremiah it in Arabia hid saying by-no-means it*
esse inveniendam, donec gentes multae congregarentur. ipse
*to-be to-be-found until peoples many should-be-gathered he*
quidem contemporaneus huius regis Iosiae fuit; tamen vivendi
*indeed contemporary of-this king Josiah was yet of-living*
finem fecit rex, antequam Ieremias defungeretur occisus.
*an-end made the-king before Jeremiah died killed*
super rupem etiam praedictam dicebant angelum Domini
*upon the-rock also aforesaid they-said the-angel of-the-Lord*
stetisse et populum peremisse, propter dinumerationem
*to-have-stood and the-people to-have-slain on-account-of the-numbering*
insipienter a David factam et Domino displicentem. rupes
*foolishly by David made and to-the-Lord displeasing the-rock*
autem illa, quia Templum Domini deturpabat, postea cooperta
*moreover that because the-Temple of-the-Lord it-disfigured afterward covered*
est et marmore pavimentata, ubi nunc est altare suppositum
*was and with-marble paved where now is an-altar set-under*

et clerus ibi adaptavit chorum. hoc Templum dominicum in
*and the-clergy there fitted a-choir this Temple of-the-Lord in*
veneratione magna cuncti Saraceni habuerant, ubi precationes
*veneration great all the-Saracens had-held where prayers*
suas lege sua libentius quam alibi faciebant, quamvis
*their by-law their more-willingly than elsewhere they-made although*
idolo in nomine Mahumet facto eas vastarent, in quod
*with-an-idol in the-name of-Muhammad made them they-laid-waste into which*
etiam nullum ingredi Christianum permittebant. alterum
*also no to-enter Christian they-allowed the-other*
Templum, quod dicitur Salomonis, magnum est et mirabile.
*Temple which is-called Solomon's great is and wondrous*
non est autem illud idem, quod Salomon fabricari fecit,
*not is moreover it the-same which Solomon to-be-built caused*
quod quidem non potuit propter inopiam nostram in statu
*which indeed not could for want our in the-state*
quo illud invenimus sustentari; quapropter magna iam
*in-which it we-found be-sustained wherefore in-great now*
ex parte destruitur. non desunt etiam civitati per vicos
*from part it-is-destroyed not are-lacking also to-the-city along the-streets*
aquaeductus, per quos imbrium tempore omnes spurcitiae
*aqueducts through which of-rains in-time all filths*
diluuntur. hanc urbem etiam Aelius Hadrianus imperator
*are-washed-away this city also Aelius Hadrian the-emperor*
mirifice decoravit et vicos et plateas decenter pavimentis
*wondrously adorned and the-streets and squares fittingly with-pavements*
exornavit. de cuius nomine Iherusalem Aelia vocata est. ex
*he-decked from whose name Jerusalem Aelia called was from*
his et ceteris huiusmodi venerabilis est et gloriosa civitas.
*these and other-things of-this-kind venerable is and glorious the-city*

# De obsidione urbis Iherusalem

## XXVII · THE SIEGE AND CAPTURE OF JERUSALEM

*An assault with ladders fails, and the army builds engines while fetching water from miles away. On the second day of the attack the Franks turn the defenders' own beams into a bridge from their tower, a tower on the wall burns, and at noon on a Friday they enter. The Saracens flee to David's tower and the two Temples; in Solomon's Temple nearly ten thousand are beheaded, and the Franks spare no one, not even women and children.*

Quam cum aspicerent Franci et viderent eam ad capiendum
*which when beheld the-Franks and saw it for taking*
gravem, iussum est a principibus nostris scalas ligneas
*difficult ordered it-was by princes our ladders wooden*
fieri, quibus muro admotis deinde et erectis, cum impetu
*to-be-made by-which to-the-wall moved then and raised with onslaught*
feroci per eas in summum muri scandentes, urbem Deo
*fierce by them to the-top of-the-wall climbing the-city God*
iuvante ingrederentur. quod cum fecissent, die septimo
*helping they-might-enter which when they-had-done on-the-day seventh*
sequenti, monitu procerum, sonantibus bucinis mane
*following by-the-warning of-the-nobles sounding the-trumpets in-the-morning*
claro, impetu miro civitatem undique adsilierunt. et
*bright with-onslaught wondrous the-city on-all-sides they-assaulted and*
cum usque ad horam diei sextam adsiluissent et per
*when all-the-way to the-hour of-the-day sixth they-had-assaulted and by*
scalas quas aptaverant, eo quod paucae erant, introire
*the-ladders which they-had-fitted for-the-reason that few they-were to-enter*
nequirent, adsultum tristes dimiserunt. tunc adunato consilio,
*they-could-not the-assault sad they-gave-up then gathered a-council*
iussum est ab artificibus machinas fieri, quibus muro
*ordered it-was by the-craftsmen engines to-be-made by-which to-the-wall*

admotis, spei effectum, auxiliante Deo, adipiscerentur. quod
*moved of-hope the-effect helping God they-might-obtain which*
ita factum est. interim quidem nec panis nec carnis inopiam
*so done was meanwhile indeed neither of-bread nor of-meat want*
passi sunt; sed quia locus ille aridus et inaquosus et sine
*suffered have but because place that dry and waterless and without*
fluminibus exsistat, tam viri quam iumenta eorum egebant
*rivers is as-well the-men as beasts their lacked*
aqua nimis ad potandum. quapropter, quia monebat hoc
*water very-much for drinking wherefore because urged this*
necessitas, longe aquam quaeritabant et a IV miliariis vel
*necessity far water they-sought and from four miles or*
V laboriose ad obsidionem in utribus suis cotidie apportabant.
*five laboriously to the-siege in skins their daily they-brought*
machinis autem paratis, arietibus scilicet et scrophis, ad
*the-engines moreover prepared rams namely and sows for*
adsiliendum urbem item paraverunt. inter artificia vero illa
*assaulting the-city likewise they-prepared among contrivances indeed those*
turrim unam ex lignis exiguis, quia magna materies in
*a-tower one of timbers slender because great material in*
locis illis non habetur, compegerunt, quam noctu, edicto
*places those not is-had they-fastened-together which by-night an-edict*
proinde facto, ad unum civitatis cornu frustatim detulerunt.
*accordingly made to one of-the-city horn piecemeal they-carried*
et sic mane ipso cum petrarias et cetera adminicula
*and thus in-the-morning itself when stone-throwers and the-other aids*
paravissent, citissime haud longe a muro compactam
*they-had-prepared most-swiftly not far from the-wall fastened*
erexerunt. quam erectam et de coriis deforis bene munitam,
*they-raised which raised and with hides outside well protected*
paulatim promovendo muro propius impegerunt. tum vero
*little-by-little by-moving-forward to-the-wall nearer they-drove then indeed*

rari milites, tamen audaces, monente cornu, ascenderunt super
*few knights yet bold warning the-born climbed upon*
eam, contra quos Saraceni nihilominus se defendendo
*it against whom the-Saracens nonetheless themselves by-defending*
faciebant, et ignem cum oleo et adipe vividum cum
*acted and fire with oil and fat lively with*
faculis aptatis praedictae turri et militibus, qui erant in
*torches fitted at-the-aforesaid tower and the-knights who were in*
ea, fundibulis suis iaculabantur. multis igitur utrorumque
*it with-slings their hurled for-many therefore of-both*
sic invicem certantium mors erat praesens et festina. ea
*thus mutually contending death was present and swift on-that*
quidem in parte, qua Raimundus comes et homines
*indeed in the-part in-which Raymond the-count and the-men*
eius adsistebant, scilicet in monte Sion, cum machinis suis
*his stood-by namely on mount Zion with engines their*
adsultum magnum dabant. ex alia vero parte, qua dux
*assault great they-gave on the-other indeed side on-which the-duke*
erat Godefridus et Robertus Normanniae comes, Robertus
*was Godfrey and Robert of-Normandy the-count Robert*
quoque Flandrensis, maior erat muro adsultus. illo die
*also of-Flanders greater was to-the-wall the-assault on-that day*
sic agitur. sequenti quoque die laborem eundem, facto
*thus it-is-done on-the-following also day labor the-same made*
bucinarum concrepitu, virilius inierunt, ita ut in uno loco
*of-trumpets a-blaring more-manfully they-entered so that in one place*
cum arietibus pulsando murum perforarent. pendebant nempe
*with rams by-beating the-wall they-pierced hung indeed*
ante muri propugnacula duo asseres, funibus illic adligati,
*before of-the-wall the-battlements two beams by-ropes there tied*
quos Saraceni sibi praeparaverant, ut inruentibus et
*which the-Saracens for-themselves had-prepared that to-those-rushing and*

lapides in eos iacientibus obstaculum eis utile fierent.
*stones at them hurling an-obstacle to-them useful they-should-become*
sed quod pro incremento sibi fecerant, idem ad
*but what for advantage for-themselves they-had-made the-same for*
detrimentum suum, Domino providente, postea exceperunt.
*detriment their the-Lord providing afterward received*
nam turri praefata muro admota rudentibusque, quibus
*for the-tower aforesaid to-the-wall moved and-the-ropes by-which*
ligna praedicta pendebant, falcibus sectis, de eisdem tignis
*the-timbers aforesaid hung with-sickles cut from the-same beams*
unum pontem sibi Franci coaptaverunt, quem de
*one bridge for-themselves the-Franks fitted which from*
turri super murum callide extensum iactaverunt. iamiamque
*the-tower over the-wall cunningly stretched they-threw and-now-now*
ardebat arx una in muro lapidea, supra quam machinatores
*was-burning a-tower one on the-wall of-stone upon which engineers*
nostri torres flammeos iniecerant, unde, foco paulatim inter
*our brands flaming had-thrown whence the-fire little-by-little among*
lignorum materiam nutrito, fumus flammaque sic prodire
*of-timbers the-material nourished smoke and-flame so to-come-forth*
coepit, ut nec unus quidem custodum civium ibi ulterius
*began that not one even of-the-guards of-the-citizens there further*
morari posset. mox igitur Francis hora meridiana urbem
*to-stay could soon therefore the-Franks at-the-hour midday the-city*
magnifice intrantibus, die quae Veneris habebatur, qua
*magnificently entering on-the-day which of-Venus was-held on-which*
Christus etiam in cruce totum mundum redemit, cornibus
*Christ also on the-cross the-whole world redeemed the-horns*
insonantibus, cunctis tumultuantibus, viriliter impetentibus,
*sounding all tumultuous manfully assailing*
Adjuva Deus exclamantibus, vexillum in muri fastigio statim
*help O-God shouting the-banner on of-the-wall the-top at-once*

elevantibus, pagani omnino exterriti, per vicorum angiportus
*raising the-pagans wholly terrified through of-the-streets the-alleys*
audaciam suam in fugam celerem commutaverunt omnes. qui
*boldness their into flight swift changed all who*
cum velociter fugerent, velocius fugati sunt. hoc nondum
*when swiftly they-fled more-swiftly put-to-flight were this not-yet*
comes Raimundus advertebat, qui ex altera urbis parte
*count Raymond noticed who from the-other of-the-city side*
cum gente sua fortiter adsiliebat, donec per muri apicem
*with people his strongly was-assaulting until over of-the-wall the-top*
Saracenos exsilire conspexerunt. quo viso, ad urbem laetissimi
*the-Saracens leap-out they-saw which seen to the-city most-glad*
quantocius cucurrerunt et cum aliis hostes nefarios
*with-all-speed they-ran and with the-others the-enemies wicked*
persequi et occidere non cessaverunt. tum quidem alii, tam
*to-pursue and to-kill not they-ceased then indeed some as-well*
Arabes quam Aethiopes, in arcem Daviticam fugientes
*Arabs as Ethiopians into the-citadel of-David fleeing*
se intromiserunt, alii vero in Templum Domini atque
*themselves let-in others but into the-Temple of-the-Lord and*
Salomonis se incluserunt, in quorum atriis impetus in
*of-Solomon themselves shut-in in whose courts an-onslaught against*
eos agebatur nimius: nusquam erat etiam locus, quo Saraceni
*them was-made excessive nowhere was also a-place where the-Saracens*
gladiatores evadere possent. supra Salomonis templum, quod
*the-swordsmen to-escape could upon of-Solomon the-temple which*
fugiendo ascenderant, multi eorum ad mortem sagittati
*by-fleeing they-had-climbed many of-them to death shot-with-arrows*
sunt et deorsum de tecto praecipitati, in quo etiam templo
*were and down from the-roof thrown-headlong in which also temple*
X milia fere decollati sunt. quod si inibi essetis, pedes
*ten thousand almost beheaded were that if there you-had-been feet*

vestri sanguine peremptorum usque ad bases tingerentur.
*your with-the-blood of-the-slain all-the-way to the-ankles would-be-dyed*
quid narrabo? nullus ex eis vitae est reservatus. sed neque
*what shall-I-tell none of them for-life was kept but neither*
feminis neque parvulis eorum pepercerunt.
*the-women nor the-little-ones their they-spared*

## De spoliis quae Christiani ceperunt

XXVIII · THE SPOILS

*The squires split the bellies of the dead for swallowed bezants and burn the corpses to find the gold in the ash. Tancred strips the Temple of the Lord of gold, silver, and gems, then restores them or their value. Verses tell how our people run through the city with drawn swords, sparing no one, and the dead lie strewn like apples and acorns falling from shaken boughs.*

Mirabile autem quid videretis, cum scutigeri nostri atque
*wondrous moreover what you-would-see when shield-bearers our and*
pedites pauperiores, calliditate Saracenorum comperta, ventres
*foot-soldiers poorer the-cunning of-the-Saracens discovered the-bellies*
eorum iam mortuorum findebant, ut de intestinis eorum
*of-them now dead split that from the-intestines their*
bisantios excerperent, quos vivi faucibus diris transglutiverant.
*bezants they-might-pick-out which living with-throats dire they-had-swallowed*
quapropter post dies aliquot, acervo magno de cadaveribus
*wherefore after days some a-heap great of corpses*
facto et cinere tenus combusto, aurum memoratum in
*made and to-ash as-far burned the-gold mentioned in*
eodem cinere facilius reppererunt. Tancredus autem Templum
*the-same ash more-easily they-found Tancred moreover the-Temple*
dominicum festino cursu ingressus, multum auri et argenti
*of-the-Lord with-swift course having-entered much of-gold and of-silver*

lapidesque pretiosos adripuit. sed hoc restaurans, eadem
*and-stones precious snatched but this restoring the-same*
cuncta vel eis appretiata loco sacrosancto remisit,
*all-things or for-them valued to-the-place most-holy he-sent-back*
licet in eo nihil tunc deicum ageretur, cum Saraceni
*although in it nothing then of-God was-done since the-Saracens*
legem suam idolatriae superstitioso ritu exercerent, qui etiam
*law their of-idolatry by-superstitious rite practiced who also*
Christianum nullum in id ingredi sinebant.
*Christian none into it to-enter allowed*

Ensibus exemptis currit gens nostra per urbem;
*with-swords drawn runs people our through the-city*
Nec cuiquam parcunt etiam miserere precanti.
*nor anyone they-spare even have-mercy begging*
Vulgus erat stratum, veluti cum putrida motis
*the-crowd was laid-low as when rotten shaken*
Poma cadunt ramis, agitataque ilice glandes.
*apples fall from-the-branches and-shaken from-the-oak acorns*

## De mansione Christianorum in urbe

### XXIX · THE FRANKS SETTLE IN THE CITY

*Each man keeps whatever house he enters first, and many poor become rich. Clerics and laymen visit the Sepulcher and the Temple with a new song, for the place where God, made man, was born, died, and rose is cleansed of the pagans and restored, a deed to be remembered to the end of the world.*

Et post stragem tantam ingressi sunt domos civium,
*and after slaughter so-great entered have the-houses of-the-citizens*
rapientes quaecumque in eis reppererunt: ita sane, ut
*seizing whatever in them they-found so surely that*
quicumque primus domum introisset, sive dives sive pauper
*whoever first a-house had-entered whether rich or poor*
esset, nullatenus ab aliquo alio fieret iniuria, quin
*he-was in-no-way by any other might-be-done wrong but-that*
domum ipsam aut palatium et quodcumque in ea repperisset,
*the-house itself or palace and whatever in it he-had-found*
ac si omnino propria sibi adsumeret, haberet et
*as if wholly his-own to-himself he-took he-should-have and*
possideret. hoc itaque ius invicem tenendum stabilierant.
*should-possess this and-so right mutually to-be-held they-had-established*
unde multi inopes effecti sunt locupletes. tunc autem ad
*whence many needy made were rich then moreover to*
Sepulcrum Domini et Templum eius gloriosum euntes, clerici
*the-Sepulcher of-the-Lord and Temple his glorious going clerics*
simul et laici, exsultationis voce altisona canticum novum
*together and laymen of-exultation with-voice high-sounding a-song new*
Domino decantando, loca sacrosancta tamdiu desiderata,
*to-the-Lord singing the-places most-holy so-long desired*
cum oblationibus faciendis supplicationibusque humillimis,
*with offerings to-be-made and-supplications most-humble*

laetabundi omnes visitaverunt. o tempus tam desideratum!
*rejoicing all visited O time so desired*
o tempus inter cetera tempora memorandum! o factum
*O time among other times to-be-remembered O deed*
factis omnibus anteferendum! vere desideratum, quoniam ab
*than-deeds all to-be-preferred truly desired since by*
omnibus fidei catholicae cultoribus interno mentis desiderio
*all of-the-faith catholic worshipers with-inner of-mind desire*
semper desideratum fuerat, ut locus, in quo cunctarum
*always desired it-had-been that the-place in which of-all*
creaturarum creator munus salutiferae recreationis, Deus
*creatures the-creator the-gift of-saving re-creation God*
homo factus, humano generi pietate sua multiplici, nascendo,
*man made to-the-human race by-pity his manifold by-being-born*
moriendo resurgendoque contulit, a paganorum contagione
*by-dying and-by-rising conferred from of-the-pagans the-contagion*
inhabitantium quandoque mundatus, tamdiu superstitione
*dwelling-there sometime cleansed so-long by-the-superstition*
eorum contaminatus, ab in se credentibus et confidentibus
*their defiled by in him those-believing and trusting*
in modum pristinae dignitatis reformaretur. et vere memoriale
*into the-mode of-former dignity should-be-restored and truly a-memorial*
et iure memorandum, quia quaeque Dominus Deus noster
*and by-right to-be-remembered because whatever the-Lord God our*
Jesus Christus, in terra homo cum hominibus conversans,
*Jesus Christ on earth a-man with men dwelling*
egit et docuit, ad memoriam celeberrimam renovata et
*did and taught to a-memory most-celebrated renewed and*
reducta sunt orthodoxis. et quod idem Dominus per
*brought-back were for-the-orthodox and what the-same Lord through*
hunc populum suum tam, ut opinor, dilectum et alumnum
*this people his so as I-think beloved and nursling*

familiaremque, ad hoc negotium praeelectum, expleri voluit,
*and-intimate for this business chosen-beforehand to-be-fulfilled wished*
usque in finem saeculi memoriale linguis tribuum
*all-the-way to the-end of-the-world a-memorial in-the-tongues of-the-tribes*
universarum personabit et permanebit.
*all shall-resound and shall-remain*

## De rege et patriarcha in urbe procreatis, et de inventione dominicae crucis

### XXX · THE PRINCE, THE PATRIARCH, AND THE CROSS

*Verses date the capture to July 15, 1099. Godfrey is chosen prince for his nobility, prowess, and patience; canons are placed in the Sepulcher church and the Temple, and the patriarch is left for the pope to approve. The garrison of David's tower is let go to Ascalon, and a fragment of the true cross, hidden by a Syrian, is found and carried in procession.*

Anno milleno centeno quominus uno
*in-the-year thousandth hundredth less one*
Virginis a partu Domini qui claruit ortu,
*of-the-Virgin from the-bearing of-the-Lord who shone by-birth*
Quindecies Iulio iam Phoebi lumine tacto,
*fifteen-times July now of-Phoebus by-the-light touched*
Iherusalem Franci capiunt virtute potenti,
*Jerusalem the-Franks take with-power mighty*
Quippe Godefrido patriae mox principe facto.
*indeed Godfrey of-the-fatherland soon prince made*

Quem ob nobilitatis excellentiam et militiae probitatem atque
*whom for of-nobility the-excellence and of-soldiership the-prowess and*
patientiae modestiam, necnon et morum elegantiam in urbe
*of-patience the-moderation and-also and of-manners the-elegance in the-city*
sancta regni principem omnis populus dominici exercitus
*holy of-the-kingdom prince all the-people of-the-Lord's army*
ad illud conservandum atque regendum elegit. tunc etiam locati
*for it to-be-kept and to-be-ruled chose then also placed*
sunt in ecclesia dominici Sepulcri canonici, atque in Templo
*were in the-church of-the-Lord's Sepulcher canons and in the-Temple*
eiusdem ipsi servituri. patriarcham autem tunc decreverunt
*of-the-same they to-serve a-patriarch moreover then they-decreed*
nondum ibi fieri, donec a Romano papa quaesissent,
*not-yet there to-be-made until from the-Roman pope they-had-asked*
quem ipse laudaret praefici. interea Turci et Arabes, nigri
*whom he-himself would-approve to-be-set-over meanwhile Turks and Arabs black*
quoque Aethiopes, quingenti fere, qui in arcem Daviticam
*also Ethiopians five-hundred almost who into the-citadel of-David*
se intromiserant, petierunt a Raimundo comite, qui
*themselves had-let-in sought from Raymond the-count who*
prope turrim illam hospitatus erat, ut pecunia eorum in
*near tower that lodged had that money their in*
arce ipsa retenta, vivos tantum eos abire permitteret. hoc
*the-citadel itself retained alive only them to-go-away he-should-allow this*
concessit, et hinc Ascalonem adierunt. placuit tunc Deo,
*he-granted and hence Ascalon they-approached it-pleased then God*
quod inventa est particula una crucis dominicae in loco
*that found was a-fragment one of-the-cross of-the-Lord in a-place*
secreto, iam ab antiquo tempore a viris religiosis occultata,
*secret now from ancient time by men religious hidden*
nunc autem a quodam homine Syro, Deo volente, revelata,
*now moreover by a-certain man Syrian God willing revealed*

quam cum patre suo inde conscio diligenter ibi et absconderat
*which with father his thereof aware diligently there both had-hidden*
et conservarat. quam quidem particulam in modum crucis
*and had-kept which indeed fragment in the-manner of-a-cross*
reformatam, aurea partim et argentea fabrica contectam,
*remade with-golden partly and silver workmanship covered*
ad dominicum Sepulcrum, dehinc etiam ad Templum
*to the-Lord's Sepulcher thereafter also to the-Temple*
congratulanter psallendo et gratias Deo agendo, qui per
*rejoicing by-singing-psalms and thanks to-God by-giving who for*
tot dies hunc thesaurum suum et nostrum sibi et nobis
*so-many days this treasure his and ours for-himself and for-us*
servaverat, omnes una in sublime propalatam detulerunt.
*had-kept all together on high displayed carried*

## De adventu et expugnatione paganorum et victoria Christianorum

### XXXI · THE BATTLE OF ASCALON

*The king of Babylon's general al-Afdal marches against them, and the Franks go out with the cross. Their captured herds march beside them, so that the pagans take them for an army. The Saracens try to surround the rear, but the Franks charge, and the Saracens flee to Ascalon, leaving tents full of gold and the twelve precious stones. The Franks burn what they cannot carry.*

Rex autem Babylonis et dux militiae ejus, nomine
*the-king moreover of-Babylon and the-leader of-the-army his by-name*
Lavedalius, cum audissent, quod Franci iam terras sibi
*al-Afdal when they-had-heard that the-Franks now lands to-themselves*
subdendo Babylonico regno appropinquassent, congregata
*by-subjecting to-the-Babylonian kingdom had-drawn-near gathered*

multitudine sub edicto de Turcis et Arabibus Aethiopibusque,
*a-multitude under edict of Turks and Arabs and-Ethiopians*
contra eos ire proeliatum festinaverunt. et cum iterum
*against them to-go to-battle hastened and when again*
per internuntios audissent Iherusalem tam ferociter iam
*through go-betweens they-had-heard Jerusalem so fiercely now*
fuisse captam, indignatus dux ille praedictus Babylonius
*to-have-been taken indignant the-leader that aforesaid Babylonian*
festinavit, ut vel proelium cum ipsis committeret vel eos
*hastened that either battle with them he-might-join or them*
in eadem urbe inclusos obsideret. quod cum Francis
*in the-same city shut-in he-might-besiege which when to-the-Franks*
intimaretur, adsumpto magnae audacitatis consilio, versus
*was-made-known taken of-great boldness counsel toward*
Ascalonem contra tyrannos illos acies suas direxerunt:
*Ascalon against tyrants those battle-lines their they-directed*
portantes secum lignum salutiferae crucis iam superius
*carrying with-them the-wood of-the-saving cross already above*
memoratum. cumque die quodam non longe ab Ascalone
*mentioned and-when on-day a-certain not far from Ascalon*
circumvagantes proelium Franci exspectarent, invenerunt
*wandering-about battle the-Franks were-awaiting they-found*
illic non minimam praedam de bobus et camelis, ovibus
*there not the-least plunder of oxen and camels sheep*
et capris. quam carram cum iuxta tentoria sole ruente
*and goats which booty when beside the-tents the-sun setting*
congregassent, iusserunt sub edicto principes nostri nunquam
*they-had-gathered ordered under edict princes our never*
in crastino, quo bellum fore putabant, secum minari, ut
*on the-morrow on-which battle to-be they-thought with-themselves to-drive that*
ab omni sarcina expediti ad proeliandum essent prompti.
*from every pack freed for fighting they-might-be ready*

mane autem facto, speculatoribus praemissis, paganos
*in-the-morning moreover made scouts sent-ahead the-pagans*
accedere didicerunt. quo scito, mox tribuni et centuriones
*to-approach they-learned which known soon the-tribunes and centurions*
per alas et cuneos gente sua constituta, proelium agendum
*in wings and wedges people their drawn-up the-battle to-be-done*
prudentissime ordinaverunt et contra hostes vexillis levatis
*most-prudently ordered and against the-enemies with-banners raised*
audacter processerunt. videretis praedictam praedam tamquam
*boldly advanced you-would-see the-aforesaid plunder as-if*
monitu ducentium a dextra et laeva parte acierum
*by-the-warning of-those-leading on the-right and left side of-the-battle-lines*
gressum suum recte agere, licet a nemine minaretur:
*step its rightly keep although by no-one it-was-driven*
ita ut multi paganorum eam a longe cum militibus
*so that many of-the-pagans it from far-off with knights*
nostris euntem spectantes, totum aestimarent esse Francorum
*our going watching the-whole thought to-be of-the-Franks*
exercitum. illi autem, populus innumerus, cum ad cuneos
*the-army they moreover the-people countless when to wedges*
nostros iam appropinquassent, tamquam cervus ramos
*our now they-had-drawn-near like a-stag the-branches*
cornuum praetendens, cuneo suo anteriori facto bifurco,
*of-horns stretching-forth with-wedge its front made forked*
distensione Arabum praecurrentium explicata, machinati sunt
*with-the-spreading of-the-Arabs running-ahead unfolded contrived have*
accingere postremos: ubi dux Godefridus subsequenter cum
*to-surround the-rearmost where duke Godfrey following with*
agmine denso militum armatorum remigrando postremam
*a-column dense of-knights armed by-moving-back the-rear*
aciem sollicitabat. ceteri enim proceres, alii in prima, alii
*battle-line was-tending the-other for nobles some in the-first others*

in secunda acie praeibant. sed cum ab utraque parte
*in the-second battle-line went-before but when from each side*
hostes hostibus quantum iactus est lapidis vel paulo plus
*foes to-foes as-far-as the-cast is of-a-stone or a-little more*
appropinquassent, ilico pedites nostri sagittas in illos
*had-drawn-near at-once the-foot-soldiers our arrows at them*
distendentes iecerunt. congruentissime mox secutae sunt
*stretching shot most-fittingly soon followed have*
sagittas lanceae, dum equites nostri, tamquam iureiurando
*the-arrows the-lances while knights our as-if by-oath*
omnes invicem confirmassent, impetu vehementi inruerunt
*all mutually they-had-confirmed with-onslaught vehement rushed*
in eos, et quorum quadrupedes tunc non fuerunt cursui
*upon them and whose four-footed-beasts then not were for-running*
celeres, continuo neci subversi sunt supra sessores, ubi
*swift at-once to-death overthrown were upon their-riders where*
parvae horae spatio multa corpora palluerunt exanimata. tunc
*in-a-small hour's space many bodies grew-pale lifeless then*
multi eorum metuentes, ascendebant arborum cacumina; qui
*many of-them fearing climbed of-trees the-tops who*
tamen inibi sagittati et morti laesi ad terram infeliciter
*yet there shot-with-arrows and to-death hurt to the-earth unhappily*
corruebant. incursu in eos penetrabili undique Saraceni
*fell by-the-onrush upon them penetrating on-all-sides the-Saracens*
perimebantur. tentoriis transactis, usque Ascalonis moenia
*were-slain the-tents passed up-to of-Ascalon the-walls*
qui evaserunt fugati sunt. quae civitas DCCis et
*who escaped put-to-flight were which city by-seven-hundred and*
XX stadiorum spatiis ab Iherosolyma distat. in prima
*twenty of-stades spaces from Jerusalem is-distant in the-first*
quidem acie dux eorum Lavedalius, licet antea
*indeed battle-line the-leader their al-Afdal although before*

Francos vilipendisset, non lente fugiens dorsum vertit, quibus
*the-Franks he-had-disparaged not slowly fleeing his-back turned to-whom*
tabernaculum suum cum ceteris extensum et pecunia
*tent his with the-others stretched and with-money*
multa munitum invitus reliquit. quorsum Franci regressi,
*much furnished unwilling he-left whither the-Franks returned*
victoria iucundi, Domino grates dando sunt regregati. tunc
*in-victory joyful to-the-Lord thanks giving were regathered then*
ingressi sunt tabernacula eorum et invenerunt in eis
*entered have the-tents their and found in them*
gazas multas, aurum, argentum, pallia, induvias, lapides
*treasures many gold silver cloaks garments stones*
pretiosos, qui duodecim sic nominantur: iaspis, sapphirus,
*precious which twelve thus are-named jasper sapphire*
chalcedonius, smaragdus, sardonix, sardius, chrysolithus,
*chalcedony emerald sardonyx sardius chrysolite*
beryllus, topazius, chrysoprasus, hyacinthus, amethystus.
*beryl topaz chrysoprase jacinth amethyst*
reppererunt etiam vasa et utensilia multiformia: galeros
*they-found also vessels and utensils many-shaped helmets*
auratos, anulos optimos, enses mirabiles, annonam, farinam,
*gilded rings most-excellent swords wondrous grain flour*
ceteraque multa. ea vero nocte illic hospitati sunt et
*and-other many-things that indeed night there lodged have and*
pervigiles bene se conservaverunt. nam die sequenti
*wakeful well themselves kept for on-the-day following*
putabant bellum a Saracenis reiterari, qui tamen timore valde
*they-thought battle by the-Saracens to-be-renewed who yet by-fear greatly*
perterriti nocte ipsa omnes aufugerunt. quo mane per
*terrified on-night that-very all fled which in-the-morning by*
exploratores comperto, vocibus laudifluis Deum benedixerunt
*scouts learned with-voices praise-flowing God they-blessed*

et glorificaverunt, qui tot milia perfidorum raro
*and glorified who so-many thousands of-the-faithless by-a-thin*
exercitu Christianorum dissipari permisit. Benedictus ergo
*army of-Christians to-be-scattered permitted blessed therefore*
Deus, qui non dedit nos in captionem dentibus eorum! beata
*God who not gave us into capture to-the-teeth their blessed*
enim gens, cuius est Dominus Deus eius! nonne minati
*for the-people whose is the-Lord God his not threatened*
fuerant ipsi Babylonii, dicentes: eamus et capiamus
*had they-themselves the-Babylonians saying let-us-go and let-us-take*
Iherusalem cum Francis in ea clausis! quibus omnibus
*Jerusalem with the-Franks in it shut-in whom all*
interemptis, eradamus illud Sepulcrum tam sibi pretiosum
*killed let-us-raze that Sepulcher so to-them precious*
et lapides ipsius aedificii extra urbem eiectos, nec mentio
*and the-stones of-that-very building outside the-city thrown nor mention*
ulterius umquam inde fiet! sed Deo miserante hoc
*further ever thereof shall-be-made but God having-mercy this*
in nihilum reverso, de pecunia etiam illorum oneraverunt
*to nothing turned with the-money also of-them loaded*
Franci equos eorundem et camelos. qui cum tentoria et
*the-Franks the-horses of-the-same and camels who since the-tents and*
tot iacula in campis iacentia arcusque et sagittas ad
*so-many javelins in the-fields lying and-bows and arrows to*
urbem sanctam deferre non possent, haec cuncta incendio
*the-city holy to-carry not they-could these-things all to-fire*
commiserunt, deinde Iherusalem gaudenter redierunt.
*committed then to-Jerusalem gladly they-returned*

## De reversione principum ad patriam

XXXII · SOME PRINCES GO HOME

*Some wash in the Jordan and gather palms at Jericho; the two Roberts sail for home by Constantinople, and Raymond goes to Latakia and Constantinople. Godfrey keeps Tancred with him and rules the principality of Jerusalem by common consent.*

His gestis, placuit quibusdam in patriam nationis suae
*these done it-pleased some into the-fatherland of-nation their*
reverti. et cum in Iordane flumine indilate loti fuissent
*to-return and when in the-Jordan river without-delay washed they-had-been*
et palmarum ramos apud Iericho in horto Abrahae dicto
*and of-palms branches at Jericho in the-garden of-Abraham called*
collegissent, Robertus, Normannorum comes, et Robertus,
*had-gathered Robert of-the-Normans count and Robert*
comes Flandriae, Constantinopolim navigio appetierunt, deinde
*count of-Flanders Constantinople by-ship sought then*
Franciam ad propria remeaverunt. Raimundus vero usque
*France to their-own returned Raymond but up-to*
Laodiciam Syriae regressus est, exin Constantinopolim, relicta
*Latakia of-Syria returned has thence to-Constantinople left*
uxore sua in Laodicia, rediturus. dux autem Godefridus,
*wife his in Latakia about-to-return the-duke moreover Godfrey*
retento sibi Tancredo, et aliis pluribus, principatum
*kept to-himself Tancred and others many the-principate*
Iherosolymitanum rexit: quem consensu omnium susceperat
*of-Jerusalem ruled which by-the-consent of-all he-had-received*
obtinendum.
*to-be-held*

# De Boamundo et Balduino et eorum peregrinatione

## XXXIII · BOHEMOND AND BALDWIN'S PILGRIMAGE

*Bohemond and Baldwin, who stayed to guard Antioch and Edessa, rejoice at the news; after routing Turks, Baldwin joins Bohemond and Archbishop Daimbert of Pisa, twenty-five thousand in all. They starve, chewing sugar cane, and freeze in the rains, and at last reach Jerusalem, keep Christmas at Bethlehem, see Daimbert made patriarch, and go down to the Jordan. Verses mark Urban's death.*

Cum autem audissent domnus Boamundus, qui Antiochiae
*when moreover had-heard lord Bohemond who at-Antioch*
tunc principabatur, vir prudens et strenuus, et domnus
*then was-prince a-man prudent and vigorous and lord*
Balduinus, praefati Godefridi frater, qui similiter Edessae
*Baldwin of-the-aforesaid Godfrey the-brother who likewise of-Edessa*
civitatis patriaeque adfinis trans fluvium Euphraten
*the-city and-of-the-country neighboring beyond the-river Euphrates*
dominabatur, Iherusalem ab illis qui praeiverant collegis suis
*ruled Jerusalem by those who had-gone-before colleagues their*
captam fuisse, laetissimi effecti Deo laudes exsolverunt inde
*taken to-have-been most-glad made to-God praises they-paid thence*
supplices. quod si illi, qui festinatione itineris praecesserant
*suppliant that if they who by-the-haste of-the-journey had-gone-before*
eos, bene et utiliter operati fuissent, quamvis eos tardius
*them well and usefully worked had although them later*
subsecuturi essent, hi duo cum suis participes tamen
*about-to-follow they-were these two with their-men partakers yet*
eiusdem fore bravii non est dubitandum. erat enim necesse,
*of-the-same to-be prize not it-is to-be-doubted it-was for necessary*
ut terra et civitates cum tanto labore iam Turcis ablatae
*that the-land and cities with so-great labor now from-the-Turks taken-away*

sollerter custodirentur, ne forte terra incaute derelicta, si
*skillfully should-be-guarded lest perhaps the-land incautiously abandoned if*
cuncti Iherusalem tunc abissent, recursu repentino a Turcis
*all to-Jerusalem then had-gone-away by-a-return sudden by the-Turks*
usque Persidam iam repulsis resumeretur: unde damnum
*up-to Persia now driven-back be-taken-back whence loss*
Francis non minimum cunctis contingeret evenisse,
*to-the-Franks not the-least to-all would-befall to-have-happened*
tam euntibus quam redeuntibus. Forsitan divina providentia
*as-well to-those-going as to-those-returning perhaps divine providence*
distulit eos, plus in peragendis quam in peractis negotiis
*deferred them more in to-be-done than in done business*
iudicans eos profuturos. o quotiens interim ipse Balduinus
*judging them about-to-be-useful O how-often meanwhile himself Baldwin*
in Mesopotamiae finibus proeliis contra Turcos factis fatigatus
*in of-Mesopotamia the-borders in-battles against the-Turks made wearied*
est! quotque capita eorum caesa illic fuissent, recitari
*was and-how-many heads of-them cut-off there had-been to-be-recounted*
non potest. saepe contigit illum cum gente sua pauca contra
*not can often it-happened him with people his few against*
multitudinem eorum magnam proeliari et Deo iuvante
*the-multitude of-them great to-fight and God helping*
triumpho laetari. sed cum per legationes eum Boamundus
*in-triumph to-rejoice but when through embassies him Bohemond*
praemonuisset, ut Iherusalem ambo cum suis iter
*had-forewarned that to-Jerusalem both with their-men the-journey*
nondum expletum ituri perficerent, Balduinus ilico res
*not-yet completed about-to-go should-accomplish Baldwin at-once affairs*
suas opportune disponens, se iturum praeparavit. sed tunc
*his opportunely arranging himself about-to-go prepared but then*
audiens Turcos unum cornu patriae suae ingressione pervadi,
*hearing the-Turks one horn of-country his by-invasion to-be-overrun*

incepto dimisso, cum necdum exercitulum suum congregasset,
*the-begun given-up when not-yet little-army his he-had-gathered*
cum paucis hostes adiit. qui cum arbitrati essent iam eum
*with few the-enemies approached who when thought they-had now him*
iter suum incepisse, die quadam cum in tabernaculis suis
*journey his to-have-begun on-day a-certain when in tents their*
securi essent, viso signo albo, quod baiulabat Balduinus,
*secure they-were seen the-standard white which carried Baldwin*
quantocius pavefacti fugerunt. quos cum parum cum paucis
*with-all-speed terrified fled whom when a-little with few*
fugasset, ad id, quod prius inceperat, rediit. et
*he-had-put-to-flight to that which before he-had-begun he-returned and*
ingressus iter, Antiochia dexterata, venit Laodiciam, ubi
*having-entered the-journey Antioch on-the-right came to-Latakia where*
stipendio viatico empto et clitellis reformatis abivimus.
*provisions for-the-road bought and packs refitted we-went-away*
mensis November erat. cumque Gibellum transissemus,
*the-month November was and-when Jabala we-had-passed*
Boamundum in tentoriis suis hospitatum ante oppidum
*Bohemond in tents his lodged before a-town*
quoddam, Valenium nominatum, adsecuti sumus. erat cum
*certain Valania named overtook we-have there-was with*
eo archiepiscopus quidam Pisanus, nomine Daibertus, qui
*him an-archbishop certain of-Pisa by-name Daimbert who*
cum quibusdam Tuscanis et Italis Laodiciae portui navigans
*with certain Tuscans and Italians at-Latakia's port sailing*
applicuerat, et ibi nos exspectabant, nobiscum ituri.
*had-landed and there us were-awaiting with-us about-to-go*
aderatque quidam episcopus de Apulia. cum domno
*and-there-was-present a-certain bishop from Apulia with lord*
Balduino erat tertius. quibus ita amicabiliter glomeratis,
*Baldwin was a-third who so amicably massed*

aestimati sumus numero XXV milia utriusque sexus tam
*reckoned we-were in-number twenty-five thousand of-both sex as-well*
peditum quam equitum. et cum fines Saracenorum
*of-foot-soldiers as of-horsemen and when the-borders of-the-Saracens*
interiores introissemus et ab incolis regionis nobis satis
*inner we-had-entered and from the-inhabitants of-the-region to-us quite*
infestis nec panem nec aliquid edulii habere possemus,
*hostile neither bread nor anything of-food to-have we-could*
quia nec erat qui daret vel qui venderet, stipendio
*because neither was there-one-who would-give or who would-sell provisions*
quidem nostro magis magisque consumpto, contigit multos
*indeed our more and-more consumed it-happened many*
fame anxiari. equi quoque et iumenta, deficiente
*with-hunger to-be-distressed horses also and beasts-of-burden failing*
annona, dolore geminato nimis angebantur. ibant nec
*the-fodder with-pain doubled very-much were-tormented they-went nor*
manducabant. tunc autem erant in ipsis agris cultis, per
*ate then moreover there-were in those-very fields tilled through*
quos euntes transibamus, messes quaedam, quas vulgus
*which going we-passed crops certain which the-common-people*
vocat cannamelles, harundinibus fere similes. a canna et
*call cannamelles to-reeds almost like from cane and*
melle nomen compositum, unde et mel silvestre, ut puto,
*honey the-name compounded whence also honey wild as I-think*
dicitur, quod de his sapienter conficitur. has quidem famelici
*is-called which from these wisely is-made these indeed famished*
propter mellitum saporem tota die dentibus nostris
*on-account-of the-honeyed taste the-whole day with-teeth our*
ruminabamus, parum tamen proficiendo. utique pro amore
*we-chewed little yet achieving surely for the-love*
Dei haec et alia multa, famem scilicet, frigora, pluvias
*of-God these and other many-things hunger namely colds rains*

nimias sustinebamus. plerique etiam equos, asinos, camelosque,
*excessive we-endured very-many also horses asses and-camels*
panis egentes manducabant. insuper algore nimio et imbrium
*of-bread lacking ate besides by-cold excessive and of-rains*
adfluentia saepissime torquebamur, nec erat tantum solis
*by-the-abundance very-often we-were-tormented nor was so-great of-the-sun*
aestus, quo pannos nostros madefactos exsiccare possemus,
*the-heat by-which clothes our soaked to-dry we-could*
cum imbrium continuatio vel per IV vel per V dies
*since of-rains the-continuance either for four or for five days*
nos vexaret. vidi tunc plures tabernaculis carentes imbrium
*us harassed I-saw then many tents lacking of-the-rains*
algore exstingui. ego Fulcherus Carnotensis, qui his
*by-the-cold to-be-extinguished I Fulcher of-Chartres who at-these*
intereram, vidi quadam die plures utriusque sexus, bestiasque
*was-present saw on-a-certain day many of-both sex and-beasts*
quamplurimas hac pluvia mori algidissima. longum est
*very-many by-this rain to-die most-cold long it-is*
recitandum et audiendi forsan taedium, quia nulla anxietas,
*to-be-recounted and of-hearing perhaps a-weariness because no anxiety*
nullus dolor defuit populo Dei. saepe a Saracenis in
*no pain was-lacking to-the-people of-God often by Saracens on*
via insidiantibus circa meatus artos plures occidebantur,
*the-road lying-in-wait around passes narrow many were-killed*
aut cum raptum irent pro victualibus quaerendis. videretis
*or when to-plunder they-went for provisions to-be-sought you-would-see*
milites nobiles, equis quoquomodo amissis, pedites effici.
*knights noble their-horses somehow lost foot-soldiers to-be-made*
videretis, iumentis deficientibus, capras Saracenis
*you-would-see the-beasts-of-burden failing goats from-the-Saracens*
ablatas, vervecesque superpositis sarcinis valde fatigari et
*taken and-wethers put-upon with-packs greatly to-be-wearied and*

dorsa eorum mole illius sarcinae corrumpi. bis in hac
*the-backs their by-the-mass of-that pack to-be-broken twice on this*
via, non amplius, panem et annonam commercio carissimo,
*road not more bread and grain by-trade most-dear*
scilicet a Tripolitanis et Caesariensibus, habuimus. patet
*namely from the-Tripolitans and Caesareans we-had it-is-plain*
ergo quoniam vix poterit quis magnum aliquod nisi
*therefore that scarcely shall-be-able anyone great anything except*
cum magno labore adquirere. magnum quiddam fuit, cum
*with great labor to-acquire a-great thing it-was when*
usque Iherusalem pervenerimus. qua visitata, consummatus est
*up-to Jerusalem we-came which visited completed was*
labor diuturnus. cumque Sanctorum Sancta desideratissima
*the-labor long and-when of-Holies the-Holy most-desired*
inspiceremus, ingenti gaudio repleti sumus. o quotiens ad
*we-beheld with-huge joy filled we-were O how-often to*
memoriam reducebamus illam Daviticam prophetiam qua
*memory we-brought-back that of-David prophecy by-which*
dicit: adorabimus in loco, ubi steterunt pedes eius! quod
*he-says we-shall-worship in the-place where stood the-feet his which*
nimirum in nobis tunc impleri vidimus, quamvis aliis
*doubtless in us then to-be-fulfilled we-saw although to-others*
multis similiter pertineat. illuc quidem ascendimus tribus,
*many likewise it-may-pertain thither indeed we-went-up the-tribes*
tribus Domini, ad confitendum nomini sancto eius. die
*the-tribes of-the-Lord to confess to-the-name holy his on-the-day*
illo, quo Iherusalem tunc introivimus, sol retrogradus,
*that on-which Jerusalem then we-entered the-sun going-back*
descensu hiemali peracto, recursum resumpsit ascensibilem.
*the-descent wintry completed its-return took-up ascending*
cumque Sepulcrum dominicum atque Templum eius gloriosum
*and-when the-Sepulcher of-the-Lord and the-Temple his glorious*

et cetera loca sancta visitassemus, die IV^o^ Bethleem
*and the-other places holy we-had-visited on-the-day fourth to-Bethlehem*
adivimus, ut nocte ipsa dominicae Nativitatis revolutionem
*we-went that on-the-night itself of-the-Lord's Nativity the-revolution*
celebraturi annuam, praesaepio, ubi Iesum Maria venerabilis
*about-to-celebrate annual at-the-manger where Jesus Mary the-venerable*
mater reclinavit, praesentialiter pervigiles in orationibus
*mother laid present wakeful in prayers*
adsisteremus. quam noctem cum obsequio condecenti expleto,
*we-might-stand-by which night with service fitting completed*
hora diei III^a^, missa quoque III^a^ celebrata, Iherusalem
*at-the-hour of-the-day third the-mass also third celebrated to-Jerusalem*
remeavimus. o quantus tunc erat fetor circa muros civitatis,
*we-returned O how-great then was the-stench around the-walls of-the-city*
intus et extra, de cadaveribus Saracenorum adhuc ibi
*within and without from the-corpses of-the-Saracens still there*
marcentium, quos urbe capta collegae nostri trucidaverunt,
*rotting whom the-city taken colleagues our had-slaughtered*
ubicumque eos adsecuti fuerant! cum autem et nos et
*wherever them overtaken they-had when moreover both we and*
iumenta nostra quiete necessaria aliquantisper vegetati
*beasts-of-burden our with-rest necessary for-a-while refreshed*
essemus et patriarcham in ecclesia S. Sepulcri tam
*had-been and a-patriarch in the-church of-the-Holy Sepulcher as-well*
dux quam ceteri optimates praefecissent, scilicet dominum
*the-duke as the-other chief-men had-set-over namely lord*
Daibertum superius memoratum, redintegrato stipendio et
*Daimbert above mentioned restored the-provisions and*
iumentis nostris oneratis, regredientes descendimus ad
*beasts-of-burden our loaded returning we-went-down to*
flumen Iordanicum. tunc placuit quibusdam de exercitu
*the-river Jordan then it-pleased some of the-army*

posteriore in Iherusalem remanere et quibusdam de
*later* *in* *Jerusalem* *to-remain* *and* *some* *of*
priore nobiscum remeare. dux autem, sicut prius terram
*the-earlier* *with-us* *to-return* *the-duke* *moreover* *as* *before* *the-land*
Iherosolymitanam strenue rexit.
*of-Jerusalem* *vigorously* *ruled*

Idibus in ternis Augusti tunc satis aegris
*on-the-Ides* *on* *the-third* *of-August* *then* *enough* *sick*
Corruit Urbanus praesul Romae venerandus.
*fell* *Urban* *the-prelate* *of-Rome* *venerable*

## De reversione ducis Boamundi et comitis Balduini ad propria

### XXXIV · THE RETURN OF BOHEMOND AND BALDWIN

*On New Year's Day 1100 they cut palms at Jericho and go home by Tiberias and Paneas, where Fulcher reckons the Jordan rises from springs named Jor and Dan. They pass Baalbek, which he takes for Solomon's Tadmor. Four hundred Turks of Damascus attack, but Baldwin guards the rear and the rain has spoiled their bows; they reach Latakia and hurry on to Edessa.*

Anno ab Incarnatione dominica MºCº, die anni
*in-the-year* *from* *the-Incarnation* *of-the-Lord* *the-1100th* *on-the-day* *of-the-year*
prima, in Iericho ramis palmarum caesis ad deferendum, ut
*first* *at* *Jericho* *branches* *of-palms* *cut* *for* *carrying* *as*
mos est, omnes adsumpsimus et secunda die iter
*the-custom* *is* *all* *we-took* *and* *on-the-second* *day* *the-journey*
remeabile cepimus. placuit principibus nostris per urbem
*of-return* *we-took* *it-pleased* *princes* *our* *through* *the-city*
Tiberiadem iuxta mare transire. quod mare de dulci aqua
*Tiberias* *beside* *the-sea* *to-pass* *which* *sea* *of* *sweet* *water*

congregatum XVIII milibus passuum habet in longum et
*gathered eighteen thousand of-paces has in length and*
V in latum. deinde per Caesaream Philippi, quae Paneas
*five in breadth then through Caesarea of-Philip which Paneas*
lingua Syriaca dicitur, ad Libani montis radicem sitam,
*in-the-tongue Syriac is-called at of-Lebanon the-mount the-root situated*
ubi fontes duo emergunt, unde Jordanis fluvius exoritur, qui
*where springs two emerge whence the-Jordan river rises which*
postea mare Galilaeae secans in mare Mortuum se ingerit.
*afterward the-sea of-Galilee cutting into the-sea Dead itself pours*
hic autem lacus, Genesar dictus, XL stadiis in latitudine
*this moreover the-lake Gennesaret called forty stades in breadth*
Cque in longitudine, iuxta Iosephum. quod flumen
*and-a-hundred in length according-to Josephus which river*
deinde per alveum unum percurrens ingerit se in mare,
*then through bed one running pours itself into the-sea*
quod Mortuum dicitur, eo quod nihil gignat vivum,
*which Dead is-called for-the-reason that nothing it-bears living*
qui lacus Asphaltites dictus sine fundo esse creditur, in
*which lake Asphaltites called without bottom to-be is-believed into*
abyssum civitatibus ibi subversis, Sodoma scilicet et Gomorra.
*the-abyss the-cities there overturned Sodom namely and Gomorrah*
ego autem callidius de fontibus his coniectabam, imitans
*I moreover more-cunningly about springs these conjectured imitating*
beatum Hieronymum, quem legi in expositione eius super
*blessed Jerome whom I-read in the-exposition his upon*
Amos prophetam, quod Dan in terminis terrae Iudaicae sit,
*Amos the-prophet that Dan in the-bounds of-the-land Judaean is*
ubi nunc est Paneas, et quia tribus Dan illic aedificavit
*where now is Paneas and because the-tribe of-Dan there built*
civitatem, quam nomine patris sui vocaverunt Dan. hac de
*a-city which by-the-name of-father their they-called Dan this for*

causa sentio fontem illum vocari Dan et alterum Ior, qui
*reason I-think spring that to-be-called Dan and the-other Jor which*
huic adiungitur. venimus autem ad urbem fortissimam,
*to-this-one is-joined we-came moreover to a-city most-strong*
quam Balbec nuncupant, a Salomone conditam, muris
*which Baalbek they-call by Solomon founded with-walls*
eminentibus circumtectam et Thadomor ab eo appellatam,
*lofty surrounded and Tadmor by him called*
duorum dierum itinere a superiore Syria distantem et
*by-two days' journey from upper Syria distant and*
a maxima Babylone VI mansionibus procul distantem, ab
*from very-great Babylon six stations far distant from*
Euphrate vero diei unius. hanc Graeci Palmyram vocant.
*the-Euphrates indeed of-a-day one this the-Greeks Palmyra call*
illo in loco fontes et putei nimis abundant. nam in inferiori
*that in the-place springs and wells very abound for in the-lower*
terra nusquam aqua invenitur. ubi Turci Damasceni nobis
*land nowhere water is-found where the-Turks of-Damascus to-us*
obvii venerunt CCCC ferme milites. et quia didicerant
*to-meet came four-hundred about knights and because they-had-learned*
nos esse inermes et laboris causa valde fessos, arbitrati sunt
*us to-be unarmed and from-labor by-reason very weary thought have*
nos quoquomodo debilitare. quod si forte postremos die illo
*us in-some-way to-weaken which if perhaps the-last on-day that*
domnus Balduinus sollicite et caute non conservaret, multos
*lord Baldwin carefully and warily not had-kept many*
de nostris occiderent. inundatione enim pluviarum et
*of ours they-would-have-killed by-the-flood for of-rains both*
arcus et sagittae defecerant eis, quia cum glutine in locis
*the-bows and the-arrows had-failed them because with glue in places*
illis adaptantur. Boamundus quippe in primo cuneo praeibat.
*those they-are-fitted Bohemond indeed in the-first wedge went-before*

itaque Deo auxiliante nihil apud nos lucrati sunt. tunc castra
*and-so God helping nothing from us gained have then camp*
nostra metati sumus ante oppidum praedictum. sequenti
*our measured-out we-have before the-town aforesaid on-the-following*
vero die plus mari adpropiantes, ante urbem Tortosam
*indeed day more to-the-sea drawing-near before the-city Tortosa*
et Laodiciam transivimus. ibi quoque Raimundum comitem
*and Latakia we-passed there also Raymond the-count*
repperimus, quem illic reliqueramus. et quia cara erat annona,
*we-found whom there we-had-left and because dear was the-grain*
nihil ibi ad emendum invenimus, unde vivere possemus.
*nothing there for buying we-found whence to-live we-could*
quapropter usque Edessam properare non cessavimus.
*wherefore up-to Edessa to-hasten not we-ceased*

## De captione ducis Boamundi

### XXXV · THE CAPTURE OF BOHEMOND

*Bohemond rules Antioch six months, then rides to Melitene, which Gabriel has promised him, and is ambushed by the emir Danishmend, who scatters his men and carries him off captive. Bohemond sends a lock of his hair to Baldwin, who comes with Franks from Edessa and Antioch; Danishmend retreats, Gabriel yields Melitene to Baldwin, and the Antiochenes go home mourning.*

Boamundus igitur Antiochiam primitus advenit, ubi a suis
*Bohemond therefore to-Antioch first came where by his-men*
gaudenter est susceptus. deinceps regnum suum per VI
*gladly was received thereafter kingdom his for six*
menses ut prius obtinuit. sed cum Iulio mense sequente
*months as before he-held but when in-July the-month following*
urbem Melitiniam vocatam cum pauca gente appeteret (quam
*the-city Melitene called with few people he-sought which*

ei qui urbis eiusdem patronus erat, Gabriel nomine,
*to-him he-who of-the-city the-same patron was Gabriel by-name*
redditurus erat, iam per legationes amicitiae mutuae
*about-to-surrender was now through embassies of-friendship mutual*
conventione facta), obvius illi fuit admiratus quidam, nomine
*a-covenant made to-meet him came an-emir certain by-name*
Danisman, cum gente Turcorum magna, moliens Boamundum
*Danishmend with people of-Turks great striving Bohemond*
imprudenter sic ambulantem intercipere. et non longe ab
*imprudently so walking to-intercept and not far from*
urbe praefata insiluerunt in eum undique gens illa nefaria,
*the-city aforesaid leapt upon him from-all-sides people that wicked*
quae in insidiis latitabat. et non audentes nostri proeliari,
*which in ambush lay-hidden and not daring our-men to-fight*
quia pauci erant, statim fugientes in dispersionem fugati
*because few they-were at-once fleeing into dispersion put-to-flight*
sunt, de quibus Turci multos occiderunt et pecuniam
*were of whom the-Turks many killed and money*
eorum totam habuerunt. Boamundum vero comprehensum in
*their all had Bohemond but seized into*
captionem secum abduxerunt. cumque hoc infortunium ab
*captivity with-them led-away and-when this misfortune by*
illis qui evaserant divulgaretur, orta est genti nostrae grandis
*those who had-escaped was-spread-abroad arisen has to-people our a-great*
inde desolatio. veruntamen dux urbis Edessae Balduinus,
*thence desolation nevertheless the-duke of-the-city of-Edessa Baldwin*
congregatis Francis quotcumque potuit, Edessenis scilicet et
*gathered Franks as-many-as he-could of-Edessa namely and*
Antiochenis, hostes praedictos, ubi eos esse audivit, quaerere
*of-Antioch the-enemies aforesaid where them to-be he-heard to-seek*
non distulit. Boamundus etiam, cincinno capitis sui absciso,
*not he-delayed Bohemond also a-lock of-head his cut-off*

mandavit hoc intersigno Balduino praedicto, ut ei citato
*sent-word with-this token to-Baldwin aforesaid that to-him with-speedy*
auxilio pro amore Dei succurreret. quod cum audisset
*help for the-love of-God he-should-come-to-aid which when had-heard*
Danisman, metuens horum animositatem, non est ausus ulterius
*Danishmend fearing of-these the-spirit not has dared further*
ante urbem Melitiniam morari, quam obsidione cinxerat, sed
*before the-city Melitene to-stay which with-siege he-had-girded but*
paulatim ante nos fugiendo, ad propria sua remeare curavit.
*little-by-little before us by-fleeing to own-things his to-return he-took-care*
unde multum doluimus, cum per III dies illos ultra urbem
*whence much we-grieved since for three days them beyond the-city*
praedictam persecuti sumus, qui libentissime contra eos
*aforesaid we-pursued have who most-gladly against them*
dimicassemus. cumque sic regrederemur, praedictus Gabriel
*would-have-fought and-when so we-were-returning the-aforesaid Gabriel*
urbem Melitiniam Balduino reddidit. quibus amicis effectis et
*the-city Melitene to-Baldwin surrendered who friends made and*
custodibus suis intromissis, Edessam urbem Balduinus rediit
*guards his let-in to-Edessa the-city Baldwin returned*
et Antiocheni de domino suo maesti ad sua regressi sunt.
*and the-Antiochenes about lord their sorrowful to their-own returned have*

## De morte regis Godefridi

### XXXVI · THE DEATH OF GODFREY

*As Baldwin enjoys his good fortune, a messenger brings word that his brother Godfrey died at Jerusalem on July 18. Verses mourn that he dies a year after the city's capture, having held the kingdom the Lord gave him only briefly, and that he climbs to heaven with Michael lifting him.*

Cum autem ipse Balduinus frueretur sua prosperitate, ecce
*when moreover himself Baldwin enjoyed his prosperity behold*
nuntius veniens ab Hierosolymis intulit ei, quia dux
*a-messenger coming from Jerusalem brought to-him that the-duke*
Godefridus, germanus eius, XV. Kal. Augusti
*Godfrey brother his on-the-fifteenth-day-before the-Kalends of-August*
diem clauserat extremum apud Hierosolymam.
*the-day had-closed last at Jerusalem*

Ad caput hoc anni post captam contigit urbem,
*at the-head this year after the-taken it-happened city*
Ad meriti cumulum Dominus tibi, dux Godefride,
*to of-merit the-heap the-Lord to-you O-duke Godfrey*
Contigit hoc regnum. sed tempore non diuturno
*befell this kingdom but in-time not lasting*
Tu perfunctus eo, natura dante, ruisti.
*you having-discharged it nature giving fell*
Orto sole semel sub fervescente Leone,
*risen the-sun once under burning Leo*
Aethera scandisti laetans, Michaele levante.
*the-ether you-climbed rejoicing Michael lifting*